Foreword

Thank you for choosing Hongqi H9!

Hongqi H9 is equipped with various luxury equipment and advanced technologies. In order to make full use of these equipment and technologies in your car life in the future, it is recommended that you read this manual carefully so that you can quickly and comprehensively understand Hongqi H9.

This manual provides detailed instructions on safe driving, car maintenance, and emergency countermeasures in addition to introducing how to use the car, aiming to enable you to use the car safely and comfortably, while maximizing the value of the car.

In addition to the Owner's Manual, the accompanying documents also include the Maintenance Manual, containing important information on the usage and maintenance of Hongqi H9. It is recommended that you keep the accompanying documents in your vehicle for convenient access at any time.

This manual is based on the product's conditions at the time of publication, subsequent product changes will be revised at the time of reprinting and the revisions will be made without notice. Thanks for understanding.

For any other questions about the car or if you feel the information provided in the accompanying documents is insufficient, please consult an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer, and we will be happy to help you!

You can view or download the latest version of the Owner's Manual from the Hongqi official website. Before using the car, it is recommended that you read the manual carefully.

Official website: https://www.hongqi-auto.com

Have a nice drive!

China FAW Group Import and Export Co., Ltd

Table of contents

	Index of figures	Search by figures
1	Instructions before driving	Always read safety instructions
2	Preparation before driving	Inspection and preparation before driving
3	Getting on/off the car	Using doors and trunk
4	Comfort adjustment	Adjustment before driving and using interior equipment
5	In-vehicle infotainment system	Operate in-vehicle infotainment system
6	Driving the vehicle	Necessary operations and recommendations during driving
7	Parking assist	Auxiliary functions when parking
8	Parking the car	Safe operations when parking
9	Fault and emergency handling	Countermeasures in case of a fault or an emergency
10	Maintenance and specifications	Detailed information on maintenance procedures and specifications
	Other information	List of abbreviations and other information contained in this manual

1 Instructions before driving

1-1. Instructions for safe use

Safe driving 24
Seat belt 26
Airbag 32
Child safety information .. 44
Child restraint system 45
Installation of child restraint system 50
Precautions for exhaust gas 54

1-2. Warning lamps and indicator lamps

Indicator lamp 55
Warning lamp 57

1-3. IMMO system/anti-theft system

Engine IMMO system 64
Body anti-theft system 65

2 Preparation before driving

2-1. Vehicle inspection

Inspection before driving 68

2-2. Driving in winter

Driving essentials in winter 69

2-3. Refueling

Opening fuel tank cap 72

3 Getting on/off the car

3-1. Key information

Key 78

3-2. Opening, closing and locking doors and trunk lid

Door 81
Trunk lid 87
PEPS 92

3-3. Loading

Goods and luggage 97

4 Comfort adjustment

4-1. Seats

Front seat 100
Rear seat 104
Headrest 106
Seat memory 109
Seat ventilation and heating function 111
Seat massage function 113

4-2. Steering wheel and rearview mirror

Steering wheel 115
Interior rearview mirror 117
Exterior rearview mirror 119

4-3. Windows and sunroof

Power window 123
Panorama sunroof 126

4-4. A/C system

Automatic A/C system 130
Automatic A/C system - front control system 131
Automatic A/C system - rear control system 142
Windshield heating* 147

4-5. Interior power supply

On-board wireless charging* 148
Power outlet 150

4-6. Interior lamp

Interior lamp list 152

4-7. Storage compartments

Storage compartments list 155

4-8. Other equipment

Using other equipment .. 162

5 In-vehicle infotainment system

5-1. Basic operation

Multimedia display 170
USB data interface 175

5-2. Using in-vehicle infotainment system

Setting 177
Entertainment 185
Extended application 186

5-3. Using hands-free system

Hands-free system 187

6 Driving the vehicle

6-1. Instrument information

Instrument cluster 192
Information on multi-function display of instrument cluster 194
Head up display 197

6-2. Driving specifications

Driving the vehicle 199
Engine (start) switch 207
Gearshift control 209
Driving mode 217
Air suspension* 220

6-3. Operating lamps and wipers

Headlamp switch 225
Turn signal lamp control lever 228
ADB intelligent high beam control 229
Fog lamp switch 232
Front windshield wiper & washer 233

6-4. Using driver assistance system

Adaptive cruise control (ACC) 237
Super adaptive cruise control (SACC)* 247
Tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) 257
Lane departure warning/lane keeping assist (LDW/LKA) 259
Driver status monitor (DSM) 262
Forward collision warning (FCW) 264
Autonomous emergency braking (AEB) 267
Blind spot detection (BSD) 271
Traffic sign recognition (TSR) 277
Idle stop-start system 279
Driver assistance system 285

7 Parking assist

7-1. Parking control

Front and rear parking radar 290
Around view monitor (AVM) 297
Auto parking assist (APA) 303

8 Parking the car

8-1. Parking assist

Electronic parking brake (EPB) 314
AUTO HOLD 316

8-2. Get-off

Door opening warning 318

9 Fault and emergency handling

9-1. Important information

Hazard warning lamp 322
SOS alarm* 323
Emergency call device* 324

9-2. Countermeasures in case of an emergency

If the car needs to be towed 329
If the car is found to be abnormal 334
If you have a flat tire 335
If the engine cannot start 343
If the key is lost 344
If the key fails to work normally 345
If the door cannot be locked normally 348
If battery or super-capacitor power is low* 350
If your car overheats 355
If car gets trapped 357
If driving on water-logged road 359
If you have a burst tire .. 360
If an accident occurs 361
Emergency opening of trunk lid 362

10 Maintenance and specifications

10-1.Service and maintenance

Cleaning and protecting exterior trims of car ... 366
Cleaning and protecting interior trims of car 368

10-2.Maintenance

Precautions for maintenance 371

10-3.Maintenance by yourself

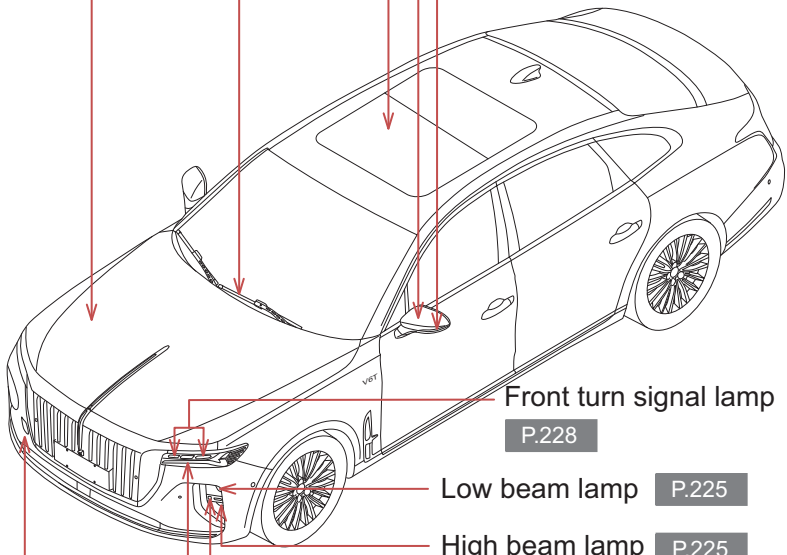
Precautions for maintenance by yourself 374
Particulate filter 377
Engine hood 380
Engine compartment 381
12 V battery and 48 V battery 390
Tire 395
Tire pressure 399
Wheel 401
A/C filter 403
Fragrance box 405
Replacing key battery ... 406
Checking and replacing fuse 408

10-4. Specifications

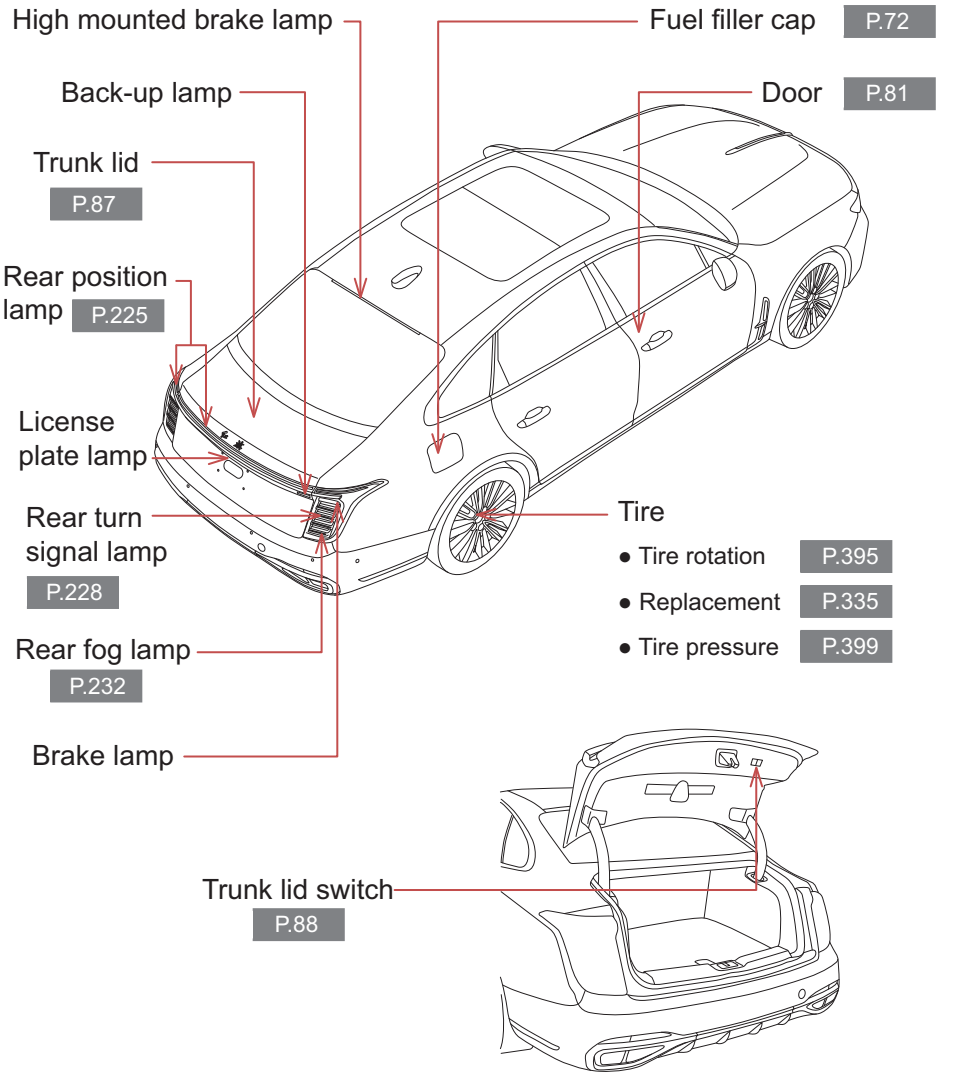
Maintenance data 412
Fuel information 428

Other information

List of abbreviations 430
Event data recorder 432
Alphabetical index 439

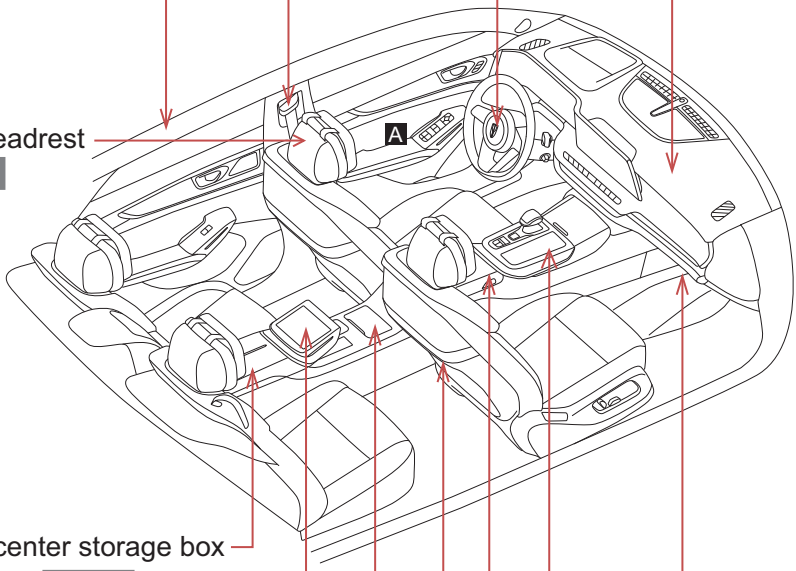


Engine hood P.380
Front windshield wiper P.233
Sunroof P.126
Exterior rearview mirror P.119
Side turn signal lamp P.228
Front turn signal lamp P.228
Low beam lamp P.225
High beam lamp P.225
Corner lamp P.227
Position lamp P.225
Daytime running lamp P.225
Towing eye hole cover P.331


High mounted brake lamp
Fuel filler cap
P.72
Back-up lamp
Door
P.81
Trunk lid
P.87
Rear position lamp
P.225
License plate lamp
Rear turn signal lamp
P.228
Tire
• Tire rotation
P.395
• Replacement
P.335
• Tire pressure
P.399
Rear fog lamp
P.232
Brake lamp
Trunk lid switch
P.88

Index of figures

Interior



Front seat belt P.26

Driver's airbag P.32

Curtain airbag P.32

Front passenger's airbag P.32

Front headrest P.106

Rear center storage box P.160

Rear center armrest display P.172

Rear cup holder P.158

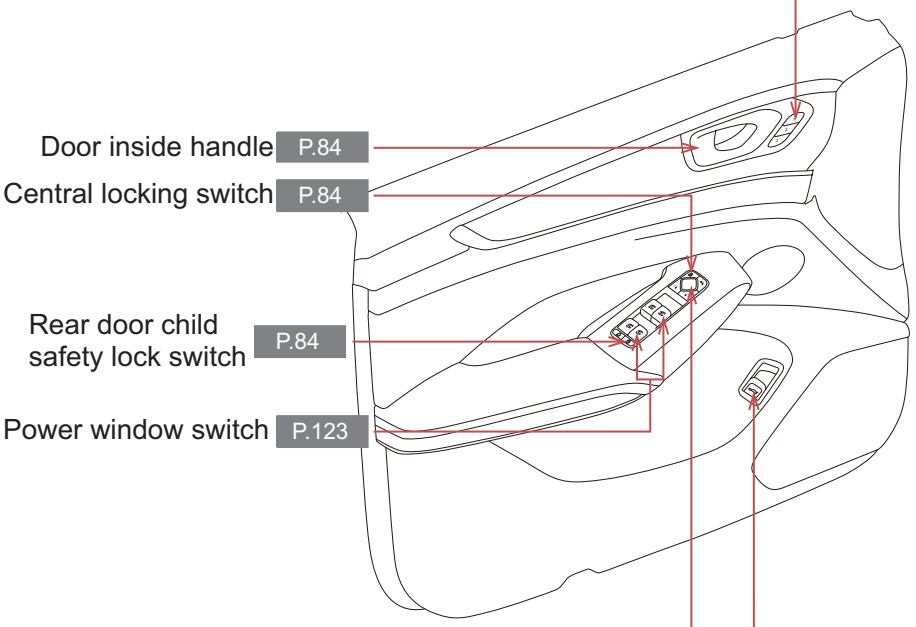
Front seat P.100

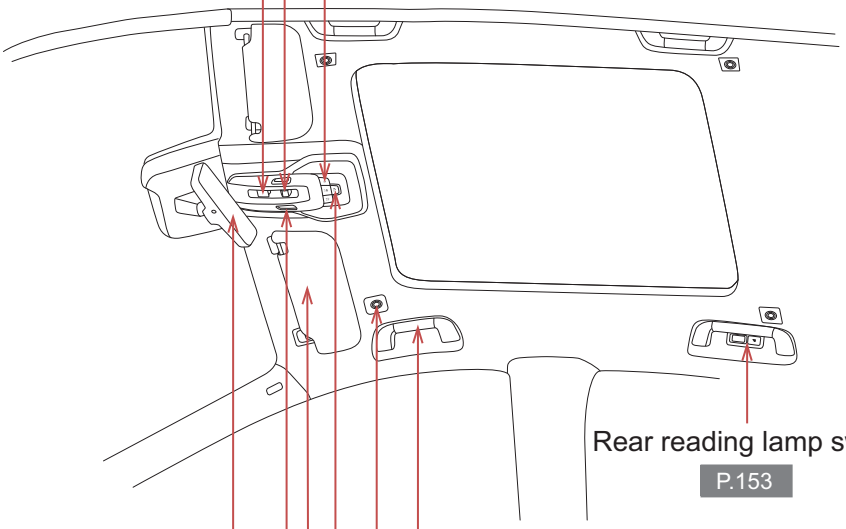
Glove box P.156

Front cup holder P.158

Front center storage box P.156

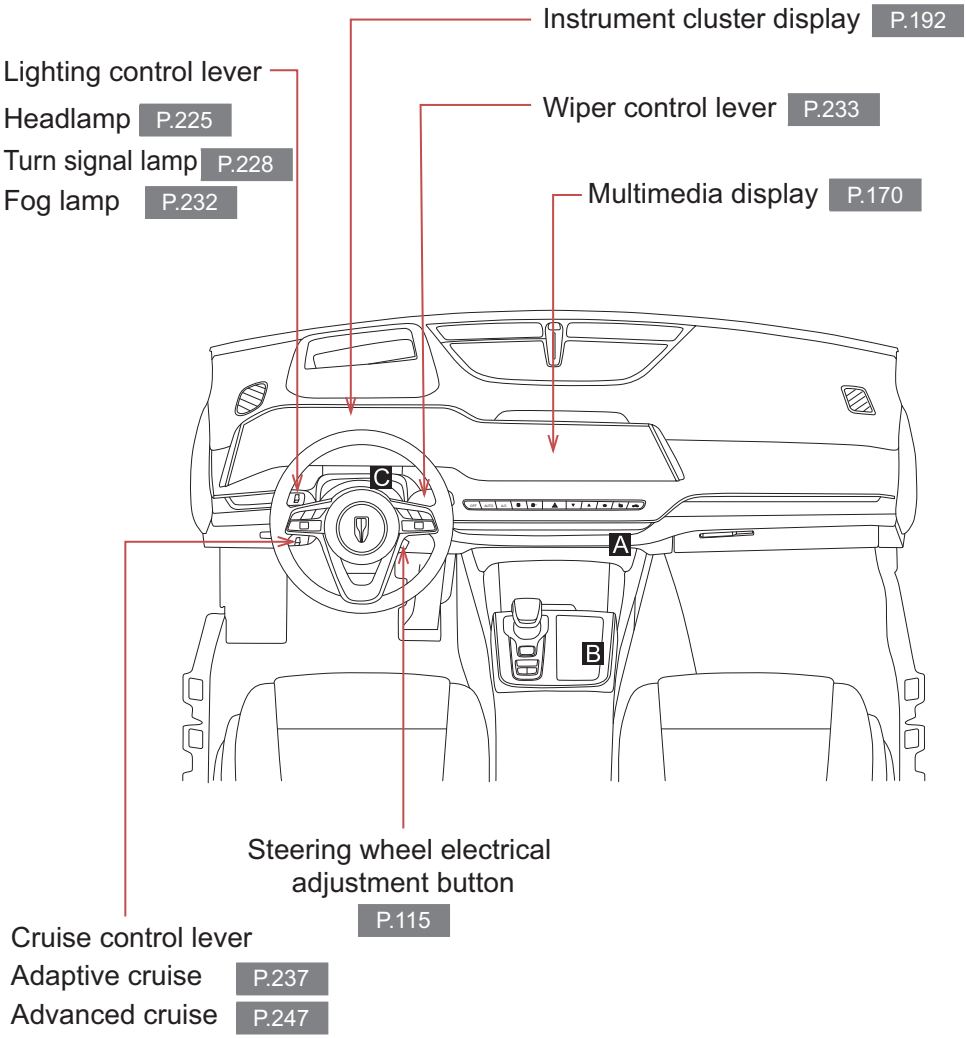
A


Driver’s seat memory button P.109
Door inside handle P.84
Central locking switch P.84
Rear door child safety lock switch P.84
Power window switch P.123
Exterior rearview mirror adjustment button P.119
Trunk lid interior unlocking button P.87

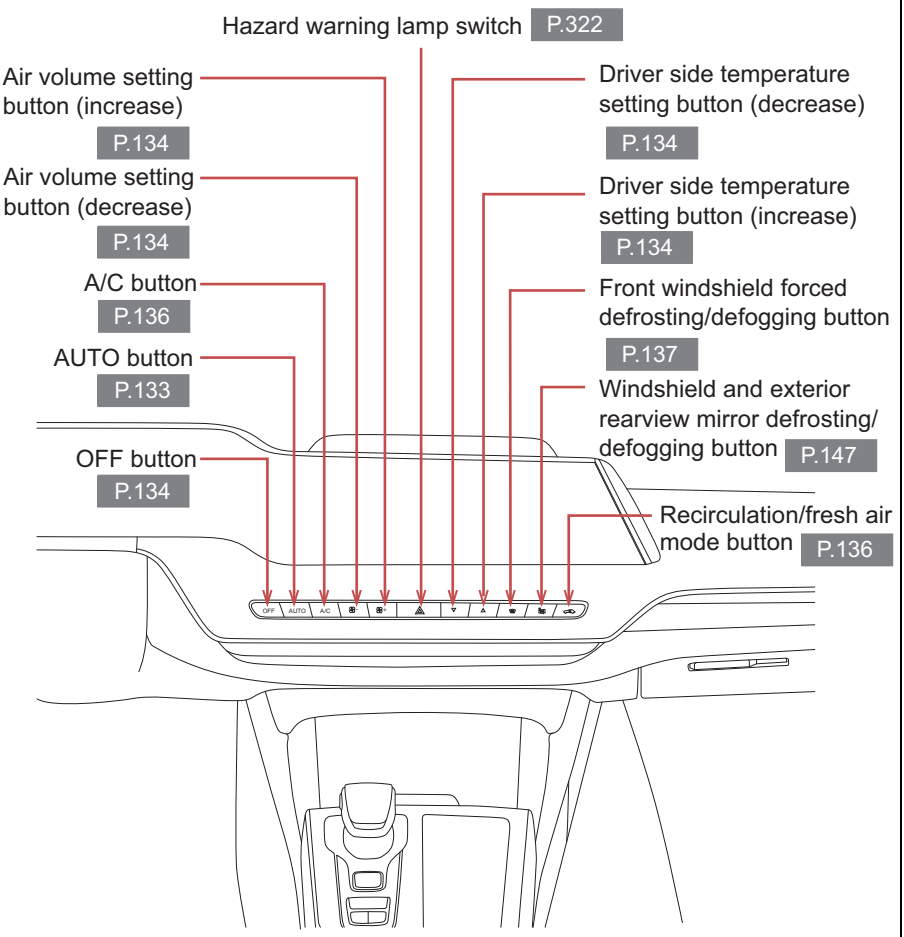


Sunroof switch P.126
Sunshade switch P.127
Interior lamp switch P.153
Rear reading lamp switch P.153
Roof grab handle P.164
Bluetooth microphone P.188
SOS switch P.323
Vanity mirror P.163
Sun visor P.162
Front reading lamp switch P.153
Anti-glare interior rearview mirror P.117

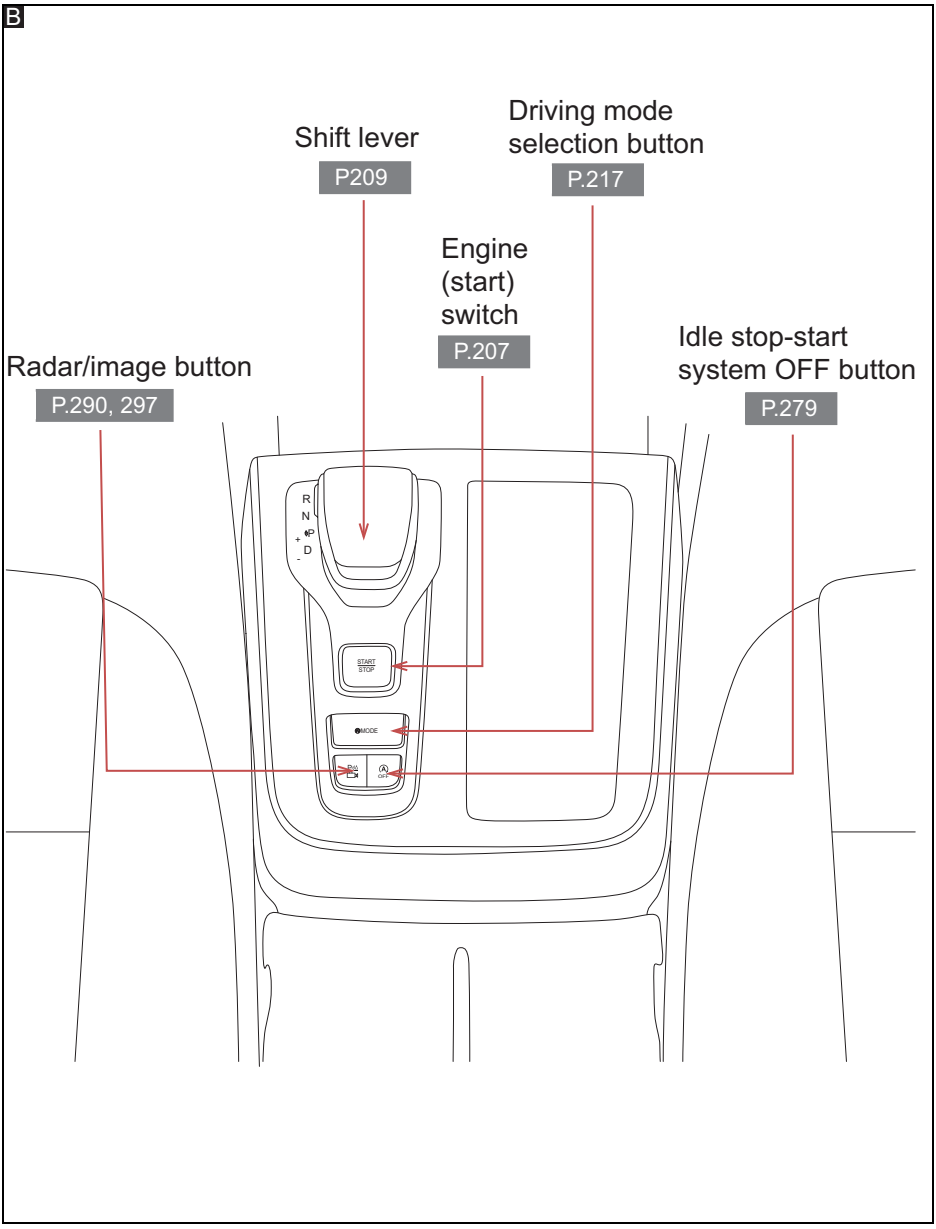
Instrument panel



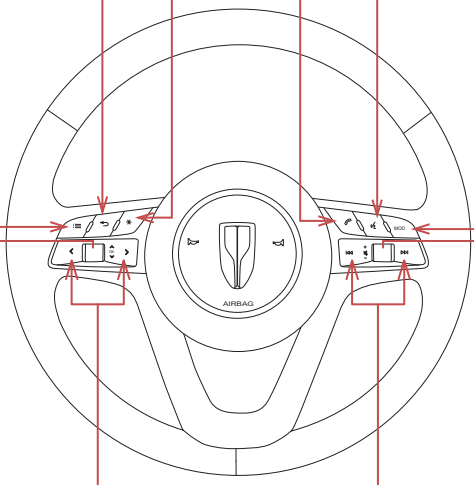
A


Hazard warning lamp switch P.322
Air volume setting button (increase) P.134
Air volume setting button (decrease) P.134
A/C button P.136
AUTO button P.133
OFF button P.134
Driver side temperature setting button (decrease) P.134
Driver side temperature setting button (increase) P.134
Front windshield forced defrosting/defogging button P.137
Windshield and exterior rearview mirror defrosting/ defogging button P.147
Recirculation/fresh air mode button P.136

B


Shift lever
P209
Driving mode selection button
P.217
Engine (start) switch
P.207
Radar/image button
P.290, 297
Idle stop-start system OFF button
P.279
R
N
P
D
START STOP
MODE

C



Back button
P.195

Voice recognition button*

Multi-function button
P.195

Menu button
P.195

Phone button
P.187

MOD button
P.195

Left/right selection button
P.195

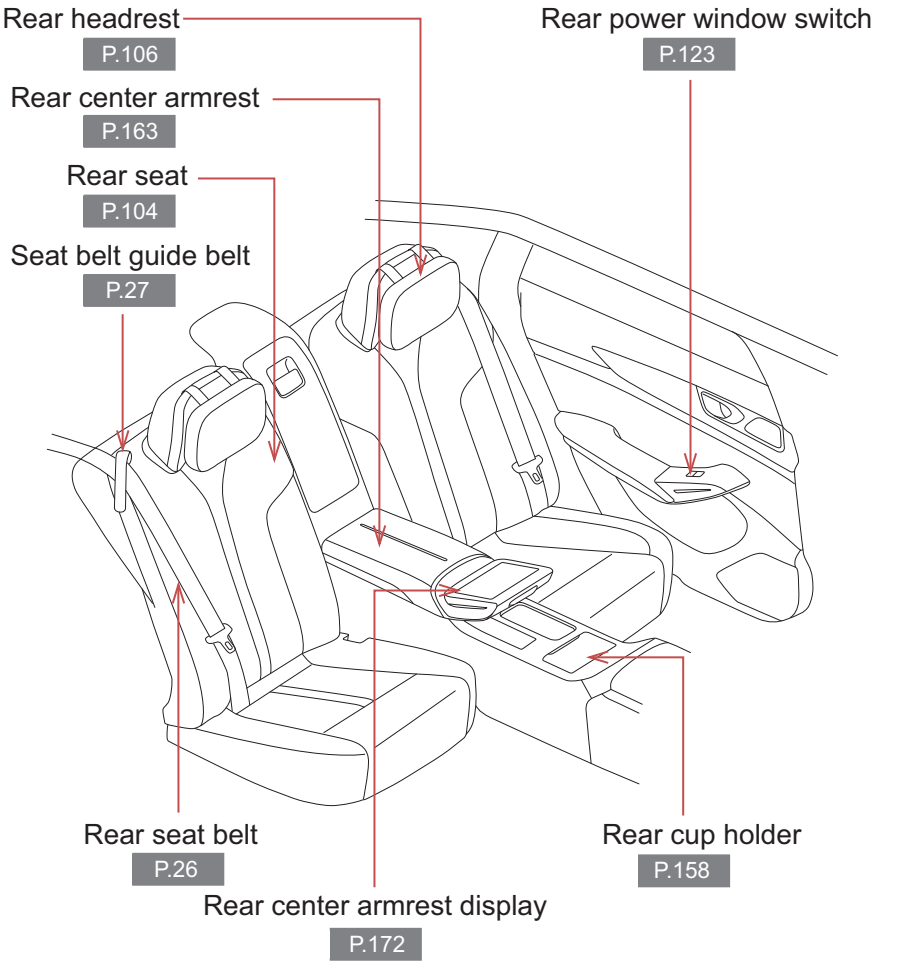
Track/radio station button
P.195

Scroll wheel
P.195

Scroll wheel
P.195

The type of steering wheel is slightly different depending on the model configurations

Rear


Rear headrest
P.106
Rear power window switch
P.123
Rear center armrest
P.163
Rear seat
P.104
Seat belt guide belt
P.27
Rear seat belt
P.26
Rear cup holder
P.158
Rear center armrest display
P.172

Reference information

Instructions for use

The user must hold a driving license before driving the car on the road. This manual is intended for such users.

As a general manual, this manual is applicable to multiple models of H9. Some equipment described in the manual may not be installed on your car. * Indicates that the configurations and functions may vary by model. For specific configuration information, please refer to the relevant sales materials or consult the dealer you purchased the car.

The pictures in this manual are for reference only to help you understand the car more intuitively, which may be slightly different from your car. Please refer to the real car configurations.

All specifications provided in this manual are up-to-date when it goes to press. However, due to ongoing modifications and improvements by FAW, the equipment and performance of the follow-up models may vary. Thus, the content of this manual is subject to change without notice. Please do not compare the owner's manual of other versions with the equipment and performance of your car, or require for retrofitting based on the difference between the two. If you have any questions about your car or this owner's manual, please consult an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.

Accessories, spare parts and modifications of car

An authorized FAW Hongqi dealer has the advanced tools, equipment and genuine spare parts for the maintenance and service of your car. We strongly recommend that you use FAW genuine spare parts and accessories that meet the requirements of this car.

For any non-genuine spare parts or accessories, whether they are used for replacement or installation, FAW neither assumes any responsibility nor provides any guarantee. In addition, car damage and performance problems due to the use of the above-mentioned spare parts or accessories are not covered under warranty.

It is prohibited to illegally modify the car with products not authorized by FAW, otherwise it may affect the handling, safety and durability of the car, and may even violate local government regulations. In

addition, problems due to modifications are not covered under warranty.

Reading vehicle identification number (VIN)

Use a diagnostic scan tool to connect the OBD port of the car; when reading the ECU information, you can read the VIN. Reading tool can be purchased in the market, and must meet ISO14229, ISO15765, ISO15031, and ISO11898 standards.

Installing RF transmitter system

Installation of the RF transmitter system in the car may affect electronic systems such as:

- Antilock brake system
- Cruise control system
- Airbag system
- Seat belt pretensioner system

Before installing the RF transmitter system, please consult an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.

Scrapping of car

Since the airbags and seat belt pretensioners contain explosive chemicals, if the car is scrapped without removing them, accidents such as personal injury and fire may occur. Before scrapping the car, be sure to contact a qualified company or institution to remove and dispose of the airbags and seat belt pretensioners. An authorized FAW Hongqi dealer is familiar with relevant laws and regulations and can provide you with consulting services.

Environmental protection

Used parts and waste oil:

- Dispose of the used parts and waste oil properly.
- Improper disposal may lead to environmental pollution.
- Consult the dealer you purchased the vehicle before scrapping the vehicle.

Eco-friendly and economical driving:

- Avoid unnecessary idling and excessively depressing the accelerator pedal, observe legal speed limits and keep safe driving in mind.

Model code

This manual describes CA7203HA6T, CA7300HA6TA and CA7308HA6TX models.

⚠ WARNING

■ Precautions for driving

It is important for the driver to drive soberly, carefully and attentively.

- Drive soberly: Never drive the car after drinking or taking medicine. Alcohol or certain medications may delay response time and impair judgment and coordination, thus resulting in serious injury or death.
- Drive carefully: Always drive with caution. Always pay attention to the movements of other vehicles and pedestrians in order to make timely judgments to prevent accidents.
- Drive attentively: Be sure to concentrate on driving. Anything distracting the driver's attention, such as adjusting the control buttons, making a phone call or reading, may lead to a collision and cause serious injury or even death.

■ Precautions regarding child safety

- Never leave children unattended in the car.
- Do not allow children to carry or use the key, as children may cause a safety hazard by starting the car or operating the shift lever.
- Do not allow children to play with doors, windows or other car equipment as they may get injured.
- Make sure that the temperature inside the car is appropriate, because too high or too low temperature may cause fatal injury to children.

Read this manual

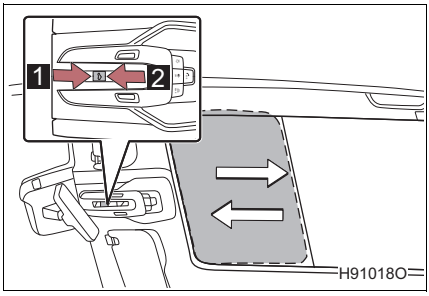
⚠ WARNING

Explains warnings that, if not obeyed, could cause serious injury or even death.

⚠ CAUTION

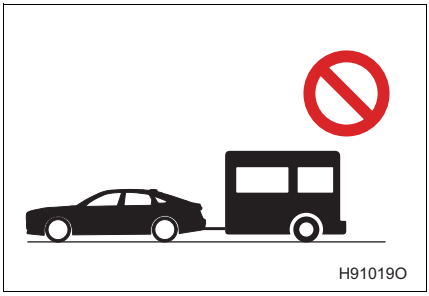
Explains precautions that, if not obeyed, could cause car damage or malfunction.

Step 1 Indicates operating or working procedures, which should be performed in numerical order.



➡ Indicates the action (push, turn, press, etc.) used to operate the switch and other devices.

⇨ Indicates the result of the operation (for example, the cover is opened).

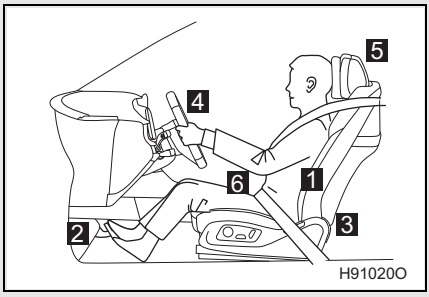


⊘ Indicates "Do not", "Do not do", or "Do not do this".

1-1. Instructions for safe use
Safe driving 24
Seat belt 26
Airbag 32
Child safety information 44
Child restraint system 45
Installation of child restraint system 50
Precautions for exhaust gas 54
1-2. Warning lamps and indicator lamps
Indicator lamp 55
Warning lamp 57
1-3. IMMO system/anti-theft system
Engine IMMO system 64
Body anti-theft system 65

Before driving, adjust the seat, steering wheel and rearview mirrors to the proper positions to ensure safe driving.

■ Correct driving posture



1 Sit up straight with your back against the seat back.
2 Adjust the seat position forward or backward to ensure that you can depress the pedal to the desired position easily.
3 Adjust the seat back for convenient access to various switches.
4 Adjust the tilt angle of the steering wheel so that the airbag is facing the driver's chest.
5 Adjust and lock the headrest so that its center is flush with the upper part of the ear.
6 Fasten the seat belt properly.

■ Correct use of seat belt

Before driving, make sure that all occupants have fastened the seat belts.

Children shall use appropriate child restraint systems until they become large enough to wear the vehicle's seat belt.

■ Adjustment of rearview mirrors

Adjust the interior and exterior rearview mirrors properly to ensure a clear rear view.

⚠ WARNING

■ Precautions when driving

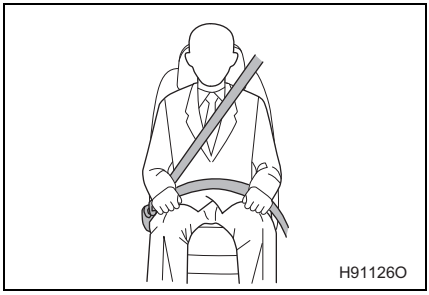
- Do not adjust the driver's seat while driving as this may result in loss of vehicle control.
- Do not place a cushion between your body and the seat back, as this will hinder proper sitting posture and reduce the effectiveness of seat belt and headrest.
- Do not place objects under the front seats as this may cause the objects to be caught by the seat sliders.
- During long-distance driving, please take appropriate breaks if you feel tired.
  If you feel tired or drowsy during driving, do not force yourself to continue driving but immediately rest.

■ Adjustment of seat position

- Be careful when adjusting the seat position to ensure that the seat does not hurt any other occupants.
- Do not place your hand under the seat or near the moving parts while adjusting the seat, otherwise your fingers may be pinched by seat adjustment device.

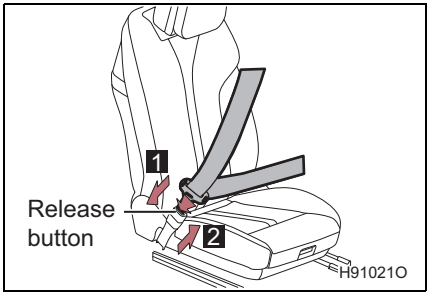
Before driving, make sure that all occupants have fastened the seat belts.

How to use seat belt correctly



- Stretch the shoulder belt so that it slopes across the shoulder, but does not touch the neck or slip off the shoulder.
- Spread the lap belt as low as possible across the hips.
- Adjust the position of the seat back so that you sit up straight with your back against the seat back.
- Do not twist the seat belt.

Fastening and unfastening seat belt



1 Fasten the seat belt
Insert the latch plate into the buckle until you hear a "click" sound.

2 Unfasten the seat belt
Press the release button.

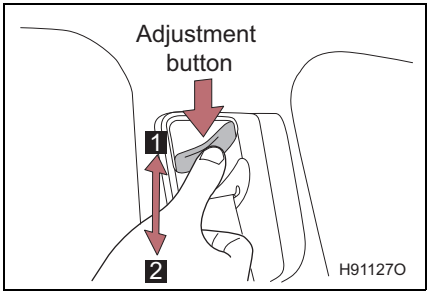
⚠ CAUTION

If any occupant does not fasten the seat belt, the instrument cluster will give an alarm prompt when the car reaches a certain speed.

⚠ WARNING

When using seat belt on both sides of rear seat, it is necessary to place it in the seat belt guide belt, to avoid reining your neck when using.

Adjusting seat belt height (front seats)

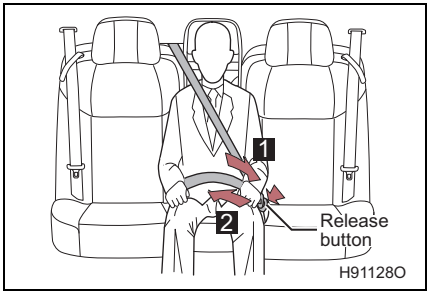


1 Move upward

2 Move downward

Press and hold the adjustment button and move the height adjuster up or down as desired until you hear a "click" sound.

Rear center seat belt*



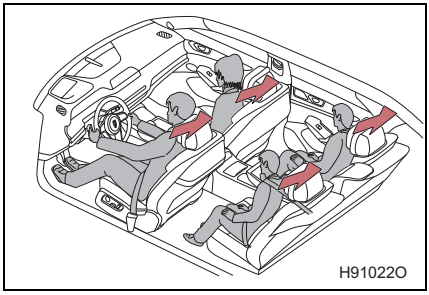
1 Fasten the seat belt

Insert the latch plate into the buckle until you hear a "click" sound.

2 Unfasten the seat belt

Press the release button.

Seat belt pretensioner (front seat and outside rear seat)



When the car is subjected to a serious frontal collision, the pretensioner will be activated to tighten the seat belt so as to quickly restrain the occupant's body for better protection.

However, the pretensioner may not be activated during a minor frontal collision, side collision or rear-end collision.

Emergency locking retractor (ELR)

The retractor will lock the seat belt in the event of emergency braking or a collision. It will also lock the seat belt if you lean forward too quickly. Slow and smooth movement can stretch the seat belt, so that you can move freely.

Use of child seat belt

The seat belts on the car are mainly designed for adults.

- Children shall use appropriate child restraint systems until they become large enough to wear the vehicle's seat belt.
- When children become large enough to wear the vehicle's seat belt, follow the instructions for using the seat belt. (See P.26)

Replacement of seat belt after pretensioner activation

- If the car is involved in multiple collisions, the seat belt pretensioner will be activated during the first collision, but no longer be activated during the second and subsequent collisions.
- After the seat belt pretensioner is activated in a collision, please contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer to replace the seat belt in time.

Seat belt regulations

If there are seat belt regulations in your country or region, please contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer for replacement or installation of the seat belt.

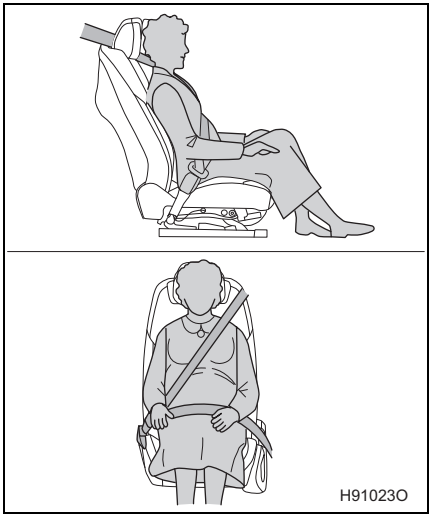
⚠ WARNING

To reduce the risk of injury due to emergency braking, emergency steering, or accidents, observe the following precautions; otherwise, serious injury or death may be caused.

■ Fasten the seat belt properly

- Make sure that all occupants have fastened the seat belts.
- Be sure to fasten the seat belt correctly at all times.
- Do not over-recline the seat for comfort. The seat belt provides the maximum protection only when you sit up straight with your back against the seat back.
- Do not place the shoulder belt under your arms.
- Be sure to spread the seat belt as low as possible across the hips.

■ Pregnant women



- Please follow your doctor's advice and properly fasten the seat belt.
- Like other occupants, pregnant women should also spread the lap belt as low as possible across the hips. The shoulder belt should be stretched obliquely along the shoulders and across the chest, and avoid contact with the raised abdomen.
- If the seat belt is not properly fastened, in emergency braking or a collision, pregnant women and fetus may suffer from serious injury or even death.

■ Patients

Please follow your doctor's advice and properly fasten the seat belt.

■ When a child is in the vehicle

Do not let the child play the seat belt. If the seat belt is wrapped around the child's neck, asphyxiation or other serious injury that could result in death may be caused.

If the seat belt cannot be unfastened in such a case, cut off the seat belt with a pair of scissors.

⚠ WARNING

In order to reduce the risk of personal injury in case of emergency braking or an accident, and to avoid serious personal injury or even death, please observe the following precautions.

■ **Fasten the seat belt correctly**

- It is very dangerous for the driver to sit in the wrong posture or fasten the seat belt in the wrong way. The pretensioners and load limiters cannot provide adequate protection due to incorrect fastening of seat belt, which may result in serious personal injury.
- The incorrect fastening of seat belt is very dangerous. During a collision, an occupant who fastens the seat belt incorrectly may collide with other persons or objects in the car, or may even be thrown out of the car, resulting in serious injury or even death. In the same collision, an occupant who fastens the seat belt correctly will be safer.

■ **Do not twist the seat belt when fastening it**

A twisted seat belt is very dangerous. During a collision, the seat belt cannot fully utilize its full width to absorb the impact force, so that more force is exerted on the bones under the seat belt, which can result in serious injury or even death.

■ **Do not share a seat belt with others**

It is very dangerous to share a seat belt with others (including children). Because the seat belt cannot properly disperse the impact force, and the occupants can collide with each other, causing serious injury or even death.

■ **Adjustable shoulder belt anchorages (front seats)**

Make sure that the shoulder belt crosses the middle of the shoulder. The seat belt should be away from the neck, but shall not slip off the shoulder. Otherwise, the protective effect of the seat belt may be reduced in the event of an accident, and serious injury or death may be caused in case of emergency braking, sudden steering or accident.

■ **Do not over-recline the seat**

Do not over-recline the seat for comfort. The seat belt provides the maximum protection only when you sit up straight with your back against the seat back.

⚠ WARNING

■ **Do not drive the car with a damaged seat belt**

The use of a damaged seat belt is very dangerous. An accident may result in damage to the seat belt. The damaged seat belt fails to provide adequate protection in a collision. After an accident, all seat belt systems shall be thoroughly inspected by an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer before use.

■ **Seat belt pretensioner**

Immediately after any collision, please contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer for inspection of seat belt pretensioners and airbags. As with airbags, the seat belt pretensioners can only be used once and must be replaced after activation in a collision. If not replaced, the risk of serious injury to the occupants may be increased during the second collision.

■ **Damage and wear of seat belt**

- Do not allow the seat belt or latch plate get caught in the door as this may damage the seat belt.
- Check the seat belt regularly. Check the seat belt for cuts, wear and looseness. Do not use a damaged seat belt, but replace it. A damaged seat belt cannot protect the occupant and could result in serious injury or even death.
- Make sure that the latch plate and buckle of seat belt are locked and the seat belt is not twisted.
  If the seat belt fails to work properly, please immediately contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.
- If the car is involved in a serious accident, replace the seat belt together with the seat assembly even if there is no significant damage.
- Do not install, remove, modify, disassemble or discard the seat belt without authorization. Please contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer for necessary treatment.

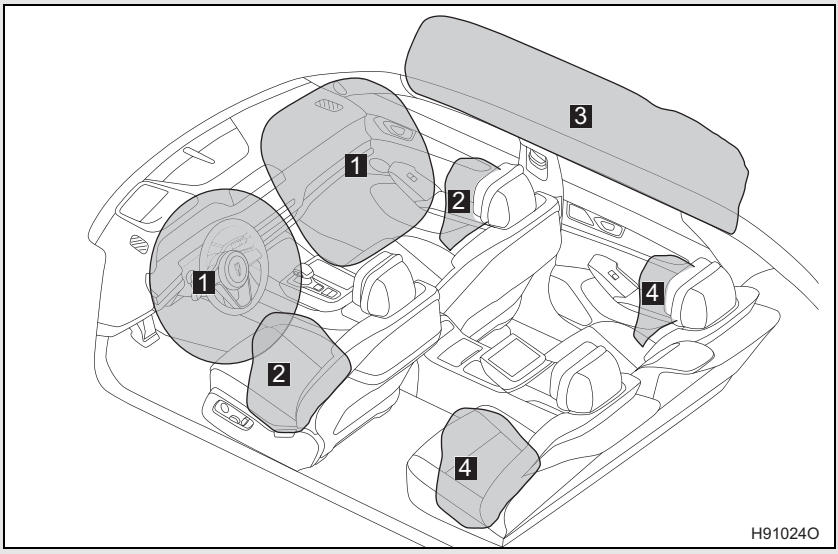
⚠ CAUTION

■ **Keep seat belt clean**

If the seat belt is dirty, it may be difficult to be retracted. Please keep the seat belt clean. (See P.369)

Airbag

The airbag is a passive safety protection device designed to mitigate or avoid the injury to the occupants when the car is subjected to serious collisions that may cause serious injuries to the occupants. In certain serious collisions, the airbag can be deployed. The car is equipped with multiple airbags. The airbags and seat belts work together to reduce the risk of serious injury or even death. (The shape of the deployed airbag is only for reference)



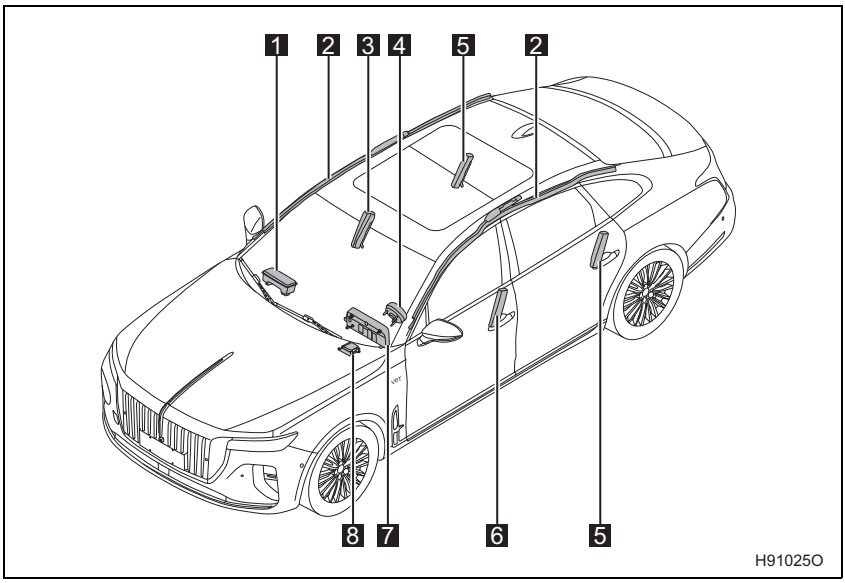
1 Driver's airbag/front passenger's airbag
To help protect the driver's and front passenger's head and chest from the impact of interior components.

2 Driver's seat airbag/front passenger's seat airbag
To help protect the driver's and front passenger's torso.

3 Curtain airbag
To help protect the heads of the driver, front passenger, and rear outer occupant.

4 Rear seat airbag
To help protect the torsos of the rear occupants on both sides.

Components of supplemental restraint system (SRS)



1 Front passenger's airbag
2 Curtain airbag
3 Front passenger's seat airbag
4 Driver's airbag
5 Rear seat airbag
6 Driver's seat airbag
7 Airbag fault warning lamp
8 Airbag control unit

These are the main components of the SRS.

In the event of severe frontal or side collision, the SRS triggers the airbag inflator. The chemical reaction in the airbag inflator can quickly fill the airbag with non-toxic gas to avoid injury to the occupants due to a secondary collision with interior components.

⚠ WARNING

■ Precautions for airbag

Please observe the following precautions for airbags. Failure to do so may result in serious personal injury or even death.

- The driver and other occupants in the car must correctly fasten the seat belts.
  The airbag is an auxiliary device used in conjunction with the seat belt.
- The driver's airbag deploys with considerable force, and if the driver is too close to the airbag, serious injury or death may be caused.
- The high-risk zone for the driver's airbag is the first 0-100 mm of deployment. Keep at least 300 mm away from the driver's airbag. This is the distance from the center of the steering wheel to the sternum of the driver. If you are sitting at a distance of less than 300 mm, you can adjust the driving position using the following methods:
  - Move the seat to the rear as far as possible, but it is still the prerequisite to depress the pedals easily.
  - Slightly tilt the seat back backward. If it is difficult to see the road ahead after the seat back is tilted, use a hard anti-slip seat cushion to lift the body or raise the seat.
  - Adjust the steering wheel to tilt it downward as far as possible. This allows the airbag to face the driver's chest rather than the head and neck.

  When the driver's seat is adjusted in accordance with the above recommendations, the pedals and steering wheel should be kept in the driver's control range, and control switches of the instrument panel are within the driver's field of view.
- When scrapping the car or the components of SRS and pretensioner seat belts, please observe the relevant safety regulations.

■ Fasten the seat belt properly

Always fasten the seat belt when driving a car equipped with airbags. It is very dangerous to rely solely on the airbag in an accident. Because only the airbag may not be able to avoid serious injury. Therefore, be sure to fasten the seat belt when driving or riding the car.

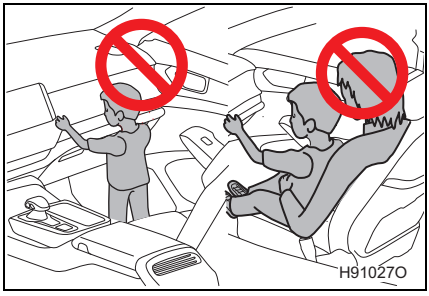
⚠ WARNING

■ Precautions for airbag

- The front passenger's airbag deploys with considerable force, and if the front passenger is too close to the airbag, serious injury or death may be caused. The front passenger's seat should be as far away from the airbag as possible, and the seat back should be adjusted so that the front passenger can sit upright.
- Improperly seated/protected infants and young children may suffer from serious injury or death due to airbag deployment. Infants and young children who are unable to use the seat belts shall be properly restrained by child restraint systems. We strongly recommend that the infants and young children use child seats and the child seats be placed on the rear seats of the car. For infants and young children, the rear seats are safer than the front passenger's seat.



- Do not lean against the instrument panel, A-pillars, roof side rails, door parts or seat edges, otherwise, when the front passenger's airbag is deployed, it may cause a strong head impact, resulting in serious injury or even death (when children are in the car, more attention shall be paid).



- Do not allow children to stand in front of the front passenger's airbag.
- Do not allow children to sit on the front passenger's lap. Do not place items on the front passenger's lap.

⚠ WARNING

■ Precautions for airbag



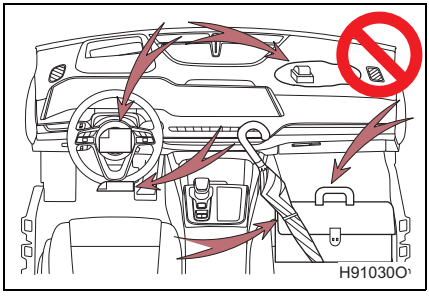
● Do not lean against the doors, roof side rails, A-pillars or B-pillars.



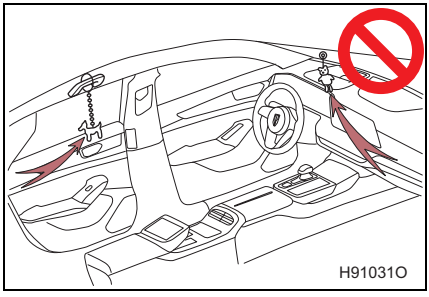
● Do not face the door and kneel on the seat or extend the head and hand out of the car.

⚠ WARNING

■ Precautions for airbag



- Do not attach or lean any items to the instrument panel, driver's airbag cover, etc. These items may be ejected upon deployment of driver's airbag or front passenger's airbag.



- Do not tie anything to the doors, windshields, windows, A-pillars, B-pillars, C-pillars, roof side rails, roof grab handles, etc.
- Do not hang coat hangers or other hard objects on the coat hooks. If the curtain airbag is deployed, these objects may be ejected, resulting in serious injury or death.

⚠ WARNING

■ Precautions for airbag

- Do not use such seat accessories that will cover the seat airbag or its deployment area, as they may interfere with deployment of the airbag.
- Do not strike the area where the airbag is located or apply excessive force to it, as this may cause the airbag to malfunction.
- Do not touch the related parts immediately after the airbag is deployed (inflated), as they may be hot.
- If you feel it difficult to breathe after deployment of the airbag, open the door or window for ventilation, or leave the car if it is safe to do so. Rinse the residue on the body as soon as possible so as to avoid skin irritation.
- If the area where the airbag is located (such as the driver's airbag cover and instrument panel) is damaged or cracked, please contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer for replacement.

■ After the airbag is deployed in the event of a collision

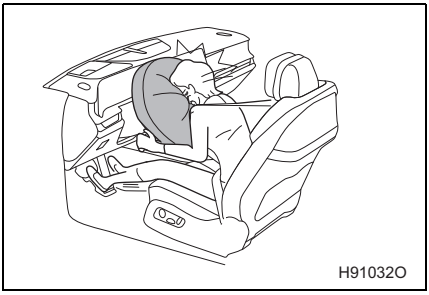
The SRS can only provide the protection in an accident for one time. After the airbag is deployed in the event of a collision, please go to an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer for replacement of airbag, airbag control unit and related components, and the original components shall not be used.

■ Modification and scrapping of SRS components

Please do not scrap the car or make the following modifications before consulting an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.
Otherwise, the airbag may malfunction or deploy (inflate) unintentionally, resulting in serious injury or even death.

- Installation, removal, disassembly and repair of airbag.
- Repair, modification, removal or replacement of steering wheel, instrument panel, seat or seat trims, A-pillar, B-pillar, C-pillar or roof side rail.
- Repair or modification of front fender, front bumper or sides of passenger compartment.
- Retrofitting of front grille with snow plow, winch and other tools.
- Modification of suspension system.
- Installation of portable two-way radio.

■ **When the airbag is deployed (inflated)**



- The airbag deploys with considerable force, and if the occupant is too close to the airbag, serious injury or death may be caused.
- The airbag deploys with ignition sound and smoke, but no fire will occur. If people with respiratory tract diseases such as asthma inhale the gas, they may experience breathing difficulties. In this case, it is relatively safe to immediately evacuate from the car. If evacuation is impossible, open the windows and doors to take in the fresh air.
- The airbag deployment speed is very high, which may cause minor scratch, scalding or other injuries.
- If the residue (gas, etc.) from airbag deployment splashes into the eyes or attaches to the skin, rinse the affected area with fresh water as soon as possible. Sensitive skin may have allergic reactions.
- In addition to the airbag itself, the SRS module components (including the steering wheel, airbag cover and inflator), as well as the instrument panel, seat, A-pillar, B-pillar, C-pillar and roof side rail may become hot in a few minutes.
- The front windshield may be broken.

■ **Airbag trigger factors**

- The triggering range of airbag in various accident situations cannot be determined in general terms, because the specific circumstances of the accidents vary greatly. For example, the nature (hardness) of the object that the car collides with, the angle of collision, and the speed of the car are all important trigger factors for the airbag.
- The decisive trigger factors for the airbag are the deceleration and pressure curves that are produced in the event of a collision. The sensors installed on the car, together with the electronic control units, identify the severity of the collision, and thus selectively trigger the airbag in a timely manner. If the deceleration value or pressure value generated and measured during a collision is lower than the reference value preset in the control unit, the airbag will not deploy even though the car may have been deformed to a certain extent in the accident.

■ **Operating conditions (driver's airbag/front passenger's airbag)**

- In the event of a more severe frontal collision, where the degree of collision exceeds a set threshold, the driver's airbag/front passenger's airbag will be deployed.

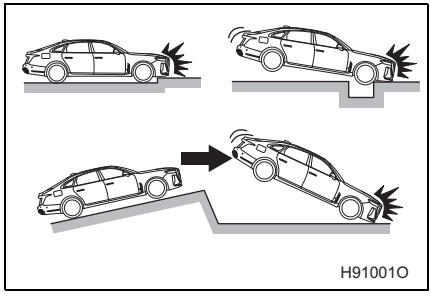
  However, if the car hits a movable or deformable object (such as a parked vehicle or a signal post) or in case of an "underrun" (such as a collision in which the front of the car "penetrates" beneath a truck's cargo compartment), the airbag may not deploy.
- In some collisions, the forward deceleration of the car is very close to the design threshold, but the frontal airbag and seat belt pretensioner may not be activated.

■ **Operating conditions (seat airbag and curtain airbag)**

- In the event of a severe side collision, the collision degree exceeds the set threshold, the seat airbag and curtain airbag on collision side will deploy.
- In some special accidents, the seat airbag and curtain airbag may deploy together with the driver's airbag/front passenger's airbag.

■ **Other cases where the airbag may deploy (except for collisions)**

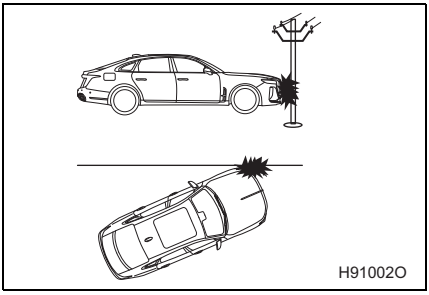
If the bottom of the car is severely impacted, the driver's airbag and front passenger's airbag also be deployed.



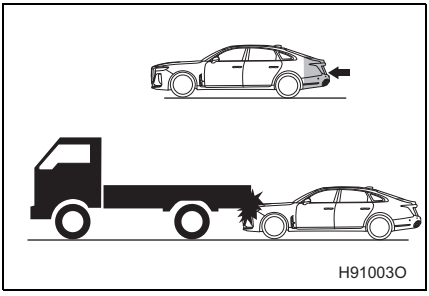
- The car hits a curb, sidewalk edge, or hard surface
- The car falls into or jumps over a deep pit
- The wheels are hard grounded or the car falls

Cases where the airbag (driver's airbag/front passenger's airbag) may not deploy

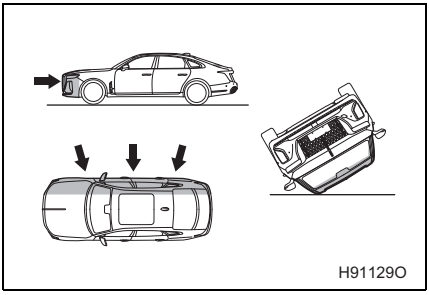
The driver's airbag/front passenger's airbag may not deploy during the collision with cylindrical objects such as utility poles and trees, non-frontal collision with walls and highway guardrails, rear-end collision, collision with the rear of truck or going under the bottom of truck, low-speed frontal collision, side collision or rollover. However, as long as the collision causes the car to have a sufficient forward deceleration, the airbag may deploy.



- Collision with cylindrical objects such as utility poles and trees
- Non-frontal collision with walls and highway guardrails



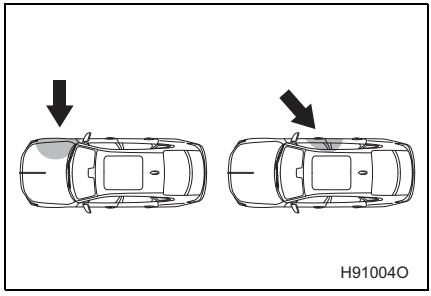
- Rear-end collision
- Collision with the rear of the truck, or going under the bottom of truck



- Low-speed frontal collision
- Side collision
- Rollover

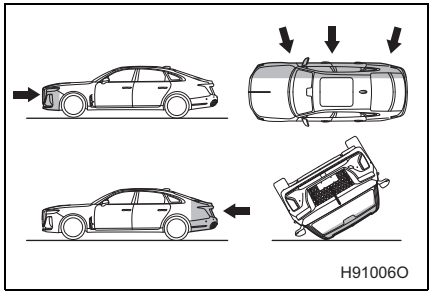
Cases where the airbag (seat airbag/curtain airbag) may not deploy

If the car is subjected to a side collision of non-passenger compartment, or a side collision of car body at an angle, the seat airbag/curtain airbag may not deploy



- Side collision of non-passenger compartment
- Side collision of car body at an angle

Generally, the seat airbag/curtain airbag will not deploy when the car is subjected to a low-speed frontal collision, low-speed side collision, rear-end collision or rollover.

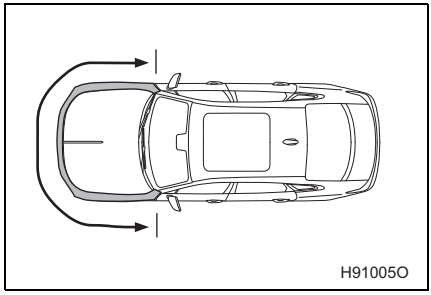


- Low-speed frontal collision
- Low-speed side collision
- Rear-end collision
- Rollover

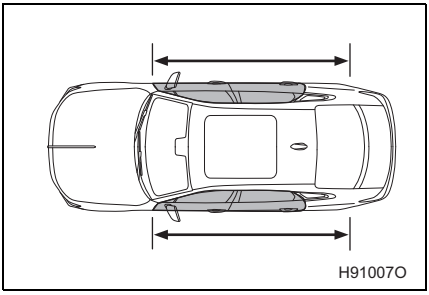
When to contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer

In the following cases, the vehicle needs to be inspected and/or repaired. Please contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer as soon as possible.

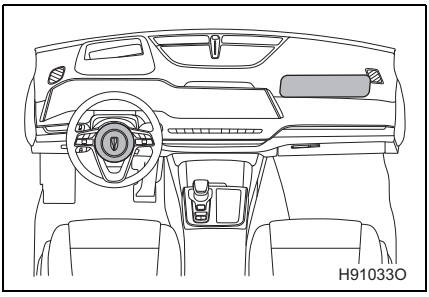
- Any airbag has been deployed.



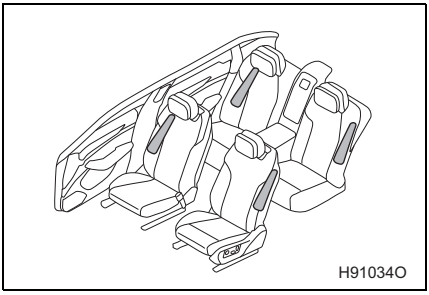
- The front of the car is damaged or deformed, or a collision in which the airbag is not deployed has occurred.


H91007O

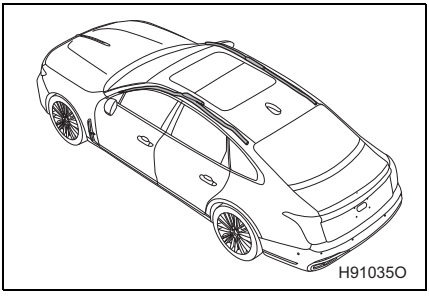
- The door or the area around the door is damaged or deformed, or a collision in which the seat airbag and curtain airbag are not deployed has occurred.


H91033O

- There are scratches, cracks or other damages on the driver's airbag cover or the instrument panel near the front passenger's airbag.


H91034O

- There are scratches, cracks or other damages on the surface of the seat equipped with seat airbag.


H91035O

- There are scratches on the curtain airbag, and cracks or other damages on the parts such as the A-pillar, B-pillar, C-pillar protector, roof, handle, reading lamp, microphone, etc.

Child safety information

Always observe the following precautions when any child is inside the car.

Children shall use appropriate child restraint systems until they become large enough to wear

the vehicle's seat belt.

- It is recommended that the child sit in the rear seats to prevent accidental contact with the shift lever, wiper switch, etc.
- During driving, use rear door child safety lock and window locking switch to prevent children from opening the door and operating the power window accidentally.
- Do not allow the child to operate devices that may pinch any body part (such as power window, engine hood, trunk lid, seat, etc.)

⚠ WARNING

■ **Do not allow children to carry the vehicle key or play alone in the vehicle**

Never leave children unattended in the car. Do not allow children to carry or use the key.
Children may start the car or operate the shift lever. Children may also get injured while playing with windows, sunroof or other vehicle equipment. In addition, too high or too low temperature inside the car may cause fatal injury to children.

■ **Always lock the car, and keep the key out of reach of children**

It is dangerous if the car is locked improperly while leaving the car or place the key within the reach of children. The child who enters the trunk through an open trunk may get locked in the trunk by accident. Especially in summer, the child may suffer from heat exhaustion, resulting in brain injury and even death. Regardless of whether you have children, always lock the doors and trunk.

Child restraint system

FAW strongly recommends that you use the child restraint system.

Precautions

The study shows that the child will be safer if the child restraint systems is installed in the rear seat other than in the front passenger's seat.

- Please select the appropriate child restraint system according to the weight and size of the child.
- For installation details, see the instructions attached to the child restraint system.
  This manual provides general installation instructions.
- FAW recommends that you use a child restraint system that complies with GB 27887-2011 regulation.

Type of child restraint system

According to GB 27887-2011 regulation, the child restraint system can be divided into the following five groups:

Group 0: < 10 kg

Group 0+: < 13 kg

Group I: 9-18 kg

Group II: 15-25 kg

Group III: 22-36 kg

Information about the applicability of different seating positions for seat belt-secured child restraint system

Weight group	Seating position (or other positions)		
	Front passenger's seat	Outside rear seat	Rear center seat
Group 0: < 10 kg	X	X	X
Group 0+: < 13 kg	X	X	X
Group I: 9-18 kg	X	X	X
Group II: 15-25 kg	X	X	X
Group III: 22-36 kg	X	X	X

The meanings of above alphabets are:

X: This seating position is not applicable to the child restraint system in this weight group.

Information about the applicability of different ISOFIX positions for ISOFIX child restraint system

Weight group	Size	Anchorage	ISOFIX position in the car	
			Rear left seat	Rear right seat
Carry cot	F	ISO/L1	X	X
	G	ISO/L2	X	X
Group 0: < 10 kg	E	ISO/R1	IUF	IUF
Group 0+: < 13 kg	E	ISO/R1	IUF	IUF
	D	ISO/R2	IUF	IUF
	C	ISO/R3	IUF	IUF
Group I: 9-18 kg	D	ISO/R2	IUF	IUF
	C	ISO/R3	IUF	IUF
	B	ISO/F2	IUF	IUF
	B1	ISO/F2X	IUF	IUF
	A	ISO/F3	IUF	IUF

The meanings of above alphabets are:

IUF: The general front-facing ISOFIX child restraint system approved for this weight group is applicable.

X: The ISOFIX position is not applicable to the ISOFIX child restraint system in this weight group and/or size class.

Choose an appropriate child restraint system

- Children shall use appropriate child restraint systems until they become large enough to wear the vehicle's seat belt.
- If the child is too large for a child restraint system, sit the child on rear seat and use the vehicle's seat belt.

⚠ WARNING

Manufacturer's instructions for child restraint system

Always observe the manufacturer's instructions when selecting, installing and using a child restraint system, otherwise the desired protection may not be obtained.

When a child is in the vehicle

Do not let the child play the seat belt. If the seat belt twists around the neck, the child may suffer from suffocation or other serious injury, and even death.

If the seat belt cannot be unfastened in such a case, cut off the seat belt with a pair of scissors.

When the child restraint system is not used

- The child restraint system should be properly secured on the seat even if it is not being used.
  Do not place an unsecured child restraint system in the passenger compartment.
- If the child restraint system must be removed, remove it and secure it in the trunk. If the headrest is removed to facilitate the installation of child restraint system, always refit the headrest before driving. Otherwise, the occupants may get injured in case of emergency braking or accident.

Use the child restraint system

If an inappropriate child restraint system is used for this car, the infant or child may not be properly protected, and the serious injury and even death may occur (in case of emergency braking or accident).

⚠ WARNING

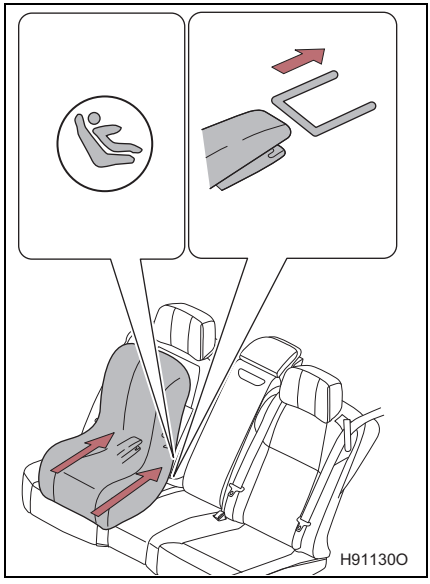
■ Precautions for child restraint system

- The child must be restrained by a seat belt or child restraint system according to the weight and size of the child to effectively protect the child in the event of an accident and emergency braking. Holding the child in your arms does not replace the role of a child restraint system. During an accident, the child may collide with the windshield or be squeezed between you and the compartment.
- We strongly recommend that you choose an appropriate child restraint system based on the child's size and install it in the rear seat. Installing a child restraint system in the front passenger seat is strictly prohibited.
- Vehicles with seat airbags and curtain airbags: Even if the child restraint system is properly used, the head or any part of body cannot lean against the door, seat or roof side rail (where the seat airbag or curtain airbag may deploy). Otherwise, the large impact force generated by the deployed seat airbag or curtain airbag may result in serious injury and even death to the child.
- Always follow the manufacturer's instructions and make sure the child restraint system is securely fastened at all times.
  Failure to secure the child restraint system is very dangerous. During emergency braking or a collision, the child restraint system can move, causing serious injury or death to the child or other occupants.

Installation of child restraint system

Please observe the instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer. Secure the child restraint system firmly to the seat with ISOFIX rigid anchorages. Fix the top tether during the installation of the child restraint system equipped with top tether.

Installation with ISOFIX rigid anchorages



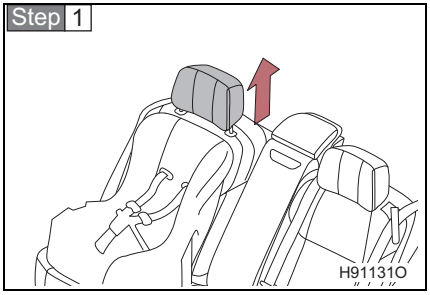
Step 1 Slightly increase the gap between the seat cushion and the seat back.

Step 2 Insert the child seat buckle to the ISOFIX rigid anchorage, ensure that buckle is locked securely.

If the headrest interferes with the child restraint system and cannot be installed properly, adjust the headrest upward before installing the child restraint system.

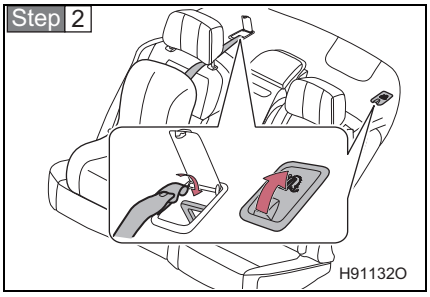
If the child restraint system has a top tether, fix the top tether onto the anchorage support.

Child restraint system with top tether



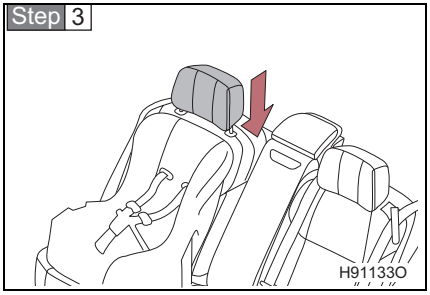
Secure the child restraint system with ISOFIX rigid anchorages.

If the headrest interferes with the child restraint system and cannot be installed properly, adjust the headrest upward before installing the child restraint system.



Clamp the hook onto the anchorage support, and fasten the top tether.

Make sure that the top tether is fastened.



Recover the headrest to the correct position.

⚠ WARNING

■ **When installing the child restraint system**

Please observe the following precautions, otherwise serious injury or death may occur.

- Tie up the top tether firmly, and make sure that the seat belt is not twisted.
- Do not tie the top tether to any object rather than the anchorage support.
- Push and pull the child restraint system in different directions to make sure it is securely installed.
- Do not adjust the seat after the child restraint system is installed. If the seat is adjusted, the safety of the child restraint system should be reconfirmed.
- Please observe the installation instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer.

■ **Secure the child restraint system to the anchorage correctly**

When using a lower anchorage, make sure that there are no foreign objects around the anchorage and that the seat belt is not stuck behind the child restraint system. Make sure that the child restraint system is securely fastened, otherwise serious injury or death of the child or other occupants may occur in emergency braking or in an accident.

WARNING

■ **When installing the child restraint system**

- Please observe the instructions attached to the child restraint system, and secure the child restraint system in place. The improper securing will cause serious injury and even death to the child or other occupants in case of emergency braking or accident.



- The labels pasted on inner and outer sides of sun visor on front passenger's side remind you not to place rear-facing child restraint systems on airbag-protected seats.
  For details of label, see the figure.

Precautions for exhaust gas

Exhaust gas contains substances harmful to human body.

⚠ WARNING

Exhaust gas contains colorless and odorless harmful gas - carbon monoxide (CO).

Please observe the following precautions. Otherwise the exhaust gas may enter the vehicle, causing dizziness and accidents, or seriously endangering health and even leading to death.

■ Important when driving

- Keep the trunk lid closed.
- If you can smell exhaust gas in the vehicle even if the trunk lid is closed, open the windows and contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer to inspect the vehicle as soon as possible.

■ When parking

- If the vehicle is parked in a poorly ventilated or closed place (such as garage), please turn off the engine.
- Do not keep the engine running for a long time.
  If this situation cannot be avoided, please park the vehicle in an open place and make sure that the exhaust gas does not enter the vehicle.
- Do not keep the engine running in places with deep snow or where are snowing. If snow mounds form around the vehicle while the engine is running, accumulated exhaust gas may enter the vehicle.

■ Exhaust pipe

The exhaust system should be checked regularly. If there are holes or cracks, joint damage or abnormal exhaust noise due to corrosion, please contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer to inspect and repair the vehicle.

Indicator lamp

Indicator lamps indicate the current working status of the vehicle systems.


Left turn signal indicator lamp


Right turn signal indicator lamp


High beam ON indicator lamp


Position lamp ON indicator lamp


Low beam ON indicator lamp


Rear fog lamp ON indicator lamp


ESC system working indicator lamp (Flashing)



ESC system OFF indicator lamp


Idle stop-start working indicator lamp


Idle stop-start limited indicator lamp



Idle stop-start OFF indicator lamp


Door opening indicator lamp


ADB system working indicator lamp


ADB system ON indicator lamp


Cruise control ON indicator lamp


Cruise control working indicator lamp



"READY" indicator lamp



TSR system intelligent speed limit - traffic sign recognition indicator lamp


EPB working indicator lamp


AUTO HOLD working indicator lamp


FCW/AEB system OFF indicator lamp



Unable to switch indicator lamp in driving mode


LDW/LKA system ON indicator lamp


LDW/LKA system working indicator lamp


DSM system warning indicator lamp


Maintenance indicator lamp


ACC system ON indicator lamp


ACC system working indicator lamp


SACC system steering assist ON indicator lamp


SACC system steering assist working indicator lamp


Failed key identification indicator lamp


Outside ambient temperature display Indicator lamp

Warning lamp

If any warning lamp comes on or flashes, please keep calm and take the following measures. If any warning lamp comes on or flashes but then goes out, it does not necessarily indicate that the system is faulty. However, if this situation persists, please contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer to inspect the vehicle.

List of warning lamps

Warning lamp	Warning lamp/detailed description/countermeasures
	**Engine control system fault warning lamp** • If this warning lamp remains on after the engine is started, it indicates a fault in the engine control system. → **Immediately park the vehicle in a safe place and contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.**
	**Fault warning lamp of engine exhaust monitoring system** • If this warning lamp remains on after the engine is started, it indicates a fault in the exhaust monitoring system. → **Immediately park the vehicle in a safe place and contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.**
	**12 V battery charging fault warning lamp** • If this warning lamp remains on after the engine is started, it indicates a fault in the charging system. → **Immediately park the vehicle in a safe place and contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.**
	**Low fuel level warning lamp** • It indicates little remaining fuel. → **Refuel the vehicle.**

Warning lamp	Warning lamp/detailed description/countermeasures
	**Abnormal oil pressure warning lamp** • It indicates a low oil pressure. → **Immediately park the vehicle in a safe place and contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.**
	**SRS fault warning lamp** • It indicates a fault in SRS. → **Immediately contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.**
	**Seat belt unfastened warning lamp** • It indicates that the driver's or passenger's seat belt is not fastened. → **Fasten the driver's and passenger's seat belts.**
	**Transmission system/electronic shift system fault warning lamp** • It indicates a fault in transmission system/electronic shift system. → **Immediately park the vehicle in a safe place and contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.**
	**Engine IMMO system fault warning lamp** • It indicates a fault in the engine IMMO system. → **Immediately park the vehicle in a safe place and contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.**
	**Smart start system fault warning lamp** • It indicates a fault in the smart start system. → **Immediately contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.**
	**Low key battery warning lamp** • It indicates a low key battery. → **Replace the key battery.**
	**Electronic wiper system fault warning lamp** • It indicates a fault in the electronic wiper system. → **Immediately contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.**

Warning lamp	Warning lamp/detailed description/countermeasures
	**Lamp unit fault warning lamp** • It indicates a fault in external lamp units. → **Check for faults in external lamp units and harness connectors or contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer immediately.**
	**Low washer fluid level warning lamp** • It indicates a low washer fluid level. → **Add washer fluid or contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer immediately.**
	**High coolant temperature warning lamp** • It indicates a high coolant temperature. → **Immediately park the vehicle in a safe place and contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.**
	**Low brake fluid level/brake system fault warning lamp** • It indicates a fault in the brake system. → **Immediately park the vehicle in a safe place and contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer. It is risky to keep driving in this case.**
	**Excessive brake lining wear warning lamp** • It indicates excessive wear of brake lining. → **Immediately contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer to inspect and replace the brake lining.**
	**EPS system fault warning lamp** • It indicates a fault in EPS. → **Please drive carefully and contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.**
	**EPS system major fault warning lamp** • It indicates a major fault in the EPS. → **Immediately park the vehicle in a safe place and contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.**

Warning lamp	Warning lamp/detailed description/countermeasures
	**ABS system fault warning lamp** • It indicates a fault in the ABS system. → **Immediately contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.**
	**AUTO HOLD system fault warning lamp** • It indicates a fault in the AUTO HOLD system. → **Immediately contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.**
	**Hybrid system fault warning lamp** • It indicates a fault in the 48 V power system. → **Immediately park the vehicle in a safe place and contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.**
	**Cruise control system fault warning lamp** • It indicates a fault in the cruise control system. → **Immediately contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.**
	**HBB system fault warning lamp** • It indicates a fault in the HBB system. → **Immediately park the vehicle in a safe place and contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.**
	**EPB system fault warning lamp** • It indicates a fault in the EPB system. → **Immediately park the vehicle in a safe place and contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.**
	**Tire pressure abnormal/system fault warning lamp** • It indicates a fault in the TPMS system or abnormal tire pressure. → **Immediately park the vehicle in a safe place and contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.**

Warning lamp	Warning lamp/detailed description/countermeasures
	**Automatic headlamp/automatic wiper function fault warning lamp** • It indicates a fault in the automatic headlamp/ automatic wiper function. → **Immediately contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.**
	**Automatic headlamp leveling system fault warning lamp** • It indicates a fault in the automatic headlamp leveling system. → **Immediately contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.**
	**Driving mode selection system fault warning lamp** • It indicates a fault in the driving mode selector. → **Immediately contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.**
	**Idle stop-start system fault warning lamp** • It indicates a fault in the idle stop-start system. → **Immediately contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.**
	**Air suspension system fault warning lamp** • It indicates a fault in the air suspension system. → **Immediately contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.**
	**Air suspension system major fault warning lamp** • It indicates a major fault in the air suspension system. → **Immediately contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.**
	**SOS fault warning lamp** • It indicates a fault in SOS phone. → **Immediately contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.**

Warning lamp	Warning lamp/detailed description/countermeasures
	**Power assembly mounting fault warning lamp** • It indicates a fault in the power assembly mounting. → **Immediately contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.**
	**Low coolant level warning lamp** • It indicates a low coolant level. → **Immediately contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.**
	**Super-capacitor fault warning lamp** • It indicates a fault in super-capacitor. → **Immediately contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.**
	**GPF cleaning warning lamp** • It indicates that the **GPF** needs to be cleaned. → **Refer to "Particulate filter" section for cleaning or contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.**
	**GPF fault warning lamp** • It indicates a fault in GPF. → **Immediately contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.**
	**Driver assistance system fault warning lamp** • It indicates a fault in the driver assistance system. → **Immediately contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.**
	**APA system fault warning lamp** • It indicates a fault in the APA system. → **Immediately contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.**
	**Wireless charging fault warning lamp** • It indicates a fault in the wireless charging function. → **Immediately contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.**

Warning lamp	Warning lamp/detailed description/countermeasures
	**PM2.5 fault warning lamp** • It indicates a fault in the PM2.5 detection of A/C system. → **Immediately contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.**
	**ESC system fault warning lamp (remains on)** • It indicates a fault in the ESC system. → **Immediately contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.**

Note: When the oil pressure warning lamp, high coolant temperature warning lamp or any other indicator lamp comes on, the warning buzzer sounds.

Engine IMMO system

In order to prevent the vehicle from being stolen, the smart key has a built-in password chip. If the smart key is not registered in the IMMO system in advance, it is impossible to start the engine with the smart key. Different information is registered in the key for different vehicles.

Do not leave the smart key in the vehicle but carry it with you when leaving the vehicle.

This system helps to prevent vehicle theft, but does not prevent all theft and can not guarantee the absolute safety of the vehicle.

Carry the registered key with you and press the engine switch to deactivate the IMMO system.

■ **Conditions that may cause system failure**

- The key was strongly impacted
- The key is flooded
- The key is at a high temperature place (e.g. on the instrument panel exposed to the sun)
- A magnetic key chain is used
- The key has been cleaned with ultrasonic cleaner
- The key has approached or come into contact with a key of other vehicle (key with built-in transponder chip)

■ **If the engine cannot be started by using the correct method, the engine IMMO system may fail. Please contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer to inspect your vehicle.**

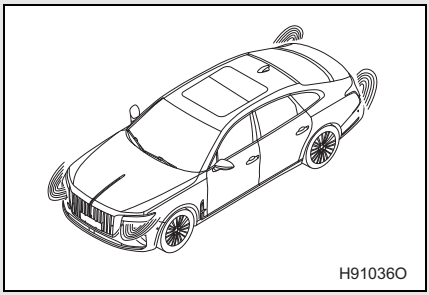
⚠ CAUTION

■ **Ensure normal operation of the system**

Do not modify or disassemble the IMMO system. Otherwise, the IMMO system will not work properly.

Body anti-theft system

The body anti-theft system mainly monitors the status of four doors, engine hood and trunk lid. When the system detects someone entering by force, it will give an alarm and make the turn signal lamps flash continuously.



Body anti-theft system works.

After the driver and all passengers getting off the vehicle, close the doors, trunk lid and engine hood and lock all doors.

Deactivating or stopping the alarm

Perform any of the following operations:

- Use intelligent unlocking or remote unlocking to unlock the vehicle.
- Turn on the engine switch.

■ Items to be checked before locking the vehicle

To prevent accidental alarm triggering, make sure that there are no people, valuables and other personal belongings in the vehicle and all windows and sunroof are closed before locking the vehicle.

■ When 12 V battery is disconnected

Be sure to deactivate the alarm system.

If the 12 V battery is disconnected before the alarm is deactivated, the alarm may be triggered after the battery is reconnected.

⚠ CAUTION

■ Ensure normal operation of the system

Do not modify or disassemble the IMMO system. Otherwise, the IMMO system will not work properly.

2-1. Vehicle inspection
Inspection before driving 68
2-2. Driving in winter
Driving essentials in winter 69
2-3. Refueling
Opening fuel tank cap 72

Inspection before driving

Before driving, it is recommended to check the followings:

- Tire
- Lighting
- Whether there are obstacles around the vehicle
- Whether there is any liquid under the vehicle (dripping water after use of A/C and from the drain hole after cooling of the exhaust pipe are normal phenomenon)

Please obey local regulations and designated traffic regulations, and always remember to drive safely.

Driving essentials in winter

Before driving in winter, please make necessary preparations and inspections. Be sure to drive in a way suitable for the main weather conditions in winter.

■ Preparations for driving in winter

- Use oil and fluids suitable for outdoor temperature.
  - Oil
  - Coolant
  - Washer fluid
- Ensure good battery performance.
- If necessary, install four snow tires or purchase a set of tire chains for driving wheels.
  Make sure that all tires are of the same model and brand, and that the size of tire chains matches that of the tires.

■ Before driving

Take the following measures according to driving conditions:

- Do not force open the frozen windows or move the frozen wipers; pour warm water on the frozen parts to melt the ice, and wipe the water immediately to prevent freezing.
- To ensure the normal operation of the fan, clear the snow off the air inlet grille.
- Remove the ice accumulated on the chassis of the vehicle.
- Regularly check and remove the snow and ice that may accumulate on the wheelhouse or brake.
- Remove the snow or mud from soles of shoes before entering the vehicle.

■ During driving

Accelerate slowly and slow down appropriately according to the road conditions.

Selection of tire chain

Use the correct tire chain size when installing tire chains.

The size of tire chain should be adjusted according to the size of each tire.

Regulations on the use of tire chains

Depending on the location and type of road, the regulations regarding the use of tire chains will vary. Be sure to check local regulations before installing tire chains.

■ Tire chain

When installing and removing tire chains, please observe the following precautions.

- Install and remove tire chains in a safe place.
- Re-tension the tire chains after driving 0.5-1.0 km.
- Install tire chains on the driving tires.
- Follow the instructions provided in the manual attached to the tire chain.

⚠ WARNING

■ Driving with snow tires

In order to avoid the possibility of losing control of the vehicle and causing serious personal injury or even death, and to reduce the risk of accidents, please observe the following precautions:

- Use the specified type of tire.
- Maintain the recommended tire pressure.
- Do not exceed the road speed limit or the prescribed speed limit for snow tires when driving.
- Snow tires should be fitted to all wheels.

■ Driving with tire chains

In order to avoid the possibility of unsafe driving and serious personal injury or even death, and to reduce the risk of accidents, please observe the following precautions:

- Do not exceed the prescribed speed limit for tire chains when driving.
- Avoid driving on uneven or pitted roads.
- Avoid sharp turns or emergency braking.
- Slow down fully before entering the curve to ensure that the vehicle can be controlled.

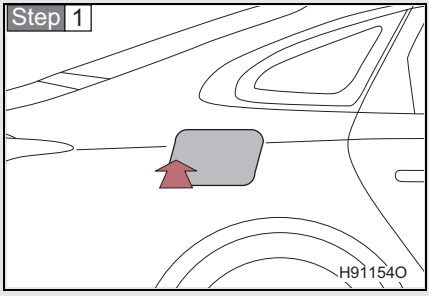
Opening fuel tank cap

Perform the following steps to open the fuel tank cap.

■ Before adding fuel

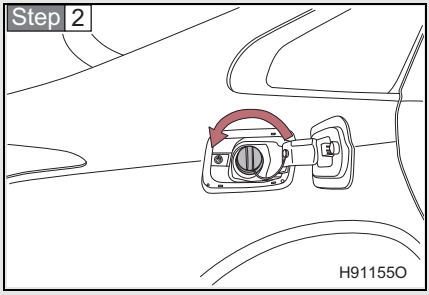
Depress the brake pedal, set the shift lever to P position, apply the parking brake, turn off the engine switch, and make sure all doors and windows are closed.

■ Opening fuel filler cap

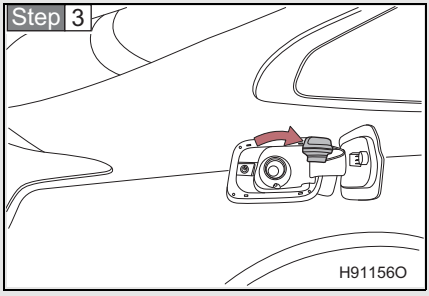


Press and open the fuel filler cap.

The fuel filler cap can be opened only when the entire vehicle is unlocked.



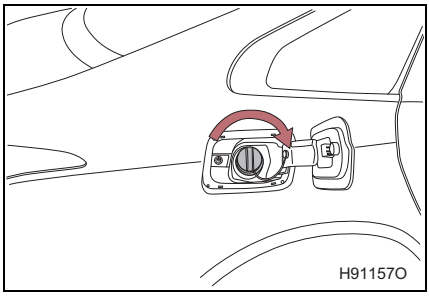
Rotate counterclockwise to open the fuel tank cap.



Hang the fuel tank cap on the fuel filler cap.

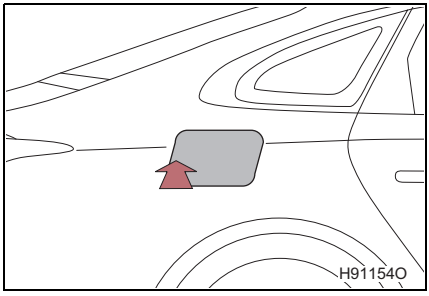
Closing fuel tank cap and fuel filler cap

Closing fuel tank cap



When refitting the fuel tank cap, screw it until you hear a "click" sound.

Closing fuel filler cap



Press the rear side of fuel filler cap, it indicates that the fuel filler cap is closed until you hear a "click" sound.

Fuel type

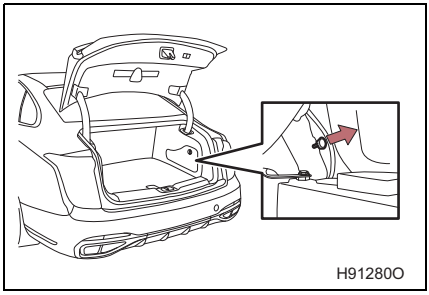
Use RON95 and above unleaded or ethanol gasoline.

Fuel tank capacity

Approximately 62 L.

In case of failure to open the fuel filler cap

In case of failure to open the fuel filler cap due to low battery or other reasons, the fuel filler cap can be unlocked by emergency unlocking cable.



The emergency unlocking cable is located in the service port on the right side of the trunk.

⚠ WARNING

■ Adding fuel

Please observe the following precautions when refueling:

- Before opening the fuel filler cap and fuel tank cap, it is necessary to remove static electricity that may be present on your body. In the presence of static electricity, the fuel may catch fire due to discharge spark.
- Do not allow people with static electricity approach the open fuel tank.
- When opening the fuel tank cap, grip it and unscrew it slowly. When the temperature is high, the pressure in the fuel tank is high, and fuel vapor may be ejected from the fuel filler. If you hear a "poof" sound while loosening the fuel tank cap, please do not continue to open the fuel tank cap. After the sound disappears, open it slowly.
- Avoid inhaling fuel vapor when refueling, because the fuel contains harmful substances.
- It is strictly forbidden to smoke or use mobile phones when refueling. Otherwise it may cause fire.
- Do not touch other people or objects with static electricity. Otherwise static electricity may accumulate and ignite the fuel.
- Comply with all precautions publicized in the gas station.

■ Precautions when replacing fuel tank cap

Do not use products other than the original fuel tank cap from FAW. Otherwise it may cause poor sealing and lead to accidents.

CAUTION

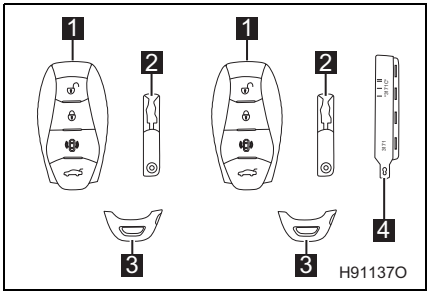
■ **Adding fuel**

When adding fuel, do not let it overflow. Otherwise it may damage the vehicle, such as causing abnormal operation of the evaporative emission control system, damaging fuel system components or body paintwork.

3-1. Key information
Key 78
3-2. Opening, closing and locking doors and trunk lid
Door 81
Trunk lid 87
PEPS 92
3-3. Loading
Goods and luggage .. 97

Key

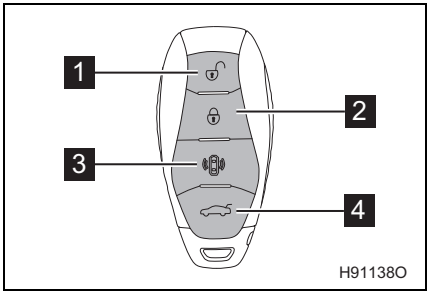
This vehicle comes with the following keys.



1 Smart key
- Operate the PEPS system (See P.92)
- Operate the wireless remote control function

2 Mechanical key
3 Key end cover
4 Key number plate

Wireless remote control



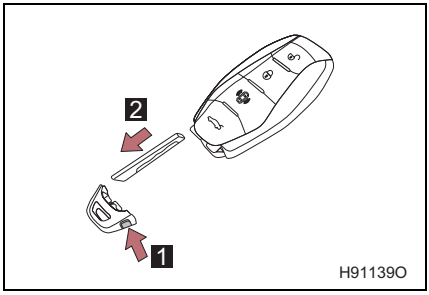
1 Unlock button
Press the button to unlock the doors; press and hold the button to open all windows and sunroof.

2 Lock button
Press the button to lock the doors; press and hold the button to close all windows and sunroof; press the button twice consecutively to trigger the vehicle locating function.

3 Remote start button
When vehicle is in anti-theft mode and engine stops, press and hold remote start button within 1.5 seconds after pressing the lock button on the remote controller in effective range to start engine remotely; After remote starting, continuously press the remote start button twice within 1.5 seconds to stop the engine.

4 Trunk lid opening/closing button
Press and hold the button to open/close the trunk lid.

Using mechanical key



1 Press the unlock button to detach the key end cover

2 Taking out the mechanical key
After using the mechanical key, store it in the smart key. Always carry the mechanical key with the smart key. If the smart key battery runs out and does not work properly, use the mechanical key. (See P.345)

When you need parking service

Be sure to keep the mechanical key with you, and only give the smart key to the parking service personnel.

Key number plate

Please keep the key number plate in a safe place and keep it properly.

When traveling by air

When flying with the smart key, make sure that you don't press any button on the smart key while in the cabin. If the key is placed in the bag, make sure that no buttons on the key are accidentally pressed. Pressing any button may cause the key to emit radio waves, thus interfering with the flight of the aircraft.

Key battery power

- The standard battery life is 1 to 2 years.
- Even if the key is not in use, the battery may be depleted. The following symptoms indicate that the key battery is low or may be exhausted. Replace the battery if necessary. (See P.406)
  - The PEPS system or wireless remote control function does not work.
  - The detection area becomes smaller.
  - The instrument cluster displays that the key battery is low.
- To avoid serious degradation of key performance, do not place it within 1 m of the following electrical equipment that can generate magnetic field:
  - TV set
  - Personal computer
  - Mobile phone, cordless phone and battery charger
  - Mobile phone or cordless phone being charged
  - Table lamp
  - Induction cooker

■ **Replacing battery**

(See P.406)

⚠ CAUTION

■ **Prevent damage to the key**

- Do not subject the key to violent impact or expose it to high temperature (such as direct sunlight) and humid environment.
- Do not wet the key or clean it in ultrasonic cleaner.
- Do not immerse the key in water.
- Do not attach metal or magnetic materials to the key, or place the key near such materials.
- Do not disassemble the smart key.
- Do not stick labels or other items on the key surface.
- Do not place the key near objects that can generate magnetic fields, such as television, sound system, induction cooker or electronic medical equipment (such as low-frequency medical equipment).

■ **Carry the smart key with you**

When carrying the key with you, keep it 10 cm or more away from the electrical equipment that are turned on. Radio waves emitted by electrical equipment within 10 cm from the key may interfere with the key, causing it to fail to work normally.

■ **When the PEPS system fails or there is other failure related to the key**

Please send the vehicle to an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer with all the keys of the vehicle.

■ **When the key is lost**

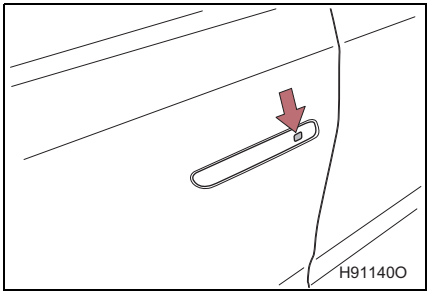
If the key is lost, the risk of vehicle theft will obviously increase. Please go to an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer with all the keys of the vehicle for re-matching.

Unlocking/locking doors from outside

■ PEPS

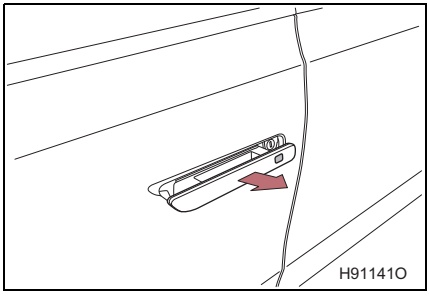
As long as you carry the smart key or Bluetooth key with you, the door can be unlocked and locked through PEPS function.

▶ Concealed door handle



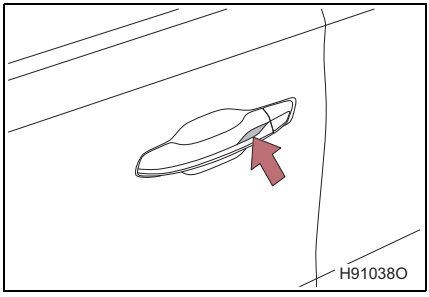
Turn off the engine switch and touch the door handle sensing switch to lock the door.

When any door is not closed, it is impossible to lock the door by touching the door handle sensing switch.



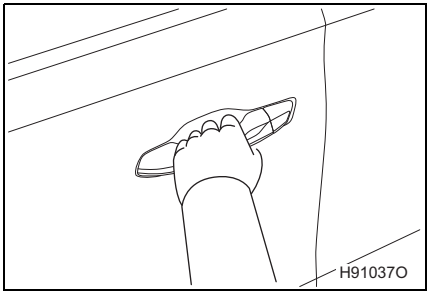
When vehicle is locked, touch the door handle sensing switch to unlock door and eject door handle.

▶ Cross-bar pull-out type door handle



Turn off the engine switch and touch the door handle locking sensing area to lock the door.

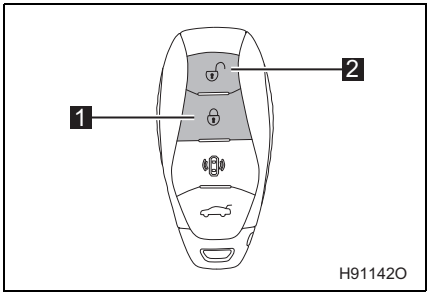
When any door is not closed, it is impossible to lock the door by touching the door handle sensing switch.



When vehicle is locked, hold the door handle to unlock the door.

When touching the door handle locking sensing area to lock the door, the door cannot be intelligently unlocked within 2 s after locking, but the remote unlocking function is not limited.

■ Wireless remote control



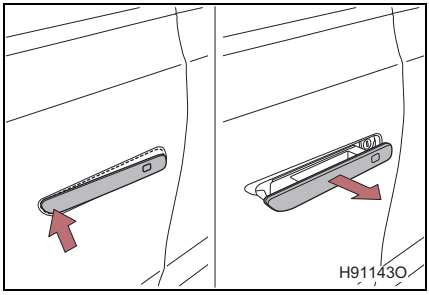
1 Locking all doors

2 Unlocking driver's door/all doors

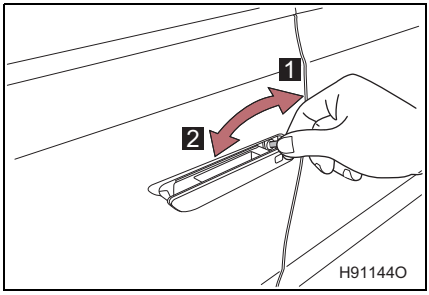
See P.179 for unlocking mode settings.

■ Mechanical key

▶ Concealed door handle



Press the front of driver's door handle to raise it, then pull the middle part and pull it out vertically.

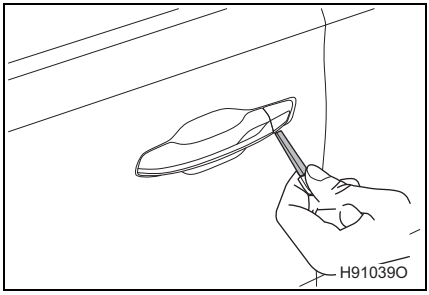


Hold the door handle, lock and unlock the door with a mechanical key.

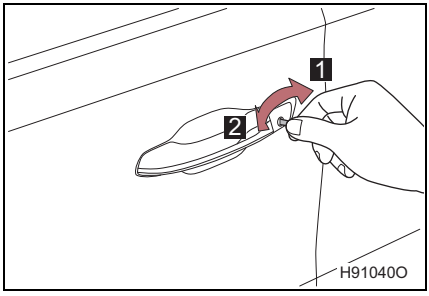
1 Unlocking the door

2 Locking the door

▶ Cross-bar pull-out type door handle



Use the mechanical key to remove the door keyhole cover.



Use the mechanical key to lock and unlock the doors.

1 Unlocking the door

2 Locking the door

■ **Operating signal**

All turn signals flash to indicate that the doors are locked/unlocked. (Lock: flash once; Unlock: flash twice)

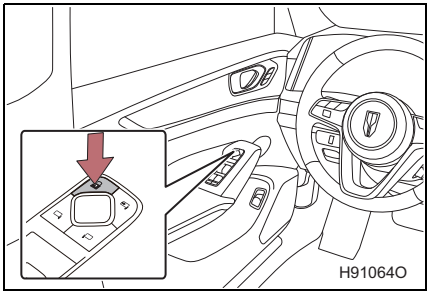
■ **The key battery runs out of power**

If the key battery runs out of power, replace the battery with a new one.
(See P.406)

Unlocking/locking doors from inside

The doors can be unlocked and locked by the central locking switch on the driver's door.

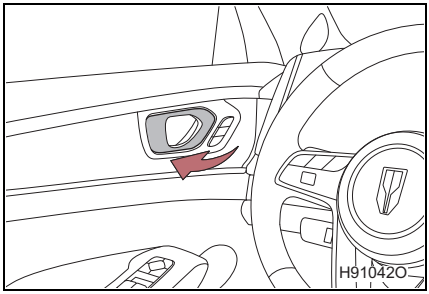
■ Central locking switch



When this switch is pressed, button indicator lamp will come on, all doors are locked, press again to unlock all doors.

Note: When a door is not closed, the central locking switch can only unlock the doors.

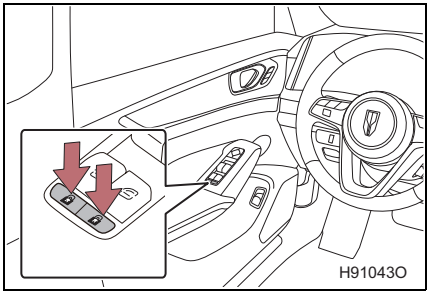
■ Door inside handle



Pull the door inside handle to open the door.

After the door is locked, pull the inside handle once to unlock the door and pull it again to open the door.

Rear door child safety lock



After the safety lock is set through this switch, the rear door and window on the corresponding side cannot be operated from inside.

Set the safety lock to prevent children from opening the rear doors and operating the window from inside.

■ **Speed sensing door lock function**

When all doors are closed with any door unlocked, if the vehicle is operating and vehicle speed exceeds approx. 15 km/h, the speed sensing door lock will be activated to lock the door.

■ **Concealed door handle**

- When vehicle is unlocked through PEPS function or central locking switch, all door handles will eject.
- When vehicle is unlocked through remote control key, driver side door handle/all door handles will eject according to the set safety unlock mode.
- When the vehicle is running and vehicle speed exceeds approx. 15 km/h, all door handles will retract.
- When vehicle is locked through PEPS function, remote control key or central locking switch, all door handles will be retract.

■ **Conditions affecting PEPS system or wireless remote control**

(See P.94)

⚠ WARNING

■ **Prevent accidents**

Please observe the following precautions when driving.

Otherwise, occupants may be thrown out of the vehicle due to the accidental opening of the door, resulting in serious personal injury and even death.

- Be sure to fasten the seat belt properly.
- Ensure that all doors are closed correctly.
- Be sure to lock all doors.
- Do not pull the door inside handle while driving.

  Otherwise, occupants may be thrown out of the vehicle due to opening of the door, resulting in serious personal injury and even death.
- If there are children in the rear seat, please set the rear door child safety lock.
- When leaving the vehicle and there is no one in the vehicle, please take the key with you, close all windows and sunroof and lock all doors to prevent others from entering or stealing the vehicle.
- Never leave children unattended in the car.
- Do not allow children to carry or use the key, as children may cause a safety hazard by starting the car or operating the shift lever.
- Do not allow children to play with windows or other equipment as they may get injured.
- Make sure that the temperature inside the vehicle is appropriate, because too high or too low temperature will cause fatal injury to children.
- Make sure that the surrounding area of the vehicle is safe when opening the door.

  It is very dangerous to open the door suddenly, which may hit other vehicles or pedestrians and cause accidents.
- After closing the door, make sure it is closed tightly.

  It is very dangerous to leave the door ajar, because the door may open accidentally during driving, which may cause an accident.

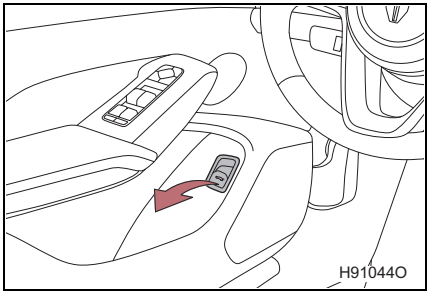
■ **When using concealed door handle**

- Be careful not to get caught by the door handle or damage the door handle.
- When the door handle ejects, make sure that there is no foreign matter around it to prevent damage.
- When driving in winter, remove the ice or snow from the door handle, and then unlock or lock the door, otherwise the door handle may not work properly.

The trunk lid can be opened by using the trunk lid unlocking button, PEPS or wireless remote control.

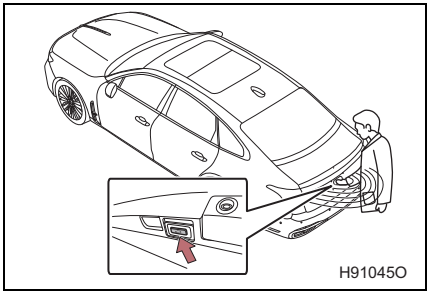
Opening trunk lid

■ Opening trunk lid from inside



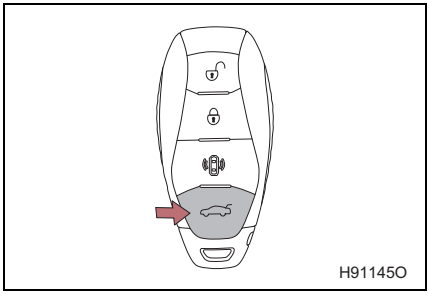
When the vehicle is stationary and the trunk lid is closed, pull up the trunk lid interior unlocking button to unlock and open the trunk lid.

■ Opening trunk lid from outside



When the vehicle is locked and engine switch is turned to IG-OFF mode, carry the smart key with you, and press the trunk lid exterior unlocking button to unlock and open the trunk lid; When the vehicle is unlocked, press the trunk lid exterior unlocking button to unlock and open the trunk lid.

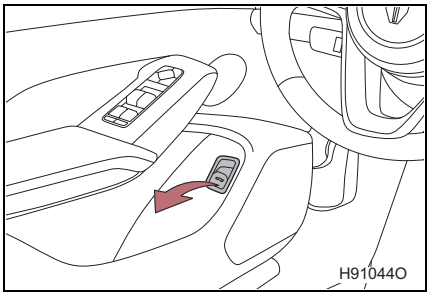
■ Wireless remote control



With the engine switch in "IG-OFF" mode and the trunk lid closed, press and hold the trunk lid opening/closing button to unlock and open the trunk lid.

Closing trunk lid

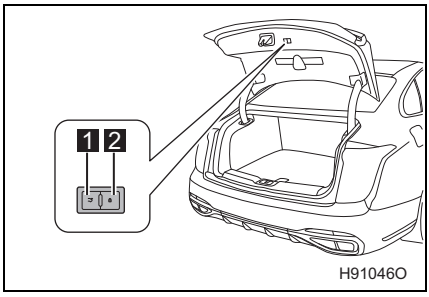
■ Closing trunk lid from inside



When the vehicle is stationary and the trunk lid is open, pull and hold the trunk lid interior unlocking button until the trunk lid is closed.

■ Closing trunk lid from outside

▶ Trunk lid switch



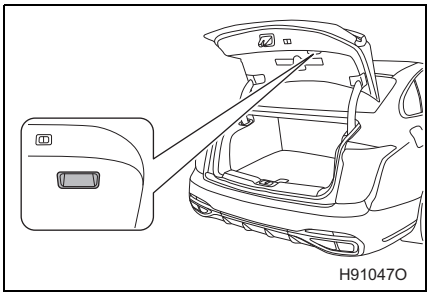
1 Trunk lid closing button

Press the trunk lid closing button, the trunk lid will automatically close.

2 One-button lock button

When engine switch is in "IG-OFF" mode and all doors are in closed state, carry the smart key and ensure that no other recognizable smart key is in the vehicle, press the one-button lock button, the trunk lid will automatically close and the vehicle will lock after a few seconds.

► Trunk lid handle



Use the trunk lid handle to lower the trunk lid, then press the trunk lid down from the outside of the car to close it.

■ Wireless remote control

With the engine switch in "IG-OFF" mode and the trunk lid opened, press and hold the trunk lid opening/closing button to close the trunk lid.

■ **Trunk lamp**

When the trunk lid is opened, the trunk lamp will come on.

■ **During the trunk lid opening process, pull the trunk lid interior unlocking button to stop opening. Pull it again to continue opening the trunk lid.**

■ **Trunk lid position memory**

Open the trunk lid, adjust the trunk lid to an appropriate angle (50% - 95% of maximum angle), press and hold the trunk lid closing button for more than 3 s, then all turn signal lamps will flash once and the current position will be memorized as the opening position of trunk.

■ **Key in trunk reminder**

With the engine switch in "IG-OFF" mode and the vehicle locked, when the trunk lid is opened and closed separately from outside, if the smart key is left in the trunk, the key in trunk reminder will be triggered (the trunk lid will be automatically opened).

⚠ WARNING

■ **When opening and closing the trunk lid, be careful to avoid being caught by the trunk lid.**

■ **Before driving**

- Make sure the trunk lid is completely closed. Otherwise, the trunk lid may open accidentally and knock into the objects nearby, or the objects in the trunk may be thrown out during driving, causing an accident.
- Prevent the children from playing in the trunk. Otherwise, they may be locked in the trunk by accident and suffer from heatstroke, suffocation or other injuries thereafter.
- Prevent the children from opening or closing the trunk lid. Failure to do so may cause the trunk lid to open by accident or cause the closing trunk lid to pinch the child's hands, head or neck.

■ **Precautions when driving**

Be sure to keep the trunk lid closed to prevent objects from being thrown out and prevent exhaust gas from entering the vehicle.

■ **When children are in or around the vehicle**

Prevent children from playing in and around an unattended vehicle, especially when the trunk lid has been opened, because children may enter and be trapped in the trunk. If the temperature in the vehicle is too high or too low at this time, serious injury or death may occur.

■ **Important when driving**

Never let anyone sit in the trunk. Otherwise they are susceptible to serious injury or even death in the event of emergency braking or collision.

■ **Anti-pinch function***

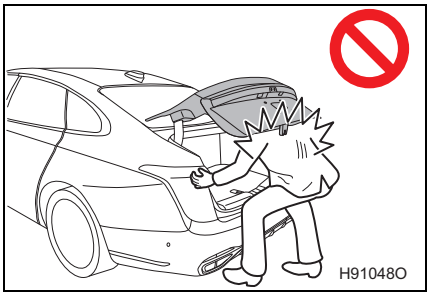
Do not activate the anti-pinch function by deliberately stopping the moving window with any part of your body.

⚠ WARNING

■ Using trunk

Please observe the following precautions. Otherwise a body part may be pinched, causing serious injury.

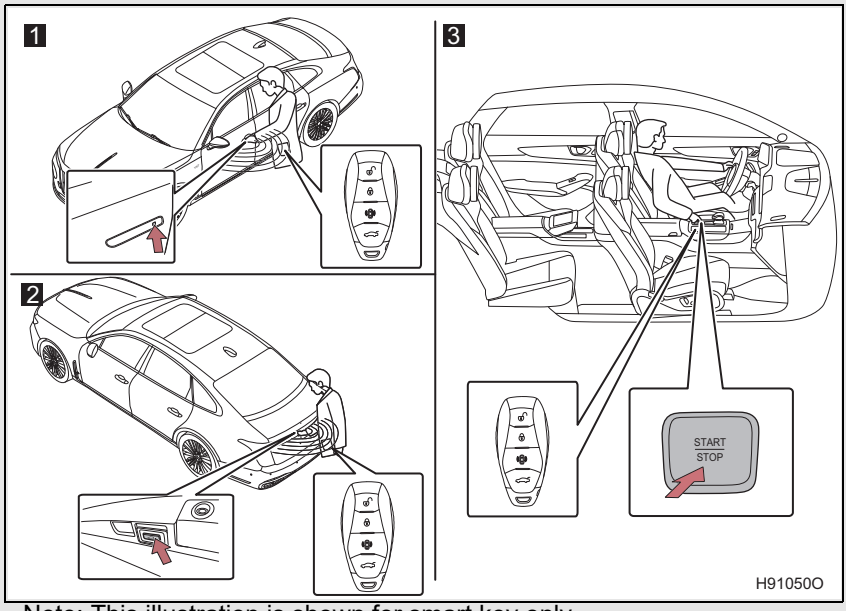
- Before opening the trunk lid, remove the heavy load on the trunk lid, such as snow and ice. Otherwise, it may cause the trunk lid to suddenly close again after being opened.
- Before opening or closing the trunk lid, please thoroughly check the surrounding area for the sake of safety.
- If anyone is nearby, ensure their safety and inform them that the trunk lid is about to open or close.
- Care should be taken when opening or closing the trunk lid in windy weather, because the trunk lid may suddenly move in strong winds.
- Do not install any accessories on the trunk lid. Otherwise, the extra load on the trunk lid may cause the trunk lid to suddenly close again after being opened.



- It is much more difficult to open or close the trunk lid on a slope than on a level road, so beware of accidental closure of the trunk lid during opening or accidental opening during closing. Before using the trunk, make sure that the trunk lid is fully opened and secured.
- When closing the trunk lid, special care should be taken to avoid pinching fingers and other parts.
- Do not touch the trunk lid during the electric operation (opening/closing) process of trunk lid, to prevent personnel injury or damage to the trunk lid.
- If the automatic opening or closing process of the trunk lid is affected by poor movement or obstacles, the opening or closing process will be interrupted automatically:
  - Check if there are obstacles in the opening or closing path of trunk lid;
  - The trunk lid can be continued to open or close manually if necessary. Greater force is required for this purpose, and force must be applied slowly; Do not operate the trunk lid violently at this time to prevent damage to the trunk lid from excessive impact.

PEPS

As long as you carry the smart key or Bluetooth key with you, for example, in your pocket, you can do the followings. (The driver must carry the key with him)



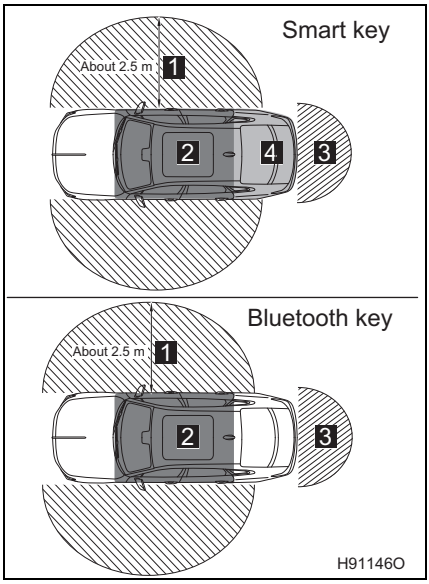
Note: This illustration is shown for smart key only.

1 Door locking/unlocking. (See P.81)

2 Trunk lid locking/unlocking. (See P.87)

3 Engine start. (See P.207)

■ **Effective range (the area where the key can be detected)**



Effective range of key sensing antenna:
A hemispherical area centered on the sensing antenna.

1 When locking or unlocking the door
When the key is in the sensing area outside the vehicle, you can lock or unlock the door.

2 When starting the engine or switching the mode of engine switch
If the key is in the sensing area inside the vehicle, you can start the engine or switch the mode of engine switch.

3 When unlocking the trunk lid
When the key is in the sensing area outside the trunk, if the conditions are met, you can unlock the trunk lid.

4 When the key is left in the trunk
If you close the trunk lid when the smart key is in the sensing area inside the trunk, and the conditions are met, the key in trunk reminder will be activated. (See P.89)

■ **Warning and prompt function**

The system warning and prompt function is realized through the instrument cluster, warning buzzer, hazard warning lamp and engine switch status indicator lamp.

●When any warning lamp comes on

Take corresponding measures depending on the lit warning lamp. (See P.57)

- When an warning message is displayed

  Take corresponding measures depending on the warning message displayed by the cluster instrument.

■ **Conditions affecting operations**

The radio waves used in the PEPS system are weak. The communication between the key and the vehicle may be affected in the following circumstances, which may prevent the PEPS system and the wireless remote control from working properly.

- When the key battery is low.
- When the key battery is depleted
- When the user is close to a TV tower, power plant, gas station, radio station, large monitor, airport or other facilities that produce strong radio waves or electrical noise interference.
- When the user carries a portable radio, mobile phone, cordless phone or other wireless communication device.
- When the key comes into contact with or is covered by a metal object.
- When multiple smart keys or Bluetooth keys are near the vehicle at the same time.
- When the user carries or uses the key with the following device that emit radio waves.
  - Smart key of any other vehicle
  - Wireless remote control key for transmitting radio waves
  - Personal computer
- When the sunshade film with metal composition or any metal material is adhered to the rear windshield.
- When the following metal objects touch or cover the key.
  - A card with aluminum foil
  - Cigarette case with aluminum foil attached inside
  - A wallet or bag made of metal
  - Coins
  - Metal hand warmer
  - Media such as CD and DVD
- There are other wireless remote control keys (transmitting radio waves) near the vehicle when they are in use.
- When the key is near the battery charger or electronic device.

■ **Operating system properly**

- Remember to carry the key with you when operating the system. When operating outside the vehicle, do not make the key too close to the vehicle.
- Depending on the specific location of the key and the holding method, the key signal may not be detected, resulting in the system not functioning properly.

■ **Safety function**

- When using remote unlocking or intelligent unlocking, if the door or trunk lid is not opened, the vehicle will be automatically locked after a period of time.

■ **When using Bluetooth key**

- When vehicle is powered off, do not keep valid Bluetooth key within effective range of smart entry for long time. Otherwise the battery may be depleted.

■ **When parking for a long time**

- To prevent the vehicle from being stolen, do not place the key too close to the vehicle.
- When the vehicle is parked for a long time, it must be locked. Otherwise, the battery may be depleted.

■ **If the PEPS system does not work properly**

- Lock and unlock the door: Use the mechanical key. (See P.345)
- Engine start. (See P.347)

■ **Comments on PEPS**

- Under the following circumstances, the system may not work properly even if the key is within the effective range (sensing area).
  - When locking or unlocking the door, the key is too close to the window or door handle, too close to the ground or too high.
- As long as the smart key or Bluetooth key is within the effective range, anyone can lock or unlock the door. Please keep the key properly.
- The PEPS may fail if a large amount of water splashes on the door handle (such as during vehicle washing or heavy rain).
- The door may not be locked under the following circumstances.
  - When the smart key or Bluetooth key is still in the vehicle and the door is locked with the intelligent locking function.
  - When the engine switch is not turned off, and you get off with the key and lock the door.

- When any door is not completely closed.
- When the shift lever is not in P/N position.

⚠ WARNING

■ Precautions for interference with electronic devices

People who use implantable pacemakers, cardiac resynchronization therapy pacemakers or implantable cardioverter defibrillators should keep an appropriate distance from the antenna of the PEPS system.

- Radio waves may affect the normal operation of such devices. For details of radio wave frequency and radio wave transmission time, please consult authorized FAW Hongqi dealer. Then ask your doctor if you can use them normally.
- People who use other electronic medical devices instead of implantable pacemakers, cardiac resynchronization therapy pacemakers or implantable cardioverter defibrillators should consult the device manufacturer about the impact of radio waves on the operation of the devices.
- Radio waves may have an unpredictable impact on the use of such medical devices.
- For details of PEPS, please consult authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.

Goods and luggage

Please pay attention to the followings when storing goods and luggage.

- Store goods and luggage in the trunk as much as possible.
- Ensure that all articles are firmly fixed.
- Keep the vehicle level. Put the weight forward as far as possible to keep the vehicle balanced.
- In order to improve the driving range, please do not carry unnecessary heavy objects.

⚠ WARNING

■ Articles prohibited from being stored in the trunk

The following articles may cause fire when placed in the trunk.

- A container with gasoline.
- Aerosol can.
- Other inflammable and explosive articles.

■ Precautions for storage

To avoid serious personal injury or even death, please observe the following precautions:

- Do not place goods or luggage in the following places. Otherwise, the articles may jam the brake pedal or accelerator pedal which may not work properly, and may block the driver's sight or hit the driver or passengers, thus causing accidents.
  - Driver's footwell
  - Front passenger's seat or rear seat (with articles)
  - Instrument panel
- Store all the articles properly in the vehicle. Otherwise, the articles may move and cause personal injury in the event of an accident or emergency braking.
- It is forbidden to store poorly sealed liquid containers in the trunk.

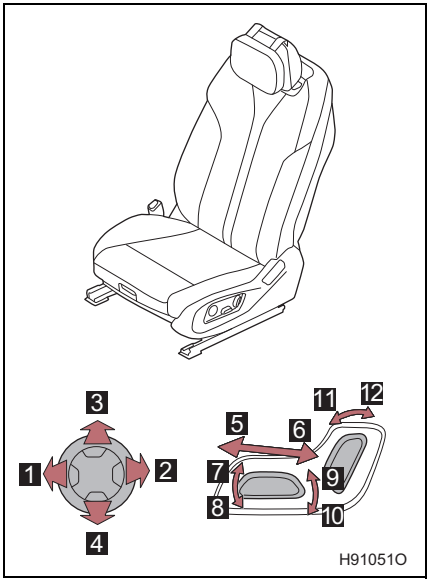
■ Load and distribution

- Please do not overload the vehicle.
- Be sure to place the goods evenly.
  Improper placement may lead to poor steering or braking control performance, resulting in serious personal injury and even death.
- Do not put heavy objects in the trunk for a long time.
  Placing heavy objects in the trunk for a long time may affect the performance of the suspension system.

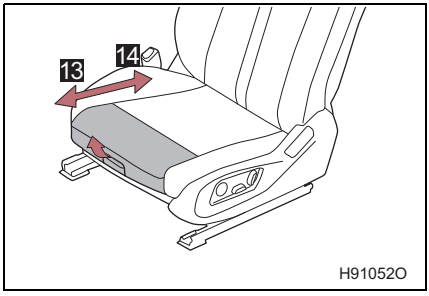
4-1. Seats
Front seat 100
Rear seat 104
Headrest 106
Seat memory 109
Seat ventilation and heating function 111
Seat massage function 113
4-2. Steering wheel and rearview mirror
Steering wheel 115
Interior rearview mirror 117
Exterior rearview mirror 119
4-3. Windows and sunroof
Power window 123
Panorama sunroof ... 126
4-4. A/C system
Automatic A/C system 130
Automatic A/C system - front control system 131
Automatic A/C system - rear control system 142
Windshield heating* 147
4-5. Interior power supply
On-board wireless charging* 148
Power outlet 150
4-6. Interior lamp
Interior lamp list 152
4-7. Storage compartments
Storage compartments list 155
4-8. Other equipment
Using other equipment 162

Adjustment steps

▶ Driver's seat

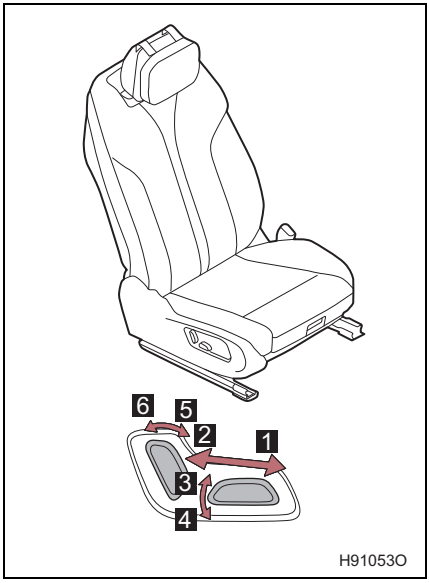


1 Protruding lumbar support
2 Depressing lumbar support
3 Moving lumbar support upward
4 Moving lumbar support downward
5 Moving seat forward
6 Moving seat backward
7 Lifting front end of seat
8 Lowering front end of seat
9 Lifting seat
10 Lowering seat
11 Tilting seat back forward
12 Tilting seat back backward

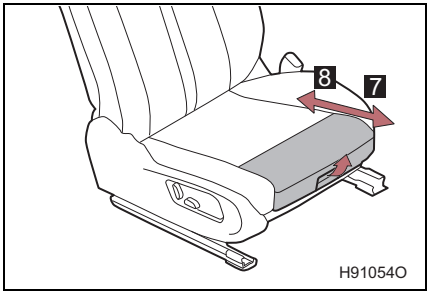


13 Increase seat cushion depth
14 Decrease seat cushion depth
The seat cushion depth can be adjusted manually after adjusting handle is pulled.

▶ Front passenger's seat



1 Moving seat forward
2 Moving seat backward
3 Lifting seat
4 Lowering seat
5 Tilting seat back forward
6 Tilting seat back backward

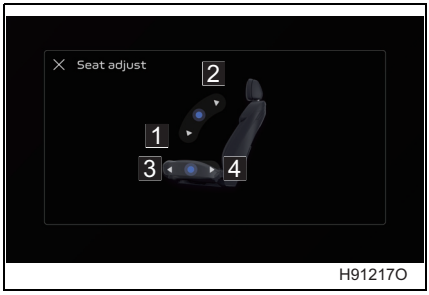


7 Increase seat cushion depth
8 Decrease seat cushion depth
The seat cushion depth can be adjusted manually after adjusting handle is pulled.

▶ Front passenger's seat (rear control button) - for rear passenger in rear row*



Touch the [Front passenger's seat adjustment] button on rear center armrest display.



H91217O

1 Tilting seat back forward
2 Tilting seat back backward
3 Moving seat forward
4 Moving seat backward

⚠ WARNING

■ **Seat adjustment**

- Do not tilt the seat excessively during driving, so as to prevent your body from slipping out of the lap belt. If the seat is tilted excessively, the lap belt may slide over the hips and strangle the abdomen or allow the shoulder belt to reach the neck, increasing the risk of serious injury or even death in the event of an accident.
- Do not place your hands under the seat or near moving parts, as the seat mechanism may pinch your hands.
- Be careful when adjusting the seat position to ensure that other occupants are not injured when the seat moves.
- Do not allow the children to adjust the seat.
  It is very dangerous to allow children to adjust the seat. If a child's hand or foot is caught, serious injury could occur.
- Always park the car before adjusting the driver's seat.
  Adjusting the driver's seat during driving is very dangerous, because the driver may lose control of the car, which could lead to an accident.

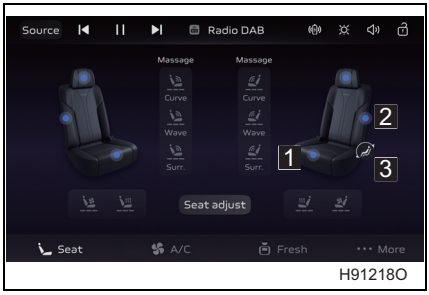
■ **Seat modification**

- Modifying or replacing the front seats may damage the airbag components in the seats and cause failure of the airbags to deploy properly in the event of a crash.
- If the seat needs to be removed or replaced, please contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.

■ **If the seat is damaged**

- If the seat has been damaged, it is very dangerous to drive the car at this time.
- After a collision, even if the seat airbag does not deploy, the seat may be damaged. Therefore, after a collision, please contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer for inspection of the seats, seat belt pretensioners and airbags.

Adjustment steps



H91218O

Touch the seat adjustment button of corresponding side on rear center armrest display. (Take right side as an example)

1 Adjust seat cushion depth
2 Adjust seat back
3 One-button lie down*



H91219O

1 Increase seat cushion depth
2 Decrease seat cushion depth
3 Tilting seat back forward
4 Tilting seat back backward

One-button lie down function

- Press the one-button lie down function button, the rear right seat cushion depth increases, the seat back is tilted backward, and the front passenger seat moves forward at the same time; After using, press the button again to return to the position before adjustment.
- After one-button lie down function is turned on, the rear right seat turns on the level-1 mode of curve massage automatically; if the massage state is changed during one-button lie down, the massage state will remain in the changed state when exiting the one-button lie down; if the massage state is not changed during the rest mode, the massage state returns to the state before entering the one-button lie down when exiting the one-button lie down.

⚠ WARNING

■ **Seat adjustment**

- Do not place your hands under the seat or near moving parts, as the seat mechanism may pinch your hands.
- Be careful when adjusting the seat position to ensure that other occupants are not injured when the seat moves.
- Do not allow the children to adjust the seat.
  It is very dangerous to allow children to adjust the seat. If a child's hand or foot is caught, serious injury could occur.

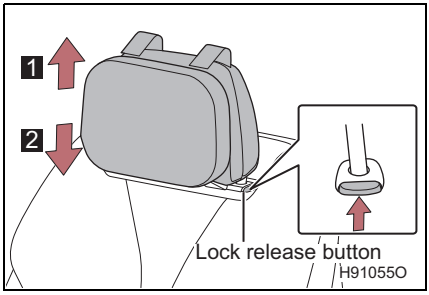
■ **Seat modification**

- Modifying or replacing the seat may damage the airbag components in the seat and cause failure of the airbag to deploy properly in the event of a crash.
- If the seat needs to be removed or replaced, please contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.

■ **If the seat is damaged**

- If the seat has been damaged, it is very dangerous to drive the car at this time.
- After a collision, even if the seat airbag does not deploy, the seat may be damaged. Therefore, after a collision, please contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer for inspection of the seats, seat belt pretensioners and airbags.

► Front seat headrest



1 Moving up
Pull up the headrest while pressing and holding the lock release button.

2 Moving down
Push down the headrest while pressing and holding the lock release button.

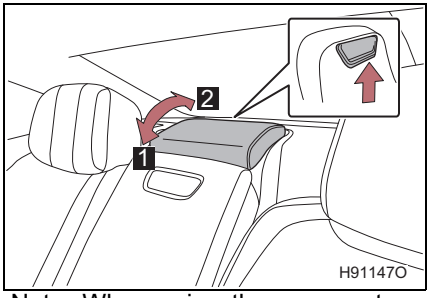
► Rear seat headrest



The headrest adjusting switch setting is on the rear center armrest display.

1 Moving up
2 Moving down

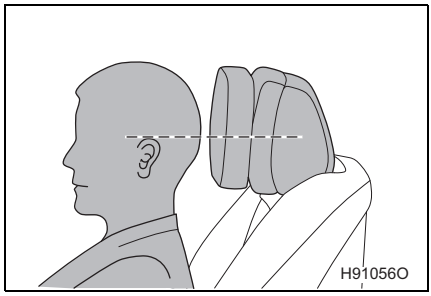
► Rear center seat headrest*



1 Upright
2 Folding
Folding the headrest backwards while pressing and holding the adjusting handle.

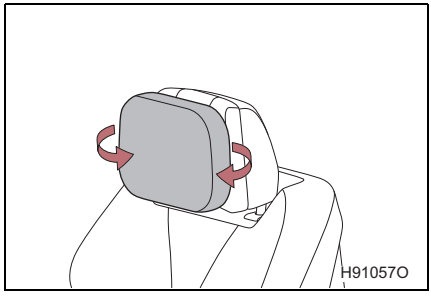
Note: When using the rear center seat, it is necessary to adjust the rear center seat headrest to upright position. After using, return it to the folding position.

■ Adjusting headrest height



Adjust the headrest so that the center of the headrest is flush with the upper end of ears.

■ Sleeping headrest



The two wings of headrest can be adjusted to a comfortable position.

⚠ WARNING

■ **Precautions for headrest**

Please observe the following precautions for headrest. Failure to do so may result in serious personal injury or even death.

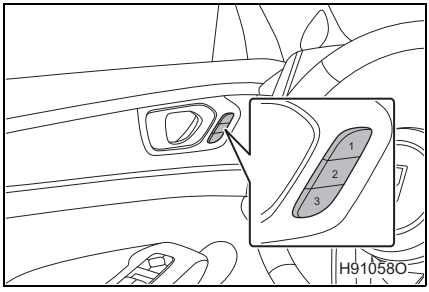
- Use the headrests specifically designed for the seats.
- Be sure to adjust the headrest to the appropriate position for use.
- Be careful not to get caught when using electrical headrest.
- When using electrical headrest, make sure there are no foreign objects around it to prevent damage.
- Do not drive the car with the headrest removed.

  Whenever you drive the car, install the headrest and adjust it to the proper position. It is very dangerous to drive the car with the headrest in a low position or uninstalled. In the event of a collision, the lack of head support could cause serious neck injuries.

■ **Headrests can reduce the whiplash effect and mitigate the neck injury of the occupants in case of rear impact.**

The position of the seat, steering wheel and exterior rearview mirror can be memorized at the same time.

Seat memory setting



To set the memory content: After adjusting the position of the seat, steering wheel and exterior rearview mirror, press and hold any memory button (for more than 3 s), to memorize the position information in that button.

To recall the memory content: Press the memory button to allow the seat, steering wheel and exterior rearview mirror to be automatically adjusted to the memorized position set by the button.

■ **Initialization setting**

Set the engine switch to "IG-ON" mode, press and hold the button 1 and 3 simultaneously to perform initialization setting.

Welcome function

The welcome function includes automatic backing and automatic return.

Automatic backing: Turn off the engine switch, and open the left front door. Then the seat and steering wheel automatically moves backward to facilitate the driver to get off the vehicle.

Automatic return: Turn on the engine switch. Then the seat and steering wheel automatically returns to the position before the driver left the vehicle.

■ **Welcome function switch**

The welcome function can be turned on and off through the vehicle settings interface of the in-vehicle infotainment system. (See P.180)

■ **During automatic backing**

During the automatic backing, the driver can operate the steering wheel adjusting switch, seat adjusting switch or seat memory button to terminate the steering wheel and/or seat backing.

■ **During automatic return**

During the automatic return, the driver can operate the steering wheel adjusting switch, seat adjusting switch and seat memory button to terminate the steering wheel and/or seat return.

If start the engine during automatic return, automatic return operation is suspended, and continue to complete the automatic return operation after starting.

Seat ventilation and heating function

Ventilation and heating function can be controlled separately.

■ Front seat ventilation and heating setting



H91221O

Touch the seat setting button on the A/C operation interface of front entertainment display to access the seat setting interface, and select appropriate heating and ventilation level with seat heating and ventilation button.

Levels 1-3 are selectable.

■ Rear seat heating setting



H91222O

Appropriate heating and ventilation level can be selected through the rear center armrest display.

Levels 1-3 are selectable.

■ **Operating conditions**

The engine switch is set to "IG-ON" mode.

⚠ WARNING

■ **Be sure to observe the following precautions when using seat heating or ventilation function**

- Use caution when following persons are seating on the heated seat to avoid burns:
  - Infants, children, the elderly, the sick and the disabled
  - Persons with sensitive skin
  - Persons who are very fatigued
  - Persons who are drowsy because of taking alcohol or drugs (sleeping pills, cold medicine, etc.)
- Do not cover the seat with any object (e.g. blanket, seat cushion) when using seat heating or ventilation. Otherwise, the seat temperature will increase or decrease, which leads to overheating or overcooling.
- Do not turn on the seat heating or ventilation function unless necessary. Otherwise, passengers may feel overcooled, overheated or suffer from local burns.

⚠ CAUTION

■ **Preventing damage to seat heating or ventilation system**

Do not place heavy objects with uneven surfaces on the seats, or stick sharp objects (needles, nails, etc.) in the seats.

■ **When cleaning seats**

Do not clean the seats with organic substances such as benzene, gasoline, etc. Otherwise, the heater and seat upholstery are liable to be damaged.

Seat massage function

The seat massage function can be used through front entertainment display and rear center armrest display.

Front seat massage



H91223O

Touch the seat setting button on the A/C operation interface of front entertainment display to access the seat setting interface, and select the seat massage mode and level with seat massage button.

The system will automatically turn off after operating for about 15 minutes.

Rear seat massage





H91224O

Seat massage mode and level can be selected through the rear center armrest display and front entertainment display.

The system will automatically turn off after operating for about 15 minutes.

Operating conditions

The engine switch is set to "IG-ON" mode.

For vehicles with rear entertainment display, the rear seat massage function can be set through the rear entertainment display.

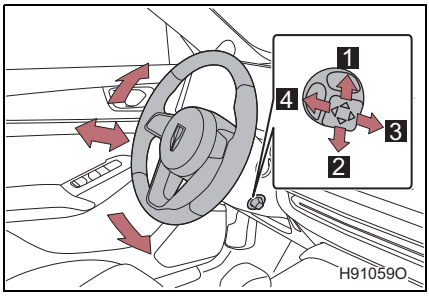
⚠ WARNING

■ **Using seat massage function**

- Pregnant women, puerpera or sick people (heart disease, etc.) who need rest should consult a doctor before use.
- Children are forbidden to use massage function.
- The massage function should not be used immediately after a meal or used for a long time.
- If you feel uncomfortable when using massage function, stop using it immediately.

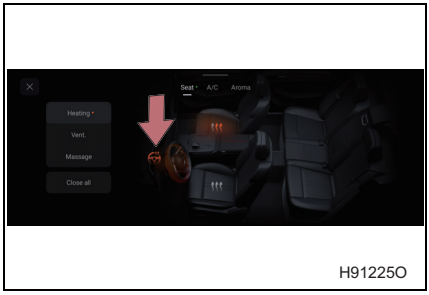
Steering wheel adjustment

The steering wheel can be adjusted to a comfortable position.



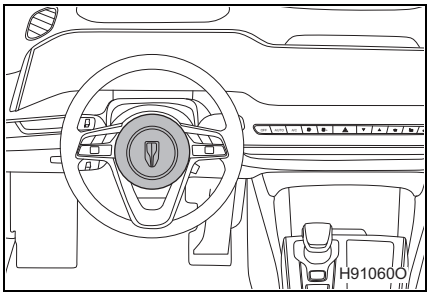
1 Move upward
2 Move downward
3 Move forward
4 Move backward

Steering wheel heating



Touch the seat setting button on the A/C operation interface of front entertainment display to access the seat setting interface, touch the steering wheel heating button, the indicator lamp will illuminate and the steering wheel heating function will be activated; touch the button again, the steering wheel heating function will be deactivated.

Horn



Press the horn symbol or the surrounding area to sound the horn.

WARNING

Precautions when driving

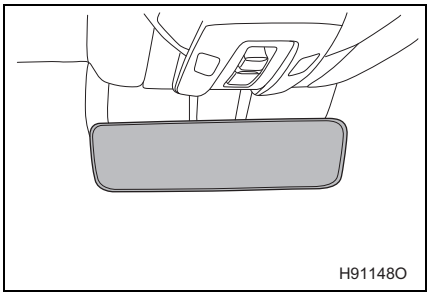
- Do not adjust the steering wheel while driving, as this may cause the driver to make a mistake and cause an accident, which could result in serious injury or even death.
- During driving, the driver's hands should hold the outside of the steering wheel rim at the 3 o'clock and 9 o'clock positions. Do not hold the steering wheel at the 12 o'clock position or in any other position, as this may result in injury to the driver's arms or head when the driver's airbag deploys.

When adjusting the steering wheel

The steering wheel should be adjusted so that the driver's chest is at least 300 mm away from the steering wheel. Do not make the steering wheel directly face the driver's face; otherwise the driver's airbag will not provide effective protection in the event of an accident.

Interior rearview mirror

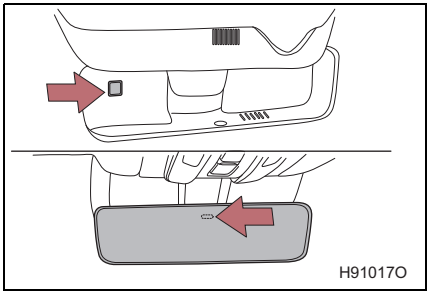
Adjusting interior rearview mirror



The interior rearview mirror can be adjusted up, down, left or right depending on the driving posture.

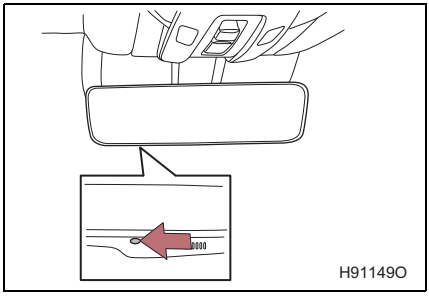
The driver must adjust the interior rearview mirror to a proper position, in order to view the rear of the car through the rear windshield.

Anti-glare function



Interior rearview mirror has automatic anti-glare function, which uses the front and rear sensors to detect the light intensity of vehicles behind and reduce the reflected light automatically.

Stream media interior rearview mirror*



Stream media interior rearview mirror can display the image collected by rearview camera through the interior rearview mirror, allowing the view to be unaffected by factors such as the rear windshield and rear passengers.

■ Stream media interior rearview mirror switch

Press the switch to turn on/off the stream media interior rearview mirror. The automatic anti-glare function is available when it is turned off.

■ Basic setting of stream media interior rearview mirror

The display scale, display area and display brightness can be set in the display settings of in-vehicle infotainment system. (See P.181)

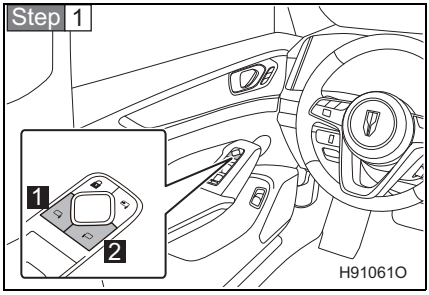
⚠ WARNING

■ During driving

- Do not adjust the position of the rearview mirror while driving, as this may result in an accident due to mishandling, which could lead to serious injury or even death.
- Stacking items in the rear seats beyond the seat back height will obstruct the sight in the rearview mirror, which could result in a traffic accident. Therefore, do not stack items beyond the seat back height.

Adjusting exterior rearview mirror

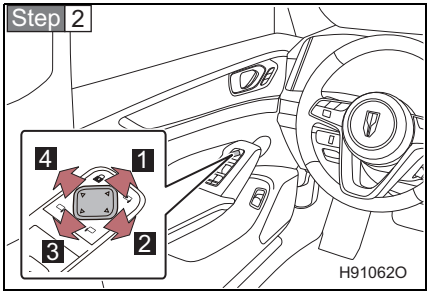
When the engine switch is set to "IG-ON" mode, the angle of exterior rearview mirror can be adjusted.



Press the corresponding exterior rearview mirror selector button. Then the button indicator lamp comes on.

1 Left

2 Right



Press the button to adjust the exterior rearview mirror on the corresponding side.

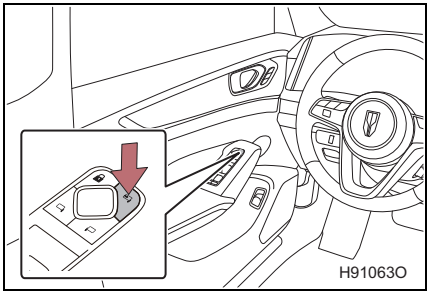
1 Move upward

2 Move rightward

3 Move downward

4 Move leftward

Folding exterior rearview mirror



Press the exterior rearview mirror folding button to fold the exterior rearview mirror; press the button again to return it to original position.

The exterior rearview mirror will automatically fold when the vehicle is locked, and automatically unfold when the vehicle is unlocked.

The automatic folding function of exterior rearview mirrors can be turned on and off through the

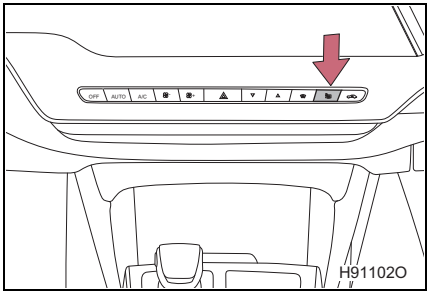
vehicle settings interface of the in-vehicle infotainment system. (See P.180)

Exterior rearview mirror heating



Method 1: Touch button on the A/C operation interface. Then the indicator lamp comes on, exterior rearview mirror and windshield can be heated simultaneously.

Touch button again. Then the indicator lamp goes out, and deactivate the heating.



Method 2: Touch button on the A/C operation panel. Then the indicator lamp comes on, exterior rearview mirror and windshield can be heated simultaneously.

Touch button again. Then the indicator lamp goes out, and deactivate the heating.

■ **Operating conditions of exterior rearview mirror angle adjustment function**

The engine switch is set to "IG-ON" mode and the parking brake is applied.

■ **Operating conditions of exterior rearview mirror folding switch and heating switch**

The engine switch is set to "IG-ON" mode.

■ **Using power mode in cold weather**

In cold weather where the exterior rearview mirrors may freeze, the automatic folding and unfolding feature may not function in power mode. In this case,

remove the snow and ice from the exterior rearview mirrors, and then operate the mirrors manually.

■ **Exterior rearview mirror memory**

The exterior rearview mirrors feature a memory function that can be linked with the seat memory. (See P.109)

■ **Automatic adjustment of right rearview mirror**

When the shift lever is set to R position, if this function is turned on, the right rearview mirror automatically tilts down to provide the driver with a back-up view. After the shift lever has been out of R position for 10 s or when the vehicle speed exceeds 15 km/h, the rearview mirror automatically returns to the previous position.

With the shift lever in R position, the driver can adjust the right rearview mirror to an appropriate angle, which is memorized as the target downward tilt position.

The automatic adjustment function of right rearview mirror can be turned on and off through the vehicle settings interface of the in-vehicle infotainment system. (See P.180)

⚠ WARNING

■ When driving

Please observe the following precautions while driving. Failure to do so may result in loss control of the car and cause an accident, resulting in serious injury or even death.

- Always look around before changing lanes.
  It is dangerous to change lanes without considering the actual distance of the vehicle in the exterior rearview mirror. Since the actual distance of the object is closer than what you see in the exterior rearview mirrors, it can lead to a serious accident.
- Do not drive with the exterior rearview mirror folded. Be sure to reset the exterior rearview mirrors to the unfolding position before driving.

■ When adjusting the exterior mirror

To avoid personal injury and rearview mirror fault, be careful not to have your hands pinched by the mirror in motion.

■ When operating the exterior rearview mirror heater

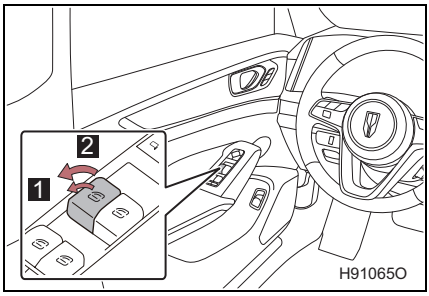
- Do not touch the surface of the exterior rearview mirror, as it will become hot and may cause burns.
- Turn off the exterior rearview mirror heating function when there is no need for heating.

■ Precautions when driving

Please observe the following precautions while driving:

- Do not adjust the rearview mirror while driving.
- Both left and right rearview mirrors must be unfolded and properly adjusted before driving.

Opening and closing power windows



1 Manual lifting/lowering
Pull up/press down the corresponding window regulator switch to position 1 (keep pulling up/pressing down), to achieve manual lifting/lowering of the windows.

2 Automatic lifting/lowering
Pull up/press down the corresponding window regulator switch to position 2 (pull up/press down and release), to achieve automatic lifting/lowering of the windows.

The driver's power window switch can control other windows.

Rear window switchable glass*



The dimming function can be turned on/off. After the function is turned on, the brightness of left/right window can be adjusted manually and the brightness can be memorised.

■ **Operating conditions of power window and switchable glass**
The engine switch is set to "IG-ON" mode.

■ **Operate the power windows with engine switch turned off**
The power windows can be operated even after the engine switch is turned off for a period of time.

■ **Locking rear power window**
Rear power window and door can be locked by rear door child safety lock to prevent children from opening the rear doors and operating the window in the vehicle. (See P. 84)

■ **Initialization operation**

After the automatic window lifting/lowering function is disabled, the windows need to be initialized as follows:

- With the window glass in any position (beyond 4 mm from the top of the window frame) in the operating range of the anti-pinch function, pull up the switch for the window to be initialized to close the window fully, and keep the action for about 2 s or more, to complete the initialization operation.

If necessary, contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.

■ **Anti-pinch function**

In case of an obstacle during the automatic closing, the power window can automatically return to a safe position.

■ **Automatic window closing function***

With the engine switch in "IG-OFF" mode and the window not closed, the window will be automatically closed after the rain/light sensor determines the amount of rain.

The automatic window closing function can be turned on and off through the vehicle settings interface of the in-vehicle infotainment system. (See P. 180)

■ **Remote window lifting**

With all doors, the engine hood and the trunk lid closed and the engine switch in "IG-OFF" mode, press and hold the lock button on the smart key in the operating range to close all windows.

■ **Intelligent window lifting**

With all doors, the engine hood and the trunk lid closed and the engine switch in "IG-OFF" mode, carry the smart key with you and press and hold the door handle locking sensing area to close all windows.

⚠ WARNING

■ **To avoid serious personal injury or even death, observe the following precautions when closing the windows:**

- During operation on the windows, do check carefully to ensure that no part of the driver and passenger's bodies will be pinched.
- Do not allow children to operate the power windows.

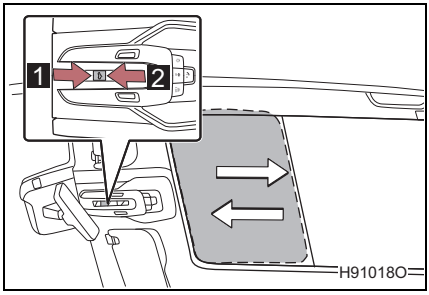
■ **Anti-pinch function**

- Do not activate the anti-pinch function by deliberately stopping the moving window with any part of your body.
- The anti-pinch function may not work if an object is pinched when the window is about to close fully (4 mm).
- If the automatic window lifting/lowering function or the anti-pinch function is disabled, initialization is required.

The sunroof can be opened and closed by the sunroof switch.

Opening and closing sunroof

▶ Front control button - for passenger in front row

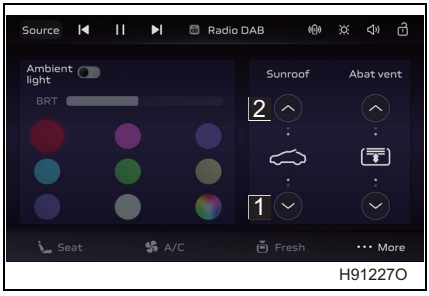


1 Opening
When the sunroof is closed, press the switch backwards once to tilt the rear of the sunroof up and partially open the sunshade.
When the sunroof is in the upward tilting position, press the switch backward once to open the sunroof and sunshade simultaneously.

2 Closing
When the sunroof is open, press the switch forward once to close the sunroof.

Note: When the sunroof is opening or closing automatically, press the sunroof switch again to stop the sunroof.
Press and hold the sunroof switch to open and close the sunroof manually, and release the switch to stop the sunroof.

▶ Rear control button - for rear passenger in rear row (rear center armrest display)

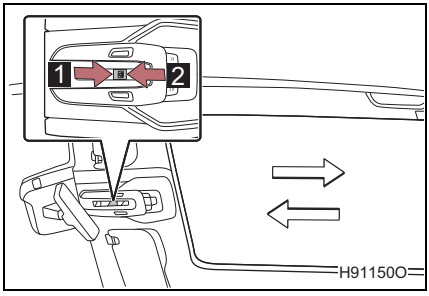


1 Opening
When the sunroof is closed, press the switch once to tilt the rear of the sunroof up and partially open the sunshade.
When the sunroof is in the upward tilting position, press the switch once to open the sunroof and sunshade simultaneously.

2 Closing
When the sunroof is open, press the switch once to close the sunroof.

Opening and closing sunshade

▶ Front control button - for passenger in front row



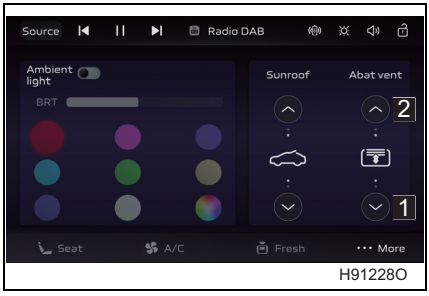
1 Opening
Press the sunshade switch backward once to open the sunshade fully.

2 Closing
Press the sunshade switch forward once to close the sunshade fully.

Note: When the sunshade is opening or closing automatically, press the sunshade switch again to stop the sunshade.

Press and hold the sunshade switch to open and close the sunshade manually, and release the switch to stop the sunshade.

▶ Rear control button - for rear passenger in rear row (rear center armrest display)



1 Opening
Press the switch once to open the sunshade fully.

2 Closing
Press the switch forward once to close the sunshade fully.

■ **Operating conditions of sunroof**

The engine switch is set to "IG-ON" mode.

■ **Operate the sunroof with engine shut down**

Within a certain period of time after the engine switch is turned off, if the driver's door is not open, the sunroof can still be operated at this time.

■ **When the sunroof is not closed, the sunshade cannot be fully closed.**

■ **Initialization operation**

- Sunroof initialization operation

  When the sunroof is positioned incorrectly, the automatic sunroof function is disabled or the sunroof and sunshade linkage function is disabled, initialization should be done as follows: Set the engine switch to "IG-ON" mode, and run the sunroof to the fully closed position. At this time, press and hold the sunroof switch forward. When the sunroof hits the mechanism stop, release the switch and immediately press and hold the switch forward again. The sunroof will tilt up and open, slide open and slide close and then stop. Afterwards, release the switch to complete the initialization operation.

- Sunshade initialization operation

  When the sunshade is positioned incorrectly or the automatic sunshade function is disabled, initialization should be done as follows: Set the engine switch to "IG-ON" mode, and run the sunshade to the fully closed position. At this time, press and hold the sunshade switch forward. When the sunshade hits the mechanism stop, release the switch and immediately press and hold the switch forward again. The sunshade will open backward, close forward and then stop. Afterwards, release the switch button to complete the initialization operation.

■ **Anti-pinch function**

In case of an obstacle during the automatic closing, the sunroof/sunshade can automatically return to a safe position.

■ **Automatic sunroof closing function***

With the engine switch in "IG-OFF" mode and the sunroof not closed, the sunroof will be automatically closed after the rain/light sensor determines the amount of rain.

The automatic window closing function can be turned on and off through the vehicle settings interface of the in-vehicle infotainment system. (See P. 180)

■ **Remote sunroof closing**

With all doors, the engine hood and the trunk lid closed and the engine switch in "IG-OFF" mode, press and hold the lock button on the smart key in the operating range to close the sunroof.

■ **Intelligent sunroof closing**

With all doors, the engine hood and the trunk lid closed and the engine switch in "IG-OFF" mode, carry the smart key or Bluetooth key with you and press and hold the door handle sensor switch to close the sunroof.

⚠ WARNING

■ Precautions for sunroof opening

To avoid serious personal injury, observe the following precautions during sunroof opening:

- When the vehicle is moving, the driver and passengers shall never extend their hands or heads out of the vehicle.
- Do not sit on the sunroof.

■ Precautions for sunroof closing

To avoid serious personal injury, observe the following precautions during sunroof closing:

- When closing the sunroof, do check carefully to ensure that no part of the occupants' bodies will be pinched.
- Do not allow children to operate the sunroof.

■ During initialization operation

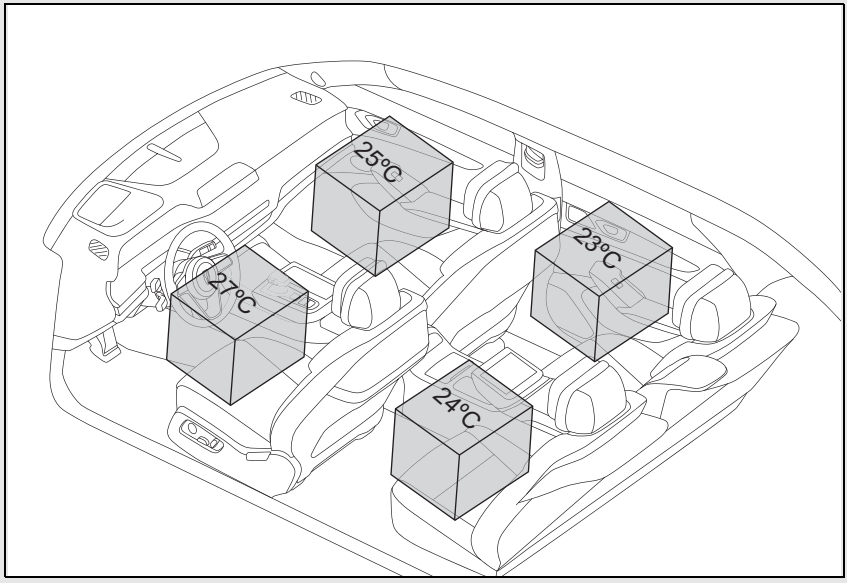
- During initialization, if the switch is released, the initialization operation will fail and need to be repeated.
- After the initialization operation, you need to check all the functions of the sunroof.
- If the initialization cannot be completed, please contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.

■ Anti-pinch function

- Do not activate the anti-pinch function by deliberately stopping the moving sunroof with any part of your body.
- The anti-pinch function may not work if an object is pinched when the sunroof/ sunshade is about to close fully.

Automatic A/C system

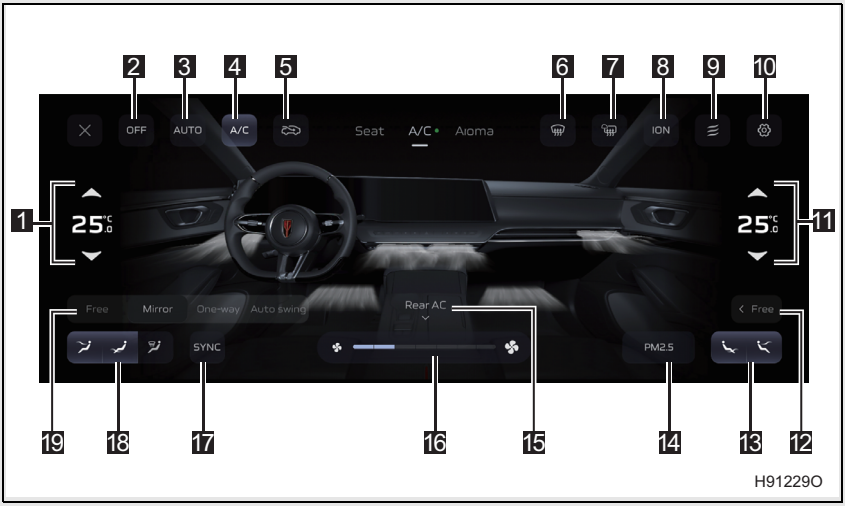
This car is equipped with a four-zone A/C system that automatically adjusts the outlet air temperature, A/C air volume, air outlet mode and air supply mode to provide the desired driving environment for the occupants according to the temperature setting, combined with the current interior temperature, ambient temperature, sunlight intensity, car speed, water temperature and other environmental parameters.



Automatic A/C system - front control system

According to temperature setting, air outlet is automatically selected and air volume is automatically adjusted.

▶ A/C operation display of in-vehicle infotainment system

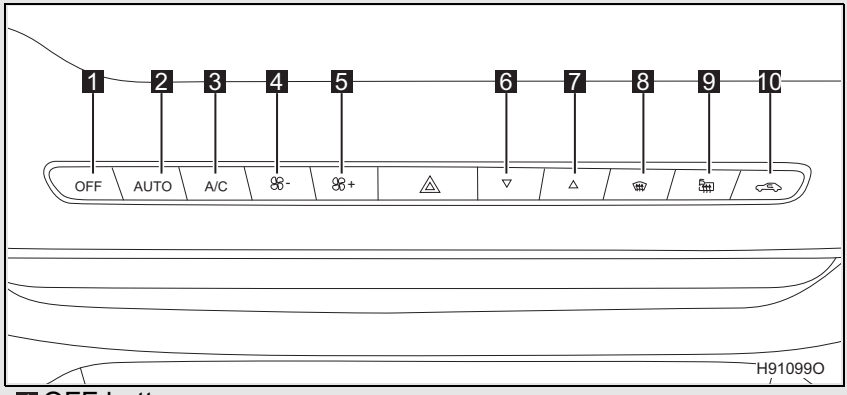


1 Driver side temperature setting button
2 OFF button
3 AUTO button
4 A/C button
5 Recirculation/fresh air mode button
6 Front windshield forced defrosting/defogging button
7 Windshield and exterior rearview mirror defrosting/defogging button
8 Ion purification button
9 Natural ventilation button
10 A/C setting button
11 Front passenger side temperature setting button
12 Front passenger side wind direction mode setting button
13 Front passenger side air outlet mode button
14 PM2.5 button
15 Front/rear switching button
16 Air volume setting button

17 Synchronization button
18 Driver side wind direction mode setting button
19 Driver side air outlet mode button

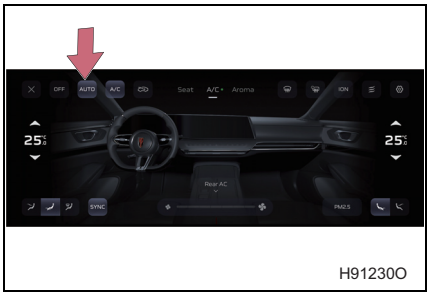
Touch button on in-vehicle infotainment system to enter A/C interface; In A/C interface, you can switch to seat or fragrance setting interface to set the corresponding function.

► A/C operation panel

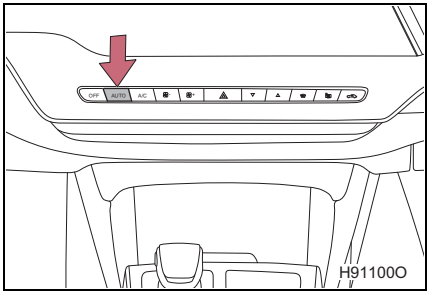


1 OFF button
2 AUTO button
3 A/C button
4 Air volume setting button (decrease)
5 Air volume setting button (increase)
6 Driver side temperature setting button (decrease)
7 Driver side temperature setting button (increase)
8 Front windshield forced defrosting/defogging button
9 Windshield and exterior rearview mirror defrosting/defogging button
10 Recirculation/fresh air mode button

Using automatic A/C system



Method 1: Touch [AUTO] button on the display, the working indicator lamp will come on, entering the auto A/C mode.



Method 2: Touch [AUTO] button on the A/C operation panel, and the indicator lamp will come on, entering the auto A/C mode.

Set the temperature by adjusting the button or touching the temperature setting button according to your personal needs in automatic A/C mode, and the temperature display also shows the set temperature simultaneously.

■ [AUTO] button indicator lamp

If the air volume setting and air outlet mode are operated, or natural ventilation mode is set, [AUTO] button indicator lamp goes out.

■ Using automatic mode

The air volume is automatically adjusted according to the temperature setting and environmental conditions. Therefore, the following situations may occur.

- After the switch is pressed, the blower may not turn immediately or may run at low speed until the warm or cold air is ready for normal air supply operation.

Manual adjustment setting

■ Adjusting air volume



Method 1: Operate air volume setting button on the display or drag the air volume setting bar to adjust the air volume of vehicle A/C system among levels 1-7.

Method 2: Adjust the air volume of vehicle A/C system among level 1-7 with / air volume setting button on A/C operation panel.

■ Adjusting temperature



Method 1: Touch the temperature setting button (increase) or (decrease) on the display to set the temperature, or slide the temperature display value up and down to set the temperature.

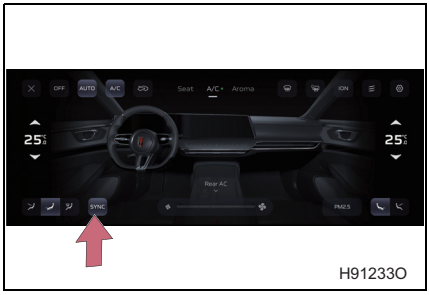
Method 2: Set the driver side temperature with / temperature setting button on A/C operation panel.

If the [A/C] button on the display/A/C operation panel is not on or if the [A/C] button is on but the A/C compressor is not running, the system will blow normal-temperature air or hot air into the vehicle.

■ Turning off A/C

Touch [OFF] button on the display or A/C operation panel to turn off the vehicle A/C system.

■ Switching temperature zone control mode



H91233O

Touch the [SYNC] button, the indicator lamp will come on, the single-temperature-zone control mode will be activated, and the temperature and air outlet mode on front passenger side and rear row area will be synchronized to the temperature and air outlet mode on the driver side.

Touch the [SYNC] button again, the indicator lamp goes out, the multi-temperature zone control mode will be activated, and the temperature and air outlet mode on driver side, front passenger side and rear row area can be set separately.

If the temperature and air outlet mode on front passenger side or rear row area is set separately in the single temperature zone control mode, the multi-temperature zone control mode will be activated.

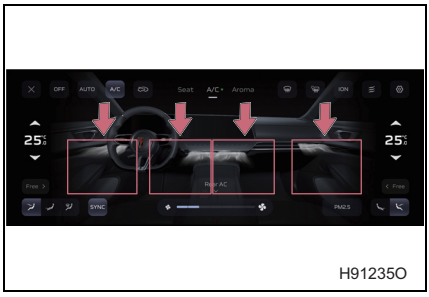
■ Switching air outlet mode



H91234O

Touch the air outlet mode selection button to select the corresponding air outlet mode, and touch it again to cancel the air outlet mode. The air outlet modes can be combined for selection.

■ Adjusting blowing direction



After face mode is turned on, drag the wind direction icon on the A/C operation interface to adjust the blowing direction of air outlet for face.

After face mode is turned on, touch the wind direction selection button on the display to set the blowing direction of air outlet to free, mirror image, one-way or automatic swing.

■ A/C switch

When the engine is operating, touch the [A/C] button on the display or A/C operation panel. Then the button indicator lamp comes on, and the A/C mode is turned on.

Touch the [A/C] button again. Then the indicator lamp goes out, and the A/C mode is turned off.

The A/C can not be turned on when ambient temperature is below 0 ˚C .

■ Switching recirculation/fresh air mode

Touch button on the display or button of the instrument panel switch assembly, the indicator lamp comes on and the recirculation mode is activated; touch it again, the indicator lamp goes out and the fresh air mode is activated.

⚠ WARNING

■ **Do not use the recirculation mode in cold or rainy weather**

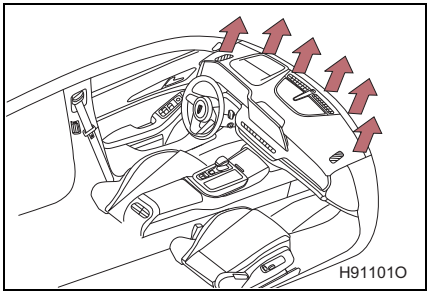
Using the recirculation mode in cold or rainy weather can cause the windows to fog up, which can obstruct your vision and could lead to a serious accident.

■ **When using recirculation mode**

The windows may fog up easily if the recirculation mode has been in use for a long time.

Other functions

Front windshield forced defrosting/defogging



Touch button on the A/C operation interface or the A/C operation panel. Then the indicator lamp comes on, and the front windshield forced defrosting/defogging function is turned on.

In the recirculation mode, if the front windshield forced defrosting/defogging function is on, the system will automatically switch to the fresh air mode, and it cannot be manually switched back to recirculation mode at this time.

Increase the air volume and temperature to defrost/defog the front windshield as soon as possible.

In the front windshield forced defrosting/defogging state, touch the button again to exit this function and return to the previous air outlet mode and air volume.

Window fogging

- The windows tend to fog up when the inside humidity is high. Turn on the "A/C" switch to dehumidify the air from the air outlets and effectively defog the front windshield.
- If the "A/C" switch is turned off, the windows may fog up more easily.
- In rainy weather, the windows may fog up.
- The windows may fog up if the recirculation mode has been in use for a long time.
- In winter heating conditions, the higher the vehicle speed and the lower the air volume of fresh air mode, the more likely the window is to fog up.

⚠ WARNING

■ Preventing windshield fogging

- When the weather is extremely humid, do not use the front windshield forced defrosting/defogging mode during cooling operation. The temperature difference between the air outside the car and the windshield may cause the outer surface of the windshield to fog up, obstructing your vision.
- Do not place any objects on the instrument panel that may cover the air outlets as this may block the airflow and hinder the front windshield defogging.

■ Natural ventilation function

Touch the natural ventilation button on the display to activate the natural ventilation mode, the air inlet mode is switched to fresh air mode. At this time, the compressor stops operating, thus saving energy. Touch the AUTO button or front windshield forced defrosting/defogging button, or adjust the recirculation/fresh air mode or set temperature to exit the natural ventilation mode.

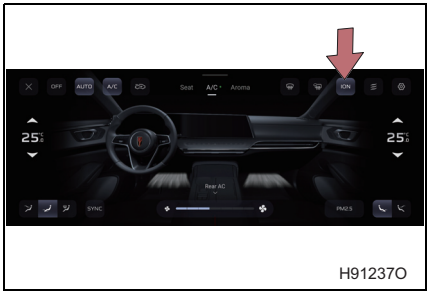
■ Auto defogging mode (ADS)

When A/C is in AUTO mode and the front windshield fogs up and has a tendency to affect driving safety, the A/C system will activate auto defogging mode, and blow air toward front windshield. When the tendency is released, the A/C system will automatically switch back to the operating state before defogging. When the auto defogging mode is activated, operate the air outlet mode adjustment button to exit the auto defogging mode.

Prompt: When the auto defogging mode is activated, the air volume of the A/C system will be large.

Auto defogging function can be turned on/off on the A/C setting interface. (See P. 140)

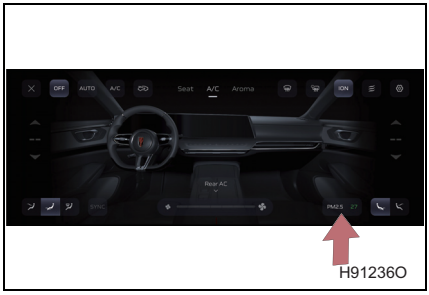
■ Ion purification



Touch the ion purification button on the display, the indicator lamp comes on, ion purification function is turned on. Touch the button again, the indicator lamp goes out, ion purification function is turned off.

Ion purification must function when the blower is operating. When the blower is not operating, turn on the ion purification function, the A/C blower will turn on automatically.

■ PM2.5 sensor



Touch [PM2.5] button on the display, the indicator lamp comes on, and the PM2.5 concentration in the vehicle will be detected. After detection is completed, if concentration is up to standard, the system automatically exits; if concentration is not up to standard, the system automatically carries out filtration, and automatically exits after the filtration is completed.

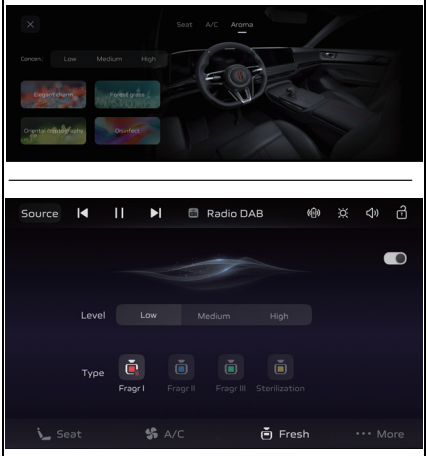
Press and hold [PM2.5] button to turn on PM2.5 filtration function directly. When performing PM2.5 filtration, A/C will switch to recirculation mode automatically, improving filtration effect.

■ A/C setting

Touch the A/C setting button to enter setting interface to turn on/off the A/C function.

- Auto defogging: In automatic A/C mode, enter the auto defogging state, and window defogging mode will activate automatically when it detects a risk of fogging on the front windshield.

■ Fragrance system*



H91238O

After selecting the appropriate fragrance mode and level, the system will cooperate with the A/C to improve the interior environment of the vehicle for enhanced comfort of the driver and passengers.

■ **Recirculation/fresh air mode**

- When driving on dusty roads (e.g. tunnels) or congested roads, switch to the recirculation mode. This effectively prevents outside air from entering the vehicle. During cooling operation, turning on the recirculation mode will also effectively reduce the interior temperature.
- The windows may fog up if the recirculation mode has been in use for a long time.

■ **Windshield defroster**

- In the front windshield forced defrosting/defogging mode, the system will switch to fresh air mode from recirculation mode automatically.
- The air volume may increase when the defrosting/defogging function is in operation, which helps defrost/defog the front windshield as soon as possible.

■ **A/C odor**

- During use, various odors from inside and outside the car may enter and accumulate in the A/C system. This may cause odors to emanate from the air outlets.

⚠ CAUTION

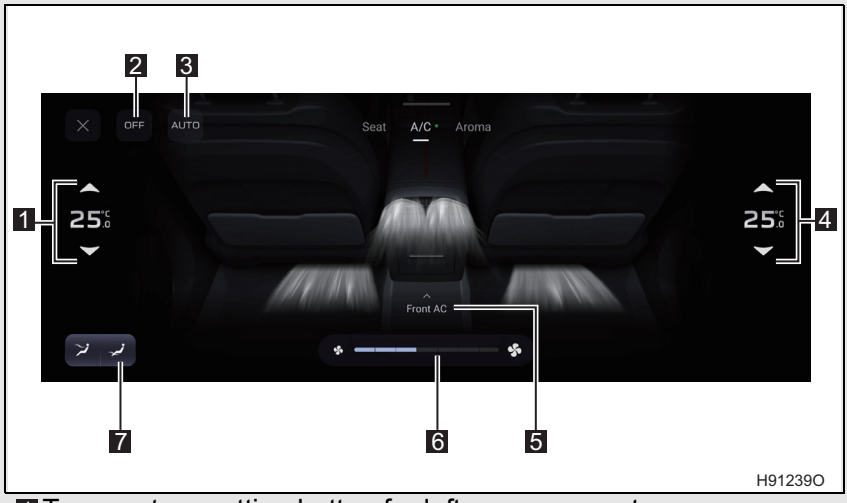
■ **Preventing a low 12 V battery**

Turn off the A/C system if it is not needed when the car is not started.

Automatic A/C system - rear control system

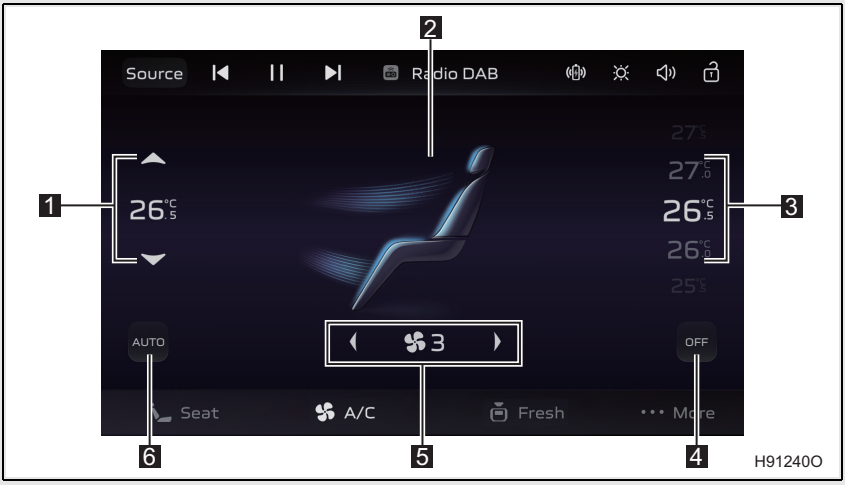
The rear A/C control system can synchronously or independently adjust the temperature and air outlet mode in the rear row according to the needs of occupants, so as to improve the ride comfort.

► A/C operation display of in-vehicle infotainment system



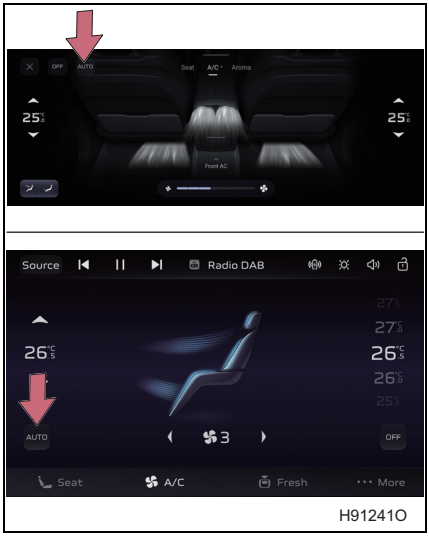
1 Temperature setting button for left rear occupant
2 OFF button
3 AUTO button
4 Temperature setting button for right rear occupant
5 Front/rear switching button
6 Air volume setting button
7 Air outlet mode button

► Rear center armrest display



1 Temperature setting button for left rear occupant
2 Air outlet mode button
3 Temperature setting button for right rear occupant
4 OFF button
5 Air volume setting button
6 AUTO button

Using automatic A/C system



Touch the [AUTO] button on the front/rear display, the indicator lamp comes on and enters the automatic A/C mode.

Set the temperature by touching the temperature setting button according to your personal needs in automatic A/C mode, and the temperature display also shows the set temperature simultaneously.

[AUTO] button indicator lamp

- If the air volume setting or air outlet mode is operated, [AUTO] button indicator lamp goes out.

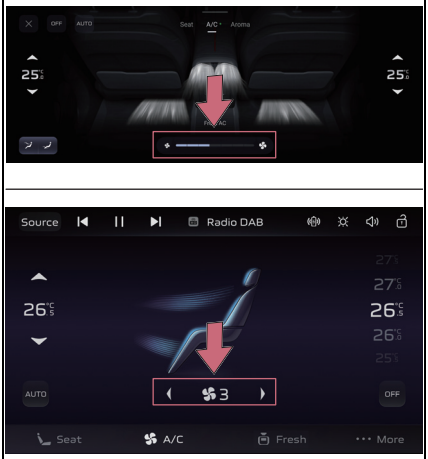
Using automatic mode

The air volume is automatically adjusted according to the temperature setting and environmental conditions. Therefore, the following situations may occur.

- After the switch is pressed, the blower may not turn immediately or may run at low speed until the warm or cold air is ready for normal air supply operation.

Manual adjustment setting

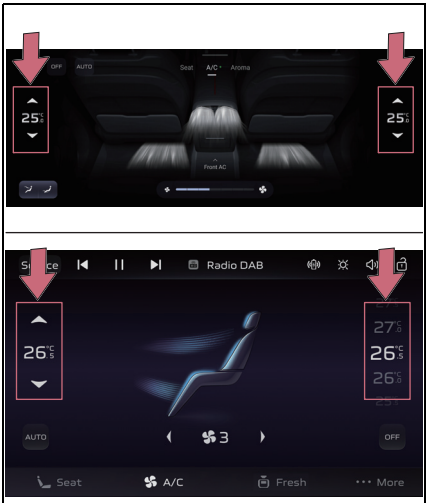
Adjusting air volume



H91242O

Operate air volume setting button on the front/rear display to adjust the air volume of vehicle A/C system among level 1-7.

Adjusting temperature



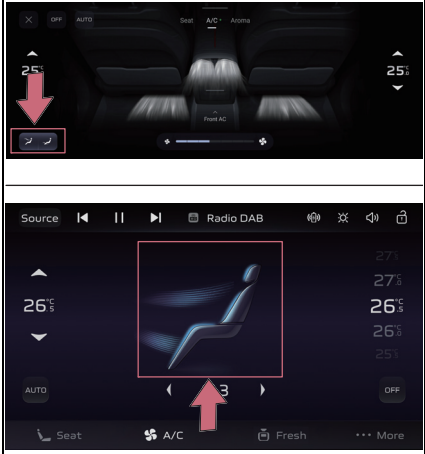
H91243O

Touch the temperature setting button ∧ (increase) or ∨ (decrease) on the front/rear display to set the temperature, or slide the temperature display value up and down to set the temperature.

The temperature of the left rear passenger and the right rear passenger can be adjusted independently.

If the [A/C] button on the display is not on or if the [A/C] button is on but the A/C compressor is not running, the system will blow normal-temperature air or hot air into the car.

- Turning off A/C
  Touch [OFF] button on the front/rear display to turn off the vehicle A/C system.
- Switching air outlet mode

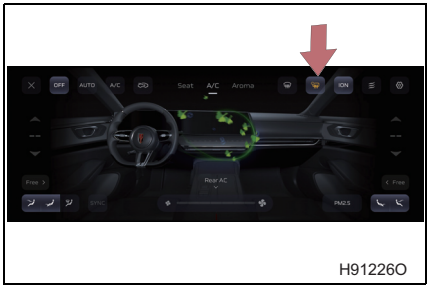


H91244O

Method 1: Touch the air outlet mode button to switch the air outlet mode.

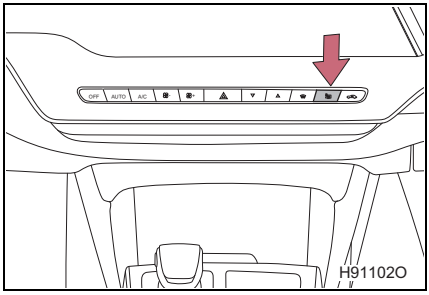
Method 2: Touch the wind direction indicator to select the corresponding air outlet mode, and touch it again to cancel the selected mode. The air outlet modes can be combined for selection.

Windshield heating*



Method 1: Touch button on the display. Then the indicator lamp comes on, and the system starts heating windshield and exterior rearview mirror.

Touch button again. Then the indicator lamp goes out, and the system stops.



Method 2: Touch button of the instrument panel switch assembly. Then the indicator lamp comes on, and the system starts heating the front/rear windshield and exterior rearview mirror.

Touch button again. Then the indicator lamp goes out, and the system stops.

Note: The system will be turned off automatically after a period of operation and the indicator lamp will go out.

■ Front windshield heating

Front windshield electrical heating only heats the wiper stop area.

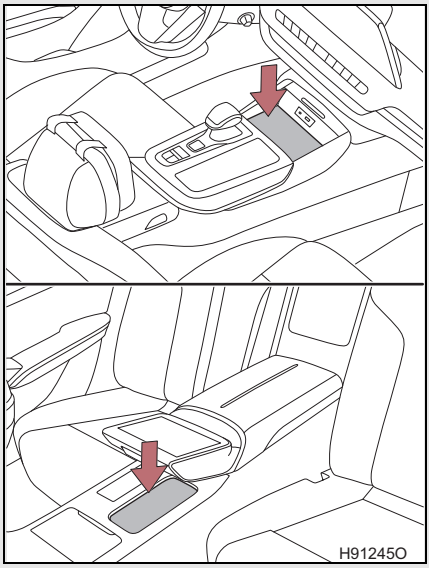
⚠ WARNING

■ During windshield heating

Do not touch the heating area as it may become very hot and cause burns.

On-board wireless charging*

The front storage box and the front of rear center armrest are equipped with wireless charging system.



Mobile phones that support Qi standard wireless charging can be charged directly in the wireless charging area.

Mobile phones that do not support Qi standard wireless charging need to be charged with a receiver.

Note: The position of rear wireless charging area is slightly different depending on the model configurations.

■ **Operating conditions of on-board wireless charging system**

The engine switch is set to "IG-ON" mode.

WARNING

Pay attention to the following matters when using wireless charging

- Make sure there are no metal objects on the surface of wireless charger before use.
- Do not remove the rubber pad. Ensure that the rubber pad is properly installed before charging.
- When charging the phone, do not place metal objects between the phone and the wireless charger.
- It is recommended to monitor the vehicle battery power when using wireless charging without the car being started.
- Do not place containers containing liquid on the surface of wireless charger to prevent liquid from flowing into the charger.
- Do not use a non-Qi standard receiver for charging, to prevent damage to the charger or receiver.

CAUTION

When charging

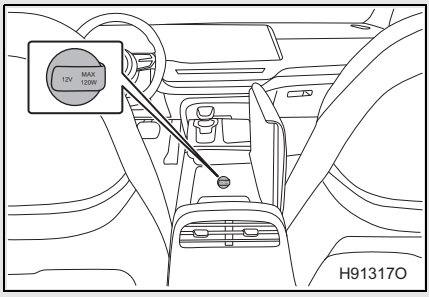
- If there are any metal objects (such as coins, keys, rings or paper clips) between the mobile phone and the charger while the phone is charging wirelessly, do not remove them immediately by hand to avoid burning your fingers. Please remove the mobile phone first and wait for the metal objects to cool down before removing them from the charger.
- Remove all items from the anti-slip mat for wireless charging. If there are foreign objects, the system may not charge properly.
- The mobile phone should be placed face up in the middle of the anti-slip mat.

Please do not place magnetic cards such as expressway toll cards in the wireless charging area, as they may cause demagnetization.

Wireless charging disabled

It is normal that if you start the engine or leave the car with the key during wireless charging, the wireless charging will be interrupted for a short time.

■ 12 V power

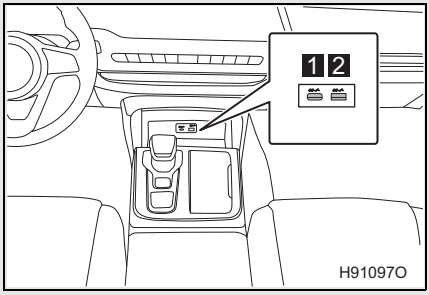


Located in the center storage box.

The power outlet can be used for 12 V accessories with operating current less than 10 A.

■ USB power

► Front

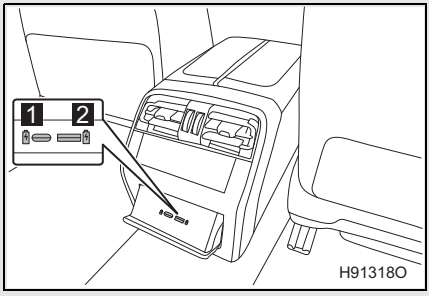


Located in front of the auxiliary fascia console.

1 Type-C port (10.5W)

2 Type-A port (10.5W)

► Rear (type 1)

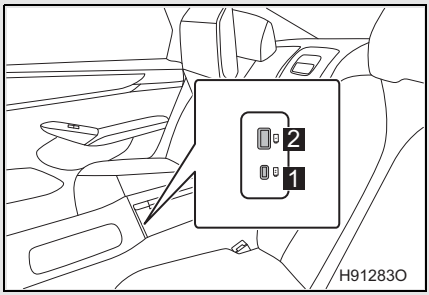


Located at the lower end of rear center air outlet.

1 Type-C port (60W)

2 Type-A port (18W)

▶ Rear (type 2)



Located in the rear center armrest box.

1 Type-C port (60W)

2 Type-A port (18W)

■ **Operating conditions of power outlets**

The engine switch is set to "IG-ON" mode.

⚠ CAUTION

■ **Preventing damage to power outlets**

When the power outlet is not in use, the power outlet cover should be closed, otherwise foreign objects or liquids will enter the power outlet and cause short circuit.

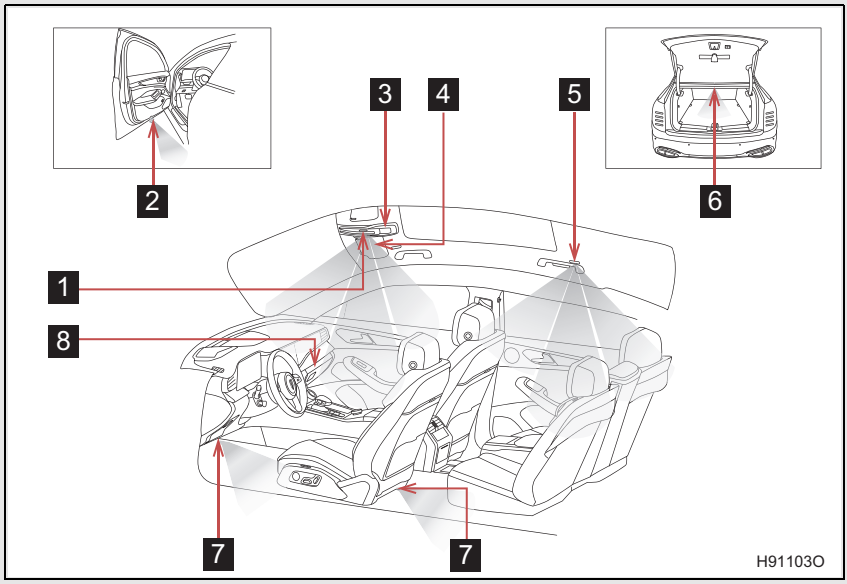
■ **Preventing blown fuses**

Do not use accessories exceeding rated voltage/current/power.

■ **Preventing low battery**

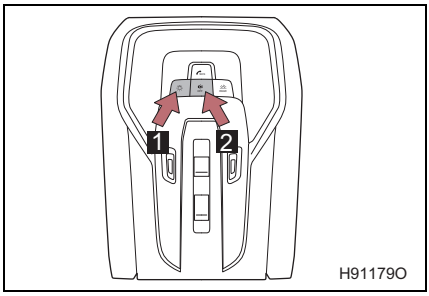
Unless necessary, do not allow the power outlet to be in use for a long time when the car is not started.

Interior lamp list



1 Front reading lamp
2 Door lamp
3 Front interior lamp
4 Vanity mirror lamp
5 Rear reading lamp
6 Trunk lamp
7 Ambient lamp (See P. 179)
8 Glove box lamp

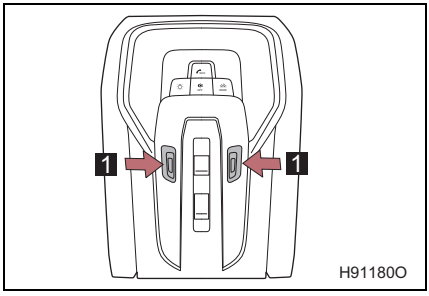
Front interior lamp



1 Touch button to turn on the front interior lamp, and touch the button again to turn off the front interior lamp.

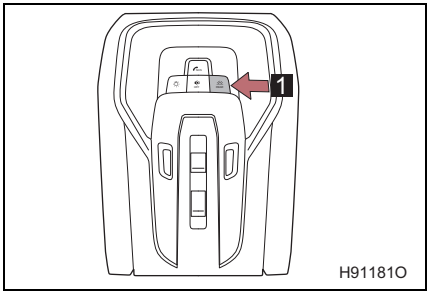
2 Touch OFF button. Then the indicator lamp comes on, and the door linkage function is turned off. Touch the button again. Then the indicator lamp goes out, and the door linkage function is turned on.

Front reading lamp

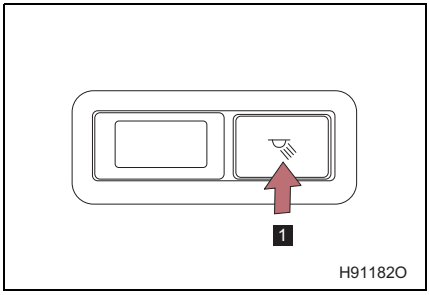


1 Touch the front reading lamp position to turn on the front reading lamp, and touch it again to turn off the front reading lamp.

Rear reading lamp

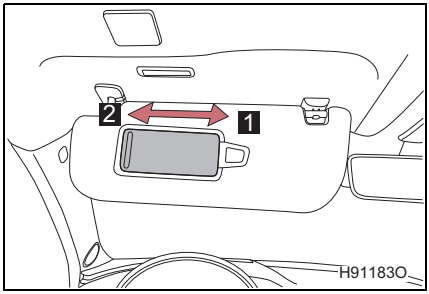


1 Touch REAR button to turn on the rear reading lamp, and touch it again to turn off the rear reading lamp.



1 Touch button to turn on the rear reading lamp on the corresponding side, and touch again to dim the brightness of light, then touch the button again to turn off the rear reading lamp on the corresponding side.

Vanity mirror lamp



1 Open the sun visor and slide open the vanity mirror cover to turn on the vanity mirror lamp.
2 Close the vanity mirror cover to turn off the vanity mirror lamp.

Energy saving control

With the door linkage function turned on, if the door is opened, the interior lamp will be on for a period of time and then go out; when the engine switch is turned off and the doors are closed, the interior lamp and ambient lamp will go out on a delayed basis.

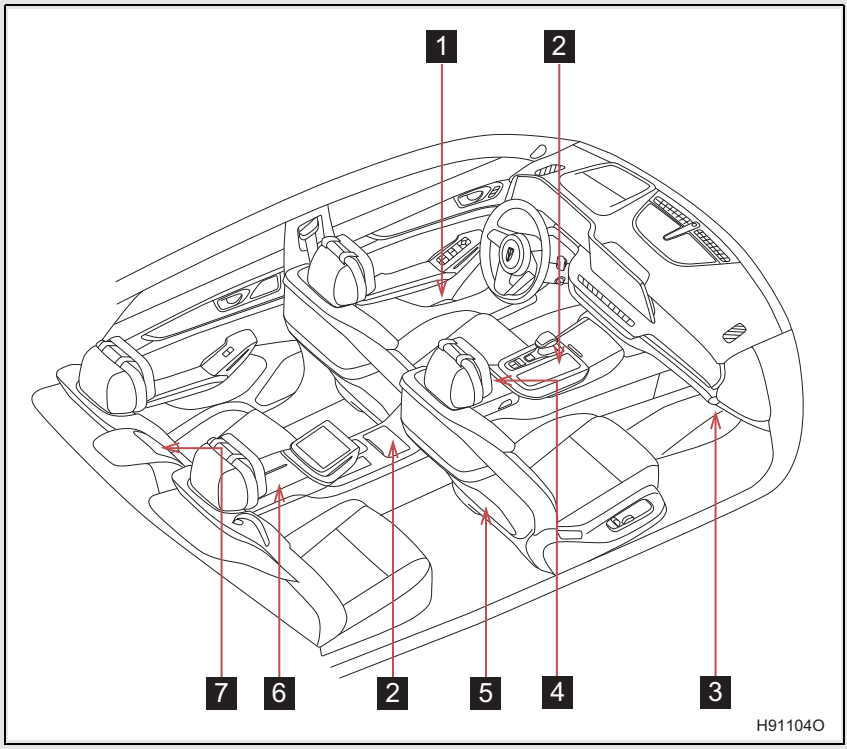
CAUTION

Preventing a depleted battery

Turn off the interior lamps when not needed.

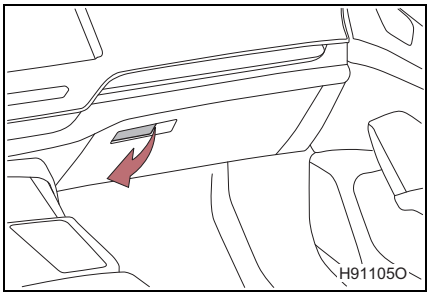
Do not allow the vanity mirror cover in open status for a long time and do not open the door for a long time with the door linkage function turned on. When they are opened, the corresponding interior lamps will come on and the battery may be depleted.

Storage compartments list



1 Storage box
2 Cup holder (front/rear)
3 Glove box
4 Front center storage box
5 Document pocket
6 Rear center storage box
7 Rear seat back storage box

Glove box



Pull the release handle to open the glove box.

When closing the glove box cover, a "click" is emitted to indicate that it is securely locked.

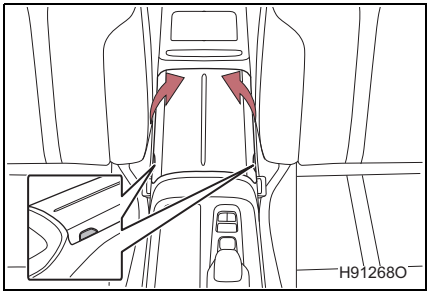
⚠ WARNING

■ **Warning during driving**

Keep the glove box closed.

Failure to do so may result in personal injury in the event of an accident or emergency braking.

Front center storage box

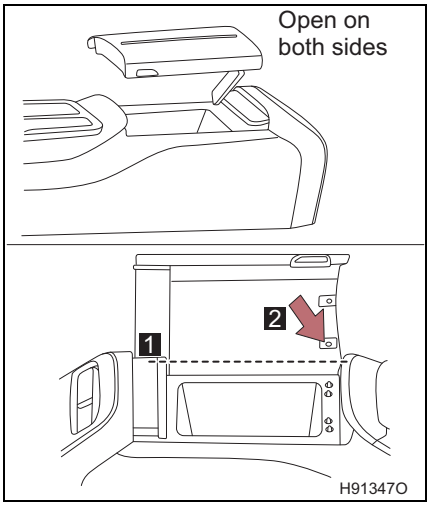


Press the storage box switch and pop up the front center storage box cover in the opposite direction.

Only after one side is fully closed and a "click" sound is heard, can the other side be opened.

Avoid pressing the opening buttons on both sides at the same time.

■ **If both sides of the armrest are opened and popped out, please follow the steps below to restore it:**



1 Align the protruding shaft on contraction side with the locking hole.

2 Press the return latch button to return the armrest to its normal operating condition.

WARNING

■ **Warning during driving**

Keep the storage box closed.

Failure to do so may result in personal injury in the event of an accident or emergency braking.

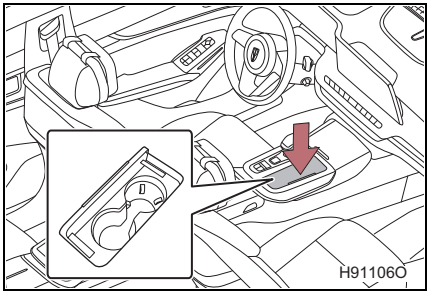
CAUTION

■ **Precautions for opening and closing**

- When closing, please note that protruding shafts on both ends are in contracted state, and prevent them from impacting the flocking surface, which may result in damage to the flocking surface.
- If the protruding shaft is not in contracted state, it is necessary to press the opening button again and then close the armrest box.
- With one side opened (not closed), never press the opening button on the other side to open the armrest.

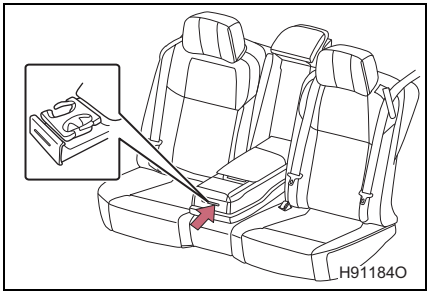
Cup holder

▶ Front



Press down the cup holder cover to enable the cup holder cover to automatically flip open.

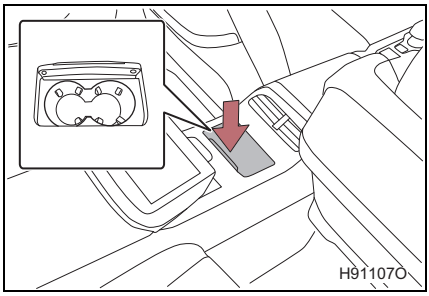
▶ Rear (type 1)



Lower the rear center armrest, and press and release the cup holder cover to enable the rear cup holder to automatically pop out.

Retract the cup holder when it is not in use.

▶ Rear (type 2)



Press down the cup holder cover to enable the cup holder cover to automatically flip open.

When storing a cup in cup holder

- Tighten the cup cover.
- Depending on size or shape, certain cups may not be stored in the cup holder.

⚠ WARNING

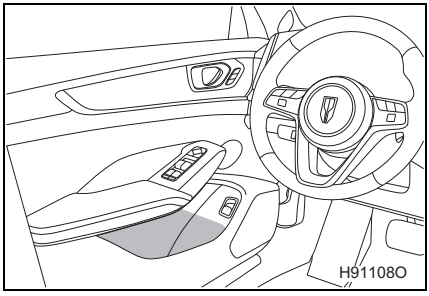
■ **When using cup holder**

- Do not place anything other than cups or aluminum cans in the cup holder, as such items may be thrown out of the cup holder and cause personal injury in the event of an accident or emergency braking.
- It is dangerous to use a cup holder for holding a cup with hot liquid, etc. If the liquid inside the cup is spilled, it may cause burns.
- Be careful to prevent foreign objects such as liquids from coming into contact with the electrical parts around the cup holder, as this may cause risk of short circuit or electric shock.

■ **When not in use**

Keep the cup holder closed. Failure to do so may result in personal injury in the event of an accident or emergency braking.

Storage box

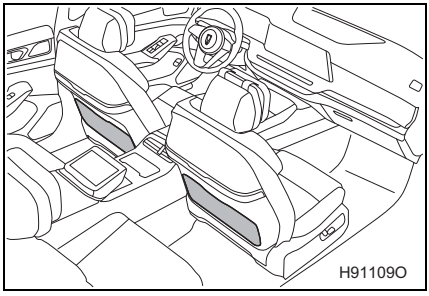


A storage box is provided on each door and can be used to store miscellaneous items such as bottles or rags.

When storing bottles, tighten the caps.

Depending on size or shape, certain bottles may not be stored in the storage box.

Document pocket

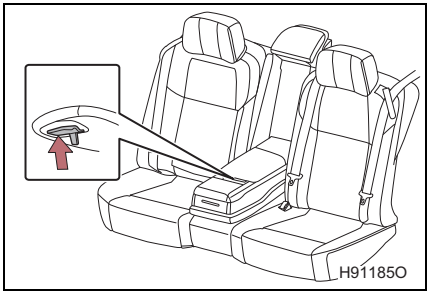


Document pockets are provided on the rear of the driver's and front passenger's seat backs.

They are used for storing newspapers, magazines and other items.

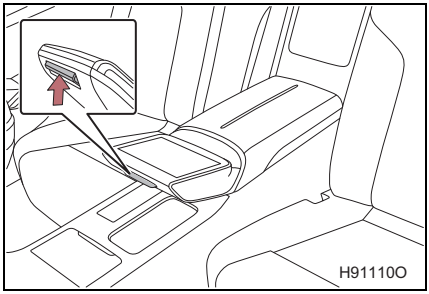
Rear center storage box

▶ Type 1



Open the storage box by pressing the handle and lifting up the box cover.

▶ Type 2



Open the storage box by pressing the handle and lifting up the box cover.

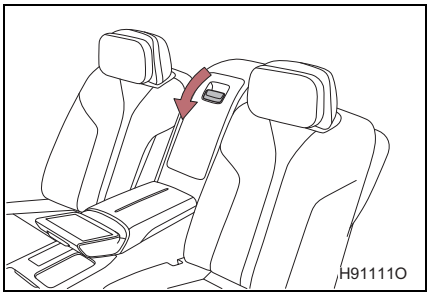
⚠ WARNING

■ **Warning during driving**

Keep the storage box closed.

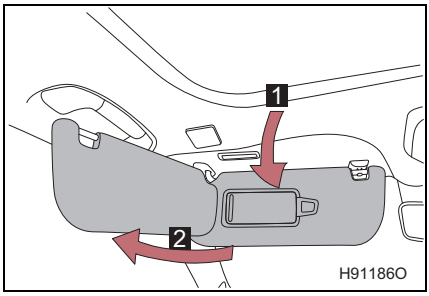
Failure to do so may result in personal injury in the event of an accident or emergency braking.

Rear seat back storage box*



Press the switch and turn it over forward to open the storage box.

Sun visor



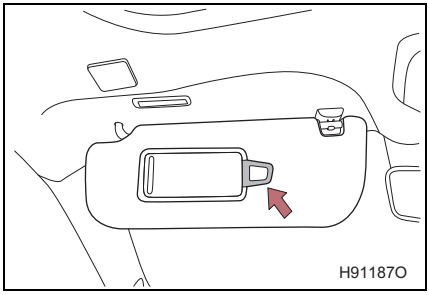
1 Front position

Turn down the sun visor.

2 Side position

Turn down the sun visor, unhook it, and pull it to the side.

Document holder



The document holder is located on the driver's sun visor.

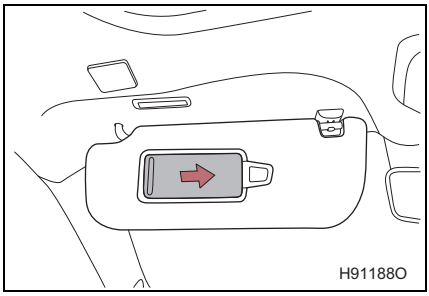
It is used to store tickets, business cards and other objects.

⚠ CAUTION

■ **Preventing damage to the document holder**

Do not put too many objects in the document holder.

Vanity mirror

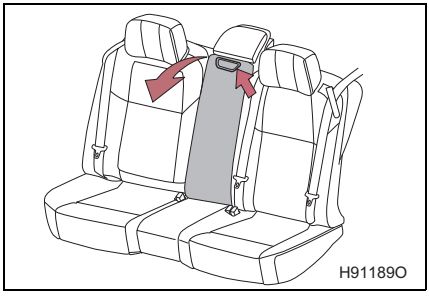


Turn down the sun visor and slide the vanity mirror cover to open the mirror.

CAUTION

- **When not in use**
  Keep the vanity mirror closed.
- **Preventing low battery**
  Do not allow the vanity mirror lamp to be on for a long time while the vehicle is not started.

Rear center armrest



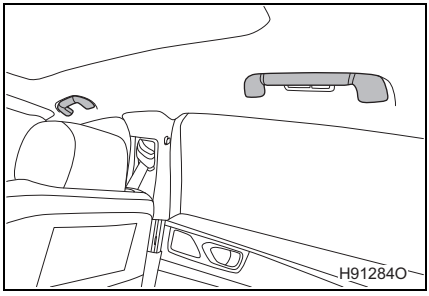
As shown in the figure, for some models, unlock button must be pressed to pull down the armrest.

CAUTION

■ **Preventing damage to the armrest**

- The armrest has damped structure. After unlocking, the armrest can be pulled down slowly with slight force, and it cannot be pressed down strongly and quickly to avoid damage to the damping element of armrest.
- Do not press down hard on the armrest when using it.
- When the armrest is returned, the armrest can be automatically returned after being pushed to a certain angle. If the armrest is squeezed by the seats on both sides and cannot be automatically returned, external force can be slightly applied to make it return.

Roof grab handle



The roof grab handles are located at the roof side beams of all doors.

When sitting in the seat, you can have your body supported by the roof grab handles mounted on the headlining.

WARNING

■ **Roof grab handle**

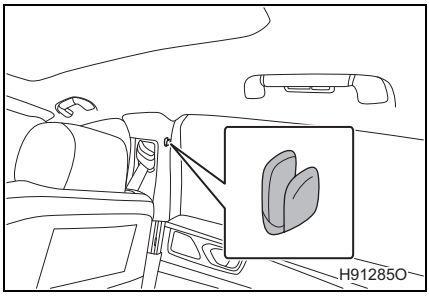
Do not use the roof grab handles when getting on and off the vehicle or when getting up from the seat.

CAUTION

■ **Preventing damage to the roof grab handles**

Do not hang any heavy objects or apply heavy loads to the roof grab handles to prevent damage.

Coat hook



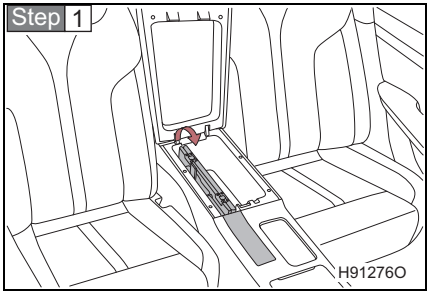
You can hang your clothes on the coat hook.

WARNING

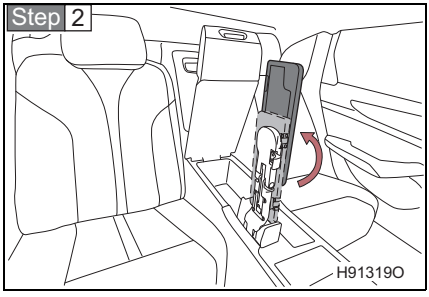
■ **Items that should not be hung on coat hook**

Do not hang clothes racks or other hard or sharp objects on the coat hook. If the curtain airbag is deployed, these objects may be ejected, resulting in serious injury or death.

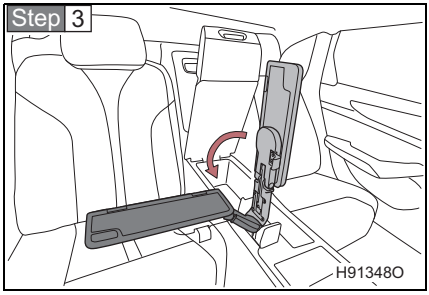
Foldable table*



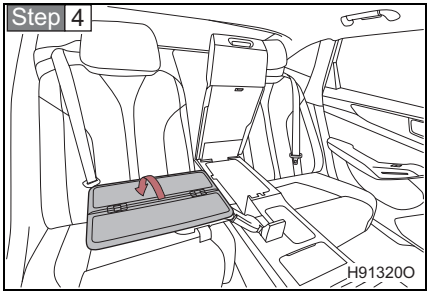
Open the rear center storage box and pull out the foldable table.



Turn the table upwards.



Fold the table to the front.

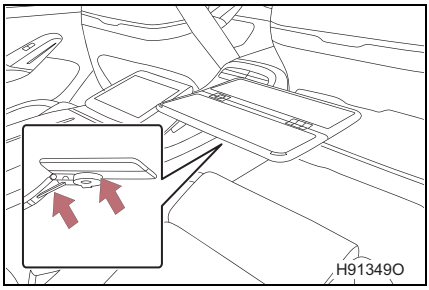


Open the foldable table backward.

⚠ WARNING

■ **Precautions for using the foldable table**

- When stowing the foldable table, it must be stowed in the opposite order when opening.
- Do not use the foldable table during driving, to avoid personal injury in the event of accident or emergency braking.
- Do not lean items over 10 kg against the foldable table or put them on the table.
- Do not use the foldable table during adjusting the front seat, to avoid damaging the foldable table.



- Do not place your hand on the stowed position of foldable table during operation, otherwise it may result in hands being caught.

In-vehicle infotainment system

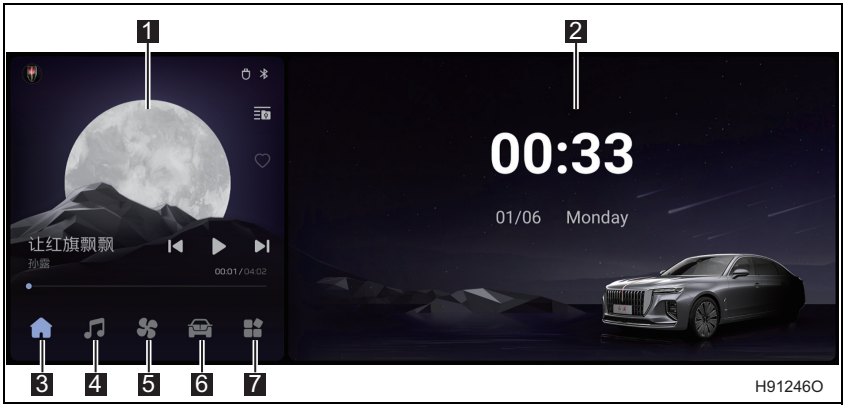
5

5-1. Basic operation
Multimedia display ... 170
USB data interface ... 175
5-2. Using in-vehicle infotainment system
Setting 177
Entertainment 185
Extended application 186
5-3. Using hands-free system
Hands-free system ... 187

Multimedia display

Users can operate the functions such as navigation, phone, radio, music, settings, A/C through the multimedia display.

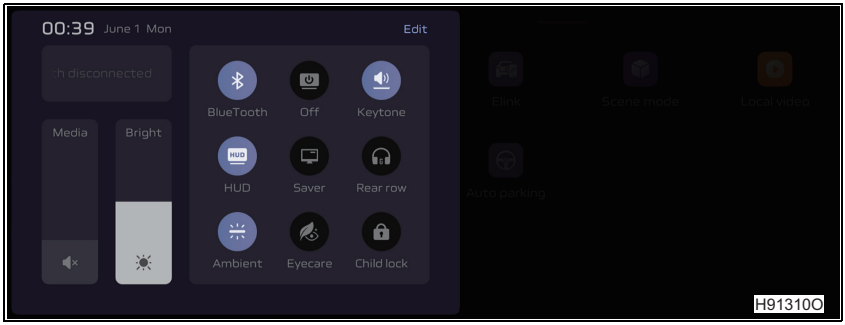
Front entertainment display



No.	Name	Function
1	Main menu interface	Display the currently playing multimedia information.
2	Function display interface	Corresponding interface is displayed when turning on each function.
3	Home page	Return to the home page.
4	Entertainment	Enter [Entertainment] function interface You can use the entertainment functions such as music, radio station, radio, etc.
5	A/C	Enter [A/C] interface You can set and view the front and rear A/C system.
6	Setting	Enter [Setting] function interface Driving, vehicle, display, connection, audio, system and other setting functions can be viewed and operated.
7	Extended application	Enter [Extended application] function interface You can view and operate functions such as Bluetooth phone, file management and local video.

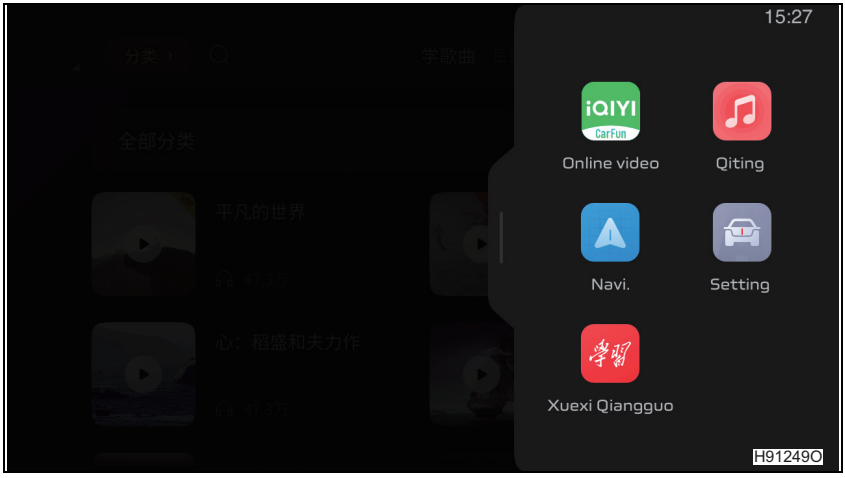
Shortcut menu on front entertainment display

With system on, swipe down on the main menu interface to pull out the shortcut menu, and you can perform shortcut operations to view some functions.

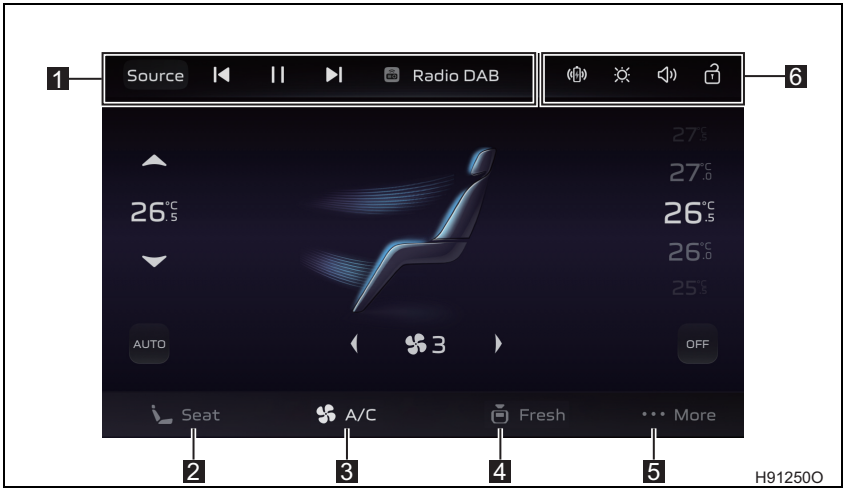


Rear entertainment display*

User can operate navigation, online video, Qiting, setting through rear entertainment display.



Rear center armrest display*



No.	Name	Function
1	Multimedia	You can select the media source to be played and switch the playing tracks.
2	Seat	Functions such as rear seat adjustment, ventilation, heating and massage can be set.
3	A/C	Rear A/C can be checked and operated.
4	Fragrance	Fragrance system can be set.
5	More	Ambient lamp, sunroof and sunshade can be set.
6	Setting	Operations such as screen brightness adjustment, volume adjustment and screen lock can be performed.

■ Preventing damage to the multimedia display

- During operation, touch the multimedia display gently with fingers. If the content shown on the multimedia display cannot be called out, it indicates that the content may not be available at the moment. Do not press the screen buttons excessively to avoid damage to the device.
- Do not use sharp or angular hard objects to touch the multimedia display; otherwise the multimedia display may be damaged.

- Do not spray liquid directly onto the multimedia display. If liquid leaks into the equipment, the electronic components may be damaged.
- When cleaning the surface of the multimedia display, set the engine switch to "IG-OFF" mode and wipe the screen with a soft and dry cloth. Do not use coarse rags, chemical rags or organic reagents (alcohol, benzene, disinfectant, etc.) for cleaning, as they can damage or deteriorate the panel.

When using the multimedia display

- If the multimedia display is cold, the display may be dark, or the system may seem to be operating slightly slower than normal.
- The display may be dark or difficult to see clearly when you wear sunglasses, so change the angle of the multimedia display or remove the sunglasses.
- Do not expose the multimedia display to sunlight for a long time.
- Do not expose the multimedia display to moisture, dust, oil smoke, etc.

⚠ WARNING

When using the in-vehicle infotainment system

- Please avoid operating the system as much as possible while driving.
- The volume should be adjusted properly so that the situation outside the vehicle can be heard during driving. Otherwise, an accident may happen.
- Do not use the system in a fault state where there is no image or sound, as this may cause an accident, fire, electric shock or fatal injury.
- Do not operate the system in no-parking areas, as this may result in traffic accidents.
- For the sake of safety, the use of this function shall never distract your attention or hinder safe driving. Ignoring road and traffic conditions can lead to accidents.

Do not disassemble or modify this product without permission, as this may cause traffic accidents, fires, or electric shocks.

In case of abnormal conditions such as entry of foreign materials or water ingress, stop using the system immediately and contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer. If you continue to use the system, a fault may occur.

⚠ CAUTION

■ Preventing low battery

Turn off the in-vehicle infotainment system if it is not needed after the engine is stopped.

■ Noise from the in-vehicle infotainment system

- Due to the high sensitivity of this system, the system may make interference noises when closing to TV towers, radio stations, power plants or other places with strong radio waves or electrical noise interference.
- During operation, the in-vehicle infotainment system may make interference noises when a mobile phone is used in or near the car.

■ Preventing damage to the in-vehicle infotainment system

Be careful not to spill drinks or other liquids on the in-vehicle infotainment system. If liquid or other objects enter the unit, switch off the power immediately and contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.

■ Preventing a depleted battery

Do not keep this system on for a long time when the engine is stopped.

■ Compatibility

Some devices may not work properly due to their own compatibility.

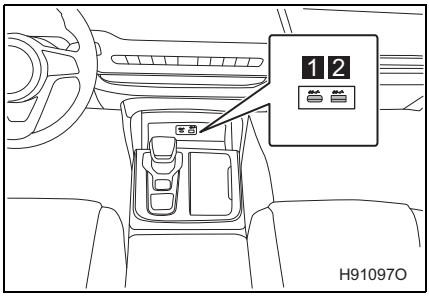
■ In case of a fault

If the fault cannot be eliminated, please contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.

USB data interface

After connected to the USB data interface, an USB device can be operated through the in-vehicle infotainment system.

Using USB data interface



Open the front center storage box cover, and connect an external multimedia source.

1 USB1

2 USB2

USB memory

Connect a USB memory device.

If the USB memory is not started, turn on its power supply.

WARNING

During driving

Do not connect the device or operate its control buttons to prevent accidents.

CAUTION

■ **Preventing damage to USB devices or their terminals**

- Be sure to keep the interface clean. If foreign matter or liquid enters the interface, the in-vehicle infotainment system may malfunction.
- Do not plug high-current USB devices other than U disk and mobile phone, such as mobile hard disks and portable powers.
- Do not leave the USB device in the vehicle, as the temperature inside the vehicle may rise, causing damage to the USB devices.
- Do not press or apply unnecessary pressure to the USB device when it is connected.
- Do not insert foreign objects into the interface.

■ **Compatibility**

Some devices may not work properly due to their own compatibility.

■ **Ensuring proper system recognition**

USB devices with poor quality may not be identified by the system, so it is recommended to use high-quality USB devices.

■ **When getting off the vehicle**

Do not leave items such as mobile phones in the vehicle. The temperature inside the vehicle may rise, causing damage to mobile phones.

■ **Preventing a depleted battery**

Do not allow the USB port to be in use for a long time when the engine is shut down.

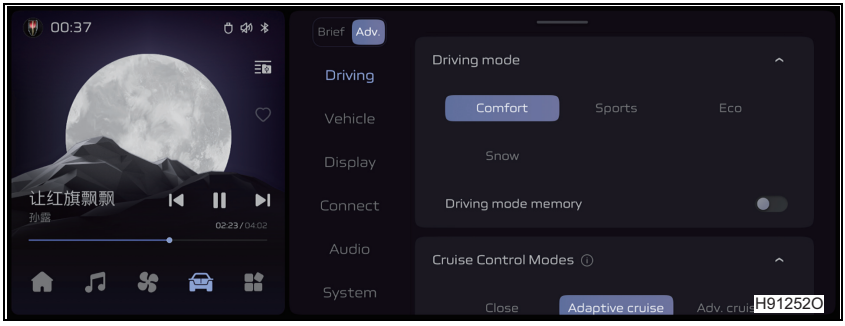
■ **Mobile phone data cable**

The USB cables supplied with mobile phones are recommended for connection to ensure a stable connection.

On the main menu interface, touch button to enter setting function interface.

In each setting interface, you can choose simple mode or advanced mode: advanced mode comprehensively introduces vehicle-related settings, while simple mode only introduces common settings. This chapter only takes advanced mode as an example.

Driving setting



1 Driving mode

Four driving modes (comfort, sport, economic, snow) can be set, at the same time, driving mode memory function ON/OFF can be set.

2 Cruise mode

Set the ON/OFF of cruise function. Cruise mode can be set to SACC or ACC.

3 Lane departure warning and assistance

- Warning mode: Set the ON/OFF of lane departure warning, the alarm mode can be set to Lane Departure Warning (LDW), alarm + Lane Keeping Assist (LKA).
- Warning sensitivity: Alarm trigger sensitivity can be set to low, medium and high.

4 Blind spot detection/lane change assist

Set the ON/OFF of blind spot detection/lane change assist function.

5 Forward collision warning

- Forward collision warning and assist: Set the ON/OFF of FCW, the alarm mode can be set to warning (FCW) only or warning + braking (AEB).
- Warning sensitivity: Alarm trigger sensitivity can be set to low, medium and high.

6 Rear collision warning

- Rear cross traffic alert: Set the ON/OFF of rear cross traffic alert function.
- Rear collision warning: Set the ON/OFF of rear collision warning function.

7 Speed limit reminder

Set the ON/OFF of speed limit reminder.

- Speed limit mode: The speed limit mode can be set to manual or intelligent speed limit reminder (TSR).

8 AUTO HOLD

Set the ON/OFF of AUTO HOLD function.

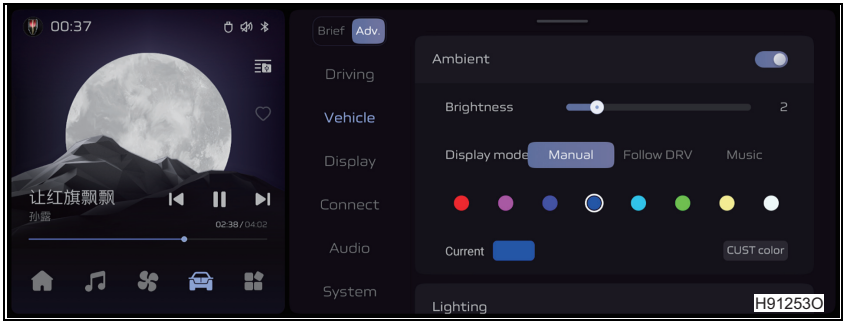
9 AUTO HOLD after power-off

Set whether to park automatically when power-off.

10 Driving and safety

- Driver fatigue reminder: Set the ON/OFF of driver status monitoring system.
- Rear seat belt unfastening reminder: Set the ON/OFF of rear seat belt unfastening reminder.
- ESC OFF: Set the ON/OFF of electronic stability control.
- Door opening warning: Set the ON/OFF of the door opening warning function.

Vehicle setting



1 Ambient lamp

Set the ON/OFF of ambient lamp.

- The brightness and color can be adjusted, and set the ambient lamp color to switch along with driving mode or adjust with music rhythm.

2 Lighting

- Intelligent high beam lamp: Set the ON/OFF of intelligent high beam control system.
- Boarding lighting: Set the ON/OFF and lighting time of boarding lighting.
- Getting-off lighting: Set the ON/OFF and lighting time of getting-off lighting.

3 Tail lamps OLED light mode

Set the light mode when tail lamps illuminate.

4 Door and window adjustment

- Auto proximity unlocking: Set the ON/OFF of auto proximity unlocking.

  When this function is turned on, if the driver approaches the vehicle with the smart key carried, the vehicle will be unlocked automatically.

- Key secure unlocking: Set the ON/OFF of secure unlocking.

  Single door: Press the smart key unlock button once to unlock the driver door;

  Press the smart key unlock button twice consecutively to unlock all doors.

  Four doors: Press the smart key unlock button once to unlock all doors.

- Auto closing of windows in rainy days: Set the ON/OFF of function of automatic window and sunroof closing in rainy days.

5 Exterior rearview mirror

- Auto folding of exterior rearview mirror after locking the vehicle: Set the ON/OFF of automatic folding function of exterior rearview mirrors.
- Auto tilting of right rearview mirror during reversing: Set the ON/OFF of downward tilt function of right rearview mirror during reversing.

6 Suspension adjustment

- Body height setting: Four body height modes can be set: Lower, standard, higher and very high.
- Lifting mode: Enter/exit the lifting mode.

7 Easy access

Set the ON/OFF of welcome function.

8 "*" button on steering wheel

- * button on multi-functional steering wheel can be set as theme switching or automatic parking.

9 Wiper service position

Set the ON/OFF of wiper service position.

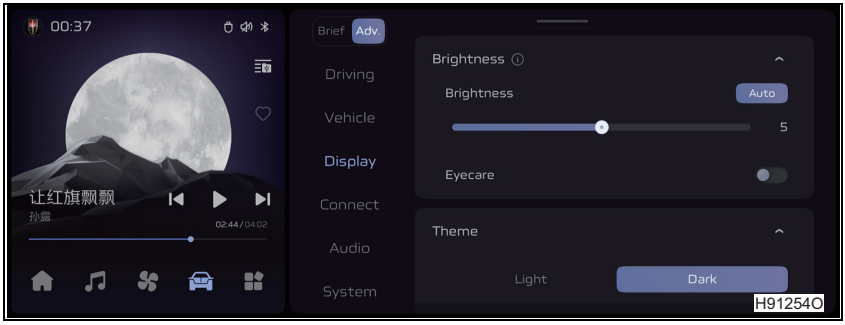
When the wiper service position function is turned on, place the wiper in the service position if conditions permit.

10 Rear display lock

Set the ON/OFF of rear display child lock.

When the function is turned on, the rear display cannot be operated.

Display setting



1 Brightness

- Display mode: Two display modes can be set: Auto, non-auto.

  In auto mode, the daytime display brightness can be set when the position lamp is turned off, and the nighttime display brightness can be set when the position lamp is turned on. After setting, the display brightness will be automatically adjusted when the position lamp is turned on/off.

- Eye protection mode: Set the ON/OFF of eye protection mode.

2 Theme

The theme can be set as automatic, light color and dark color; Under dark theme, classic or science and technology mode can be selected.

3 Font

- Font size: Font size can be set to standard or large.
- Synchronization of font size on each screen: You can set whether the font size of each display is adjusted synchronously.

4 Screen on/off

- Central control screen: Set the ON/OFF of central control screen.
- Left rear screen*: Set the ON/OFF of left rear screen.
- Right rear screen*: Set the ON/OFF of right rear screen.

5 Electronic interior rearview mirror (stream media interior rearview mirror)

- Display scale: Three display scales can be set: 1.0, 1.2, and 1.4.

- Display area: Three display areas can be set: Upper, middle and lower.
- Display brightness: Brightness can be adjusted from levels 0-10.

6 Wallpaper

Wallpaper can be set as a mechanical clock, digital clock or slide.

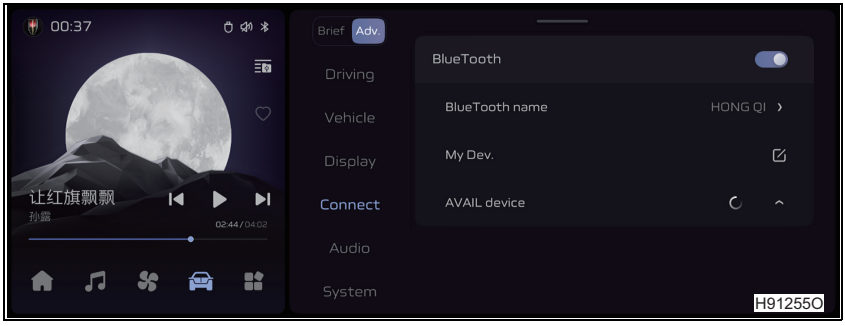
7 Head-up display

Set the ON/OFF of head-up display.

- Theme setting: Three theme modes can be set: Fair, elegant, and orange.
- Signal display content: Set the ON/OFF of driving assistance, basic information display.

  Basic information includes gear position, incoming call reminder, driving mode.

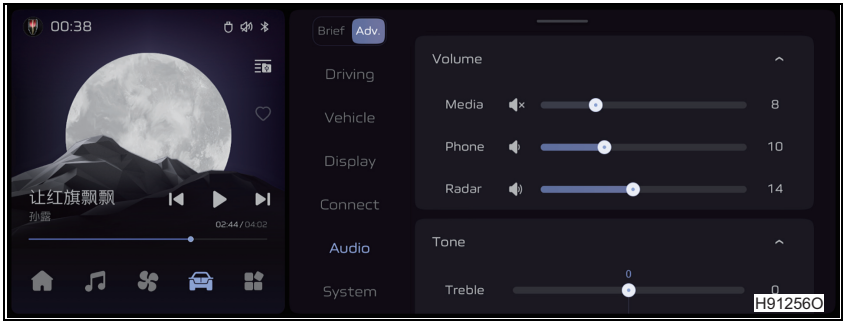
Connection setting



1 Bluetooth

- Bluetooth can be turned on or off. When Bluetooth is turned on, the saved devices and available devices can be viewed, connected and deleted, and the Bluetooth name can be set at the same time.

Audio setting



1 Volume

The volume of multimedia, phone, radar and other functions can be adjusted.

2 Timbre

The treble, mid and bass levels can be adjusted.

3 Sound effect mode

Four modes can be set: Normal balance, driver seat priority, rear VIP, and virtual surround sound.

4 Sound field balance

By dragging the circular cursor, you can select the optimal sound field position and restore the default reset.

5 Audio source restoration

Once enabled, the sound of online music, USB music, locally stored music, Bluetooth music and other tracks with compression losses can be compensated and restored during playback to improve the listening experience.

6 Key tone

Set the ON/OFF of screen key tone.

7 Multimedia volume reduction

Set the ON/OFF of multimedia volume reduction during alarm prompt.

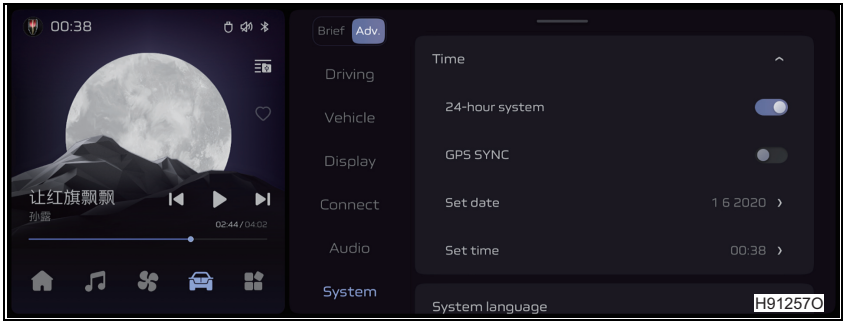
8 Volume increases with vehicle speed

Volume increase level can be set to OFF, low, medium and high.

9 Alarm tone

Alarm tone can be set to high, medium and low.

System setting



1 Time and date

- 24h: 24h system is applied at power-on; 12h system is applied at power-off.
- GPS synchronization: You can set whether to synchronize the network time or not. When GPS synchronization is turned off, the time bar can be adjusted manually.

2 Language

Language can be set to simplified Chinese, English, Russian or Arabic.

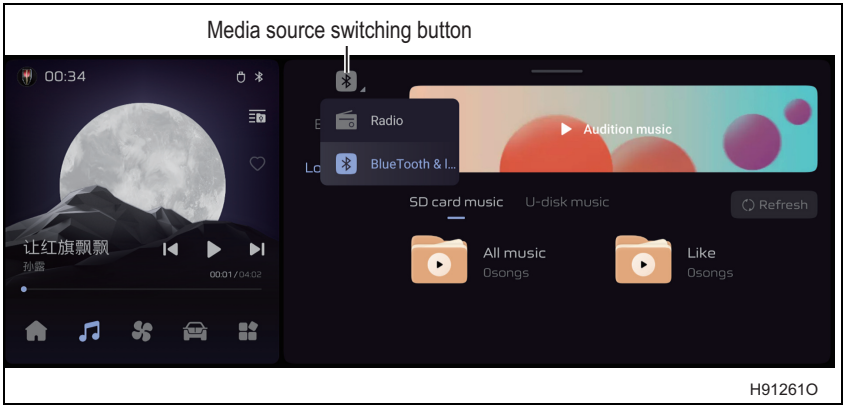
3 About the system

System information can be viewed.

4 Factory reset

System can be restored to factory setting.

On the main menu interface, touch button to enter the entertainment function interface.



1 Radio

Play and search FM radio, AM radio and DAB radio*.

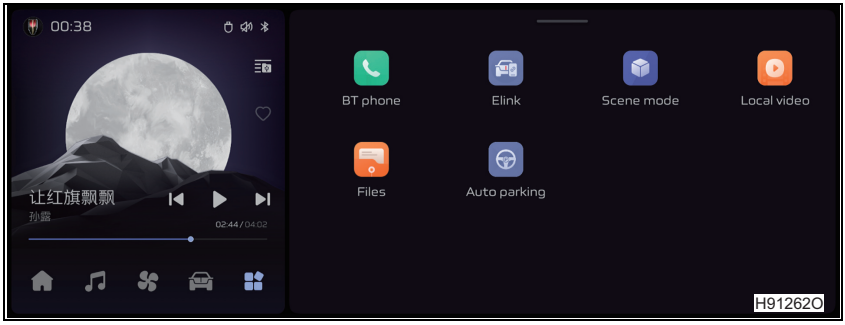
2 Bluetooth & local

View and play the local music and Bluetooth music.

■ **Antenna**

The radio antenna is built into the shark fin antenna.

On the main menu interface, touch button to enter the extended application function interface.



1 Bluetooth phone

On-board Bluetooth phone function can be used after connecting to Bluetooth.

2 Mobile phone interconnection

Interconnection display between mobile phone and vehicle can be achieved.

3 Scene mode

The scene mode can be selected manually, after selecting, the vehicle will automatically set comfort systems such as A/C, windows and seats for the selected mode.

4 Local video

View and play the local video.

5 File management

View and manage local, USB1 and USB2 files.

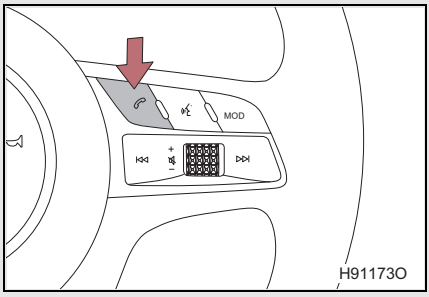
6 APA

Auto parking assist (APA) can be turned on.

The hands-free system has the function of operating the phone without touching the mobile phone.

This system support Bluetooth® mobile phones. Bluetooth® is a wireless data system that establishes wireless connection between the mobile phone and the hands-free system.

■ Phone button



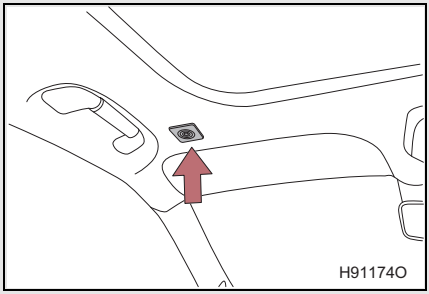
The phone button is located in the position shown in the figure.

See the following table for specific functions:

Information description	Function
Press	Press: In case of an incoming call: Answer the current incoming call; Call/dial-out state: Hang up the current call; Display the list of recent calls on the multimedia display when there is no incoming call.
Press and hold	In case of an incoming call: Hang up the current call;

Before using the hands-free system, you must bind a Bluetooth phone.

■ Bluetooth microphone



Located near each handle of the vehicle ceiling.

- If the volume of reception is too high, you may hear an echo.
- Try to face the microphone when speaking.
- Under the following circumstances, it may be difficult for the other party to hear the sound:
  - Phone signal is poor.
  - Drive on an unpaved road.
  - Drive at high speed.
  - Window is open.
  - The A/C outlet is facing the microphone.
  - The air volume of A/C blower is too high.

■ **The system will be inoperative under the following conditions:**

- The used phone does not support Bluetooth®.
- The mobile phone is turned off or in flight mode.
- The current location is outside the service area.
- The mobile phone is not connected.
- The mobile phone battery is low.

■ **Bluetooth® antenna**

If a mobile phone is placed in the storage box, or in contact with or covered by metal materials, its connection state may deteriorate.

■ **Battery level/signal status**

This display may not be exactly consistent with that of mobile phones.

About Bluetooth®



Bluetooth® is the trademark of Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

Compatible type

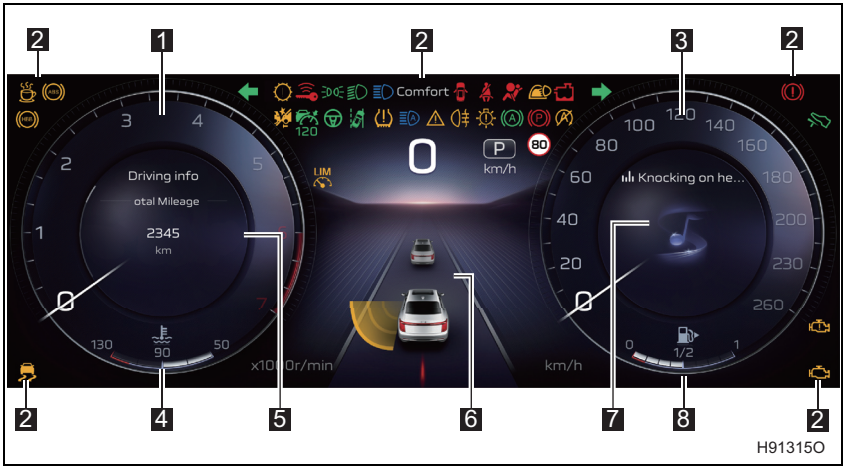
The Bluetooth hands-free system is only compatible with Bluetooth certified (SIG) phones sold through regular channels and of mainstream brands.

CAUTION

When getting off the vehicle

Do not leave items such as mobile phones in the vehicle. The temperature inside the vehicle may rise, causing damage to mobile phones.

6-1. Instrument information
Instrument cluster 192
Information on multi-function display of instrument cluster ... 194
Head up display 197
6-2. Driving specifications
Driving the vehicle 199
Engine (start) switch 207
Gearshift control 209
Driving mode 217
Air suspension* 220
6-3. Operating lamps and wipers
Headlamp switch 225
Turn signal lamp control lever 228
ADB intelligent high beam control 229
Fog lamp switch 232
Front windshield wiper & washer 233
6-4. Using driver assistance system
Adaptive cruise control (ACC) 237
Super adaptive cruise control (SACC)* 247
Tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) 257
Lane departure warning/ lane keeping assist (LDW/LKA) 259
Driver status monitor (DSM) 262
Forward collision warning (FCW) 264
Autonomous emergency braking (AEB) 267
Blind spot detection (BSD) 271
Traffic sign recognition (TSR) 277
Idle stop-start system 279
Driver assistance system 285



Depending on vehicle configurations, the specific displayed information will vary.

1 Tachometer

Display the engine RPM.

2 Prompt/alarm icon display area

Display information regarding car indicator lamps and warning lamps.

3 Speedometer

Display the vehicle speed.

4 Engine coolant temperature display area

Display the engine coolant temperature information.

5 Driving information display area

Display driving information, tire pressure monitoring, body height, alarm query, energy flow, head up display and backlight brightness setting, etc.

6 Comprehensive information display area

Display information on gear, vehicle speed, navigation, driving assistance, date and various alarms/prompts, etc.

7 Media information display area

Display information on music, radio, news, video, call, etc. in the in-vehicle infotainment system.

8 Fuel gauge display area

Display the remaining fuel amount.

⚠ WARNING

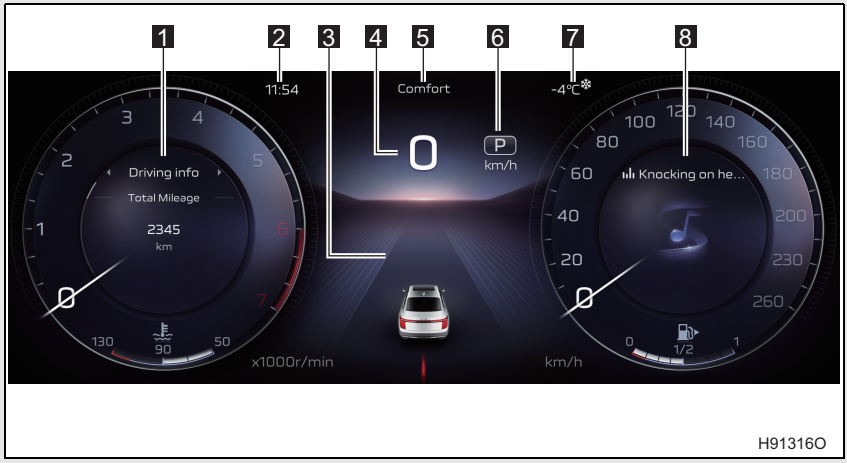
■ **Prevent damage to engine and its components**

- If the tachometer pointer is in the red zone, it indicates that the engine speed is close to the maximum value. In this case, control the speed.
- If the temperature gauge pointer is in the red zone, the engine may have overheated. In this case, park the car in a safe place immediately, and then check the engine after it has completely cooled down.

■ **In case of brightness adjustment**

For the sake of safety, please adjust the backlight brightness during parking, and do not distract attention and hinder safe driving while using this function. Ignoring road and traffic conditions can lead to accidents.

The driver can view driving-related information and audio information through the driving information display area, media information display area and comprehensive information display area in the instrument cluster.



1 Driving information display area

2 Time display area

Display the clock information.

3 Speed display area

Display the current speed of the car.

4 Driving mode display area

Display the current driving mode information.

5 Gear display area

Display the current gear of the car.

6 Environmental information display area

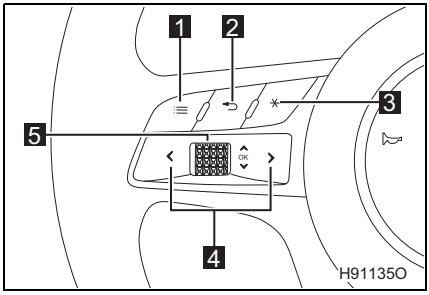
Display the outside ambient temperature.

7 Media information display area

8 Comprehensive information display area

Buttons on steering wheel

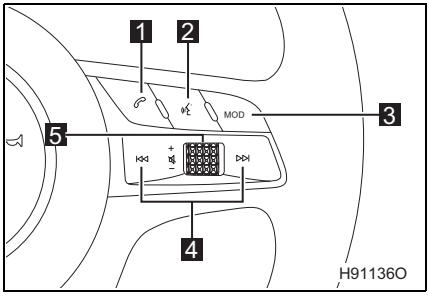
■ Buttons on the left of steering wheel



1 Menu button
2 Back button
3 Multi-function button
4 Left/right selection button
5 Scroll wheel

No.	Function
1	Press: Enter/exit the head up display and backlight brightness setting interface Press and hold: Press and hold for more than 10 s to restart the in-vehicle infotainment system
2	Press: Return to the previous interface
3	Press: Switch multimedia audio sources or enter automatic parking function Press and hold: Enter in-vehicle infotainment system to perform function settings of the multi-function button. (See P.180)
4	Press: Switch among driving information, tire pressure monitoring, body height, alarm query and energy flow
5	Scroll: Switch options up and down Press: Confirm the selection

■ Buttons on the right of steering wheel



1 Phone button
2 Voice recognition button*
3 MOD button
4 Track/radio station button
5 Scroll wheel

No.	Function
1	Press: Answer the current incoming call when there is an incoming call End the current call when there is call/dial-out Display the last call information when there is no incoming call, and dial out if it is pressed again Press and hold: End the current call when there is an incoming call Automatically dial out the last call number when there is no incoming call
2	— —
3	Press: Switch multimedia audio sources
4	Press: Previous track (radio station)/next track (radio station) Press and hold: Fast forward/rewind the playback progress of current audio file
5	Scroll: Increase/decrease the volume, and unmute the media source in mute state Press: Mute/unmute

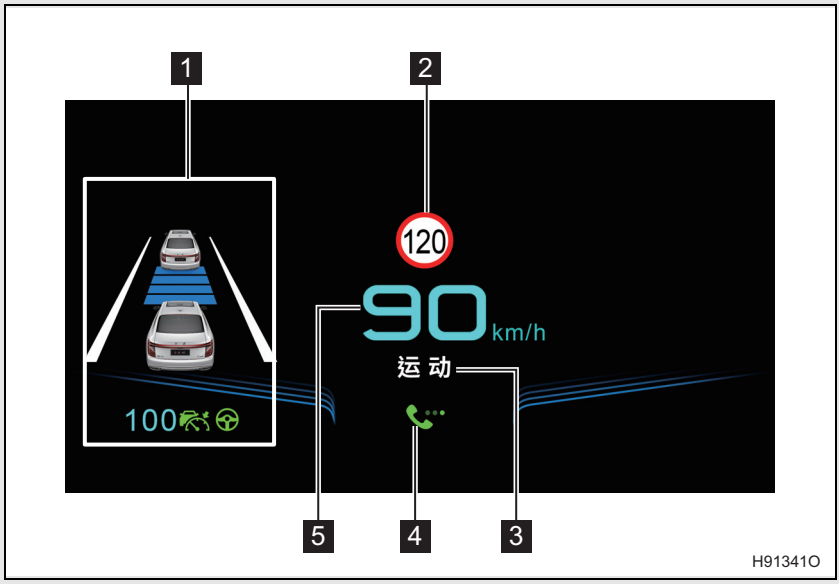
⚠ WARNING

■ **During driving**

During operation of buttons on steering wheel, extra care must be taken to avoid accidents.

Head up display

The head up display is linked with instrument panel and in-vehicle infotainment system, projecting driving assistance and navigation information onto the front windshield facing the driver.



1 Driver assistance system display area
Display information such as cruise, forward collision warning, autonomous emergency braking and lane keeping assist.

2 Speed limit alarm/gear display area
Display the current road speed limit or gear information.

3 Driving mode display area
Display the current driving mode information of vehicle.

4 Phone display area
Display the incoming call prompt symbol.

5 Vehicle speed display area
Display the current vehicle speed.

Usage of head up display

Head up display setting

The on/off, virtual image height, brightness and angle of head up display can be set in the head up display and backlight brightness setting of instrument cluster. (See P.195)

The on/off and display content of head up display can be set in the display settings of in-vehicle infotainment system. (See P.182)

⚠ WARNING

Before using head up display

- Check that the position and brightness of the virtual image on the head up display do not interfere with safe driving. Incorrect adjustment of the position or brightness of the virtual image can interfere with the driver's view and cause an accident, resulting in serious injury or even death.

During driving

- During driving, do not continue staring at the head up display, otherwise you may not be able to see pedestrians and objects on the road in front of the vehicle.

⚠ CAUTION

Prevent damage to components

- Do not place any liquid near the head up display projector. If the projector becomes wet, it may cause electrical failure.
- Do not place any items or stickers on the head up display projector. Otherwise, the display on the head up display may be interrupted.
- Do not touch the head up display projector or throw objects with sharp edges at the projector. Otherwise, it may cause mechanical failure.

The following driving specifications must be observed to ensure safe driving.

■ Starting engine (see P.207)

■ Driving

Step 1 Depress the brake pedal and set the shift lever to D position, to release the EPB automatically.

Step 2 Gradually release the brake pedal and gently depress the accelerator pedal to accelerate the car.

■ Stop

Step 1 When the shift lever is set to D position, depress the brake pedal.

Step 2 If necessary, apply the EPB.
For long-term parking, be sure to set the shift lever to P or N position.

■ Parking

Step 1 When the shift lever is set to D position, depress the brake pedal.

Step 2 Press the P position button and set the shift lever to P position, to apply the EPB automatically.

Step 3 Press the engine switch to shut down the engine.

Step 4 Lock the doors and make sure to carry the key with you.

Starting on a steep slope

Step 1 The driver fastens the seat belt, closes the doors, firmly depresses the brake pedal and sets the shift lever to D position.

Make sure the gear indicator lamp shows D.

Step 2 Manually apply the EPB.

Step 3 Release the brake pedal and gently depress the accelerator pedal.

■ **During starting on an uphill slope**

The Hill Hold Control (HHC) activates automatically to prevent the car from slipping. (See P.285)

■ **Emergency stop signal (ESS)**

When a certain speed is reached, if emergency braking is applied, the brake lamp flashes quickly to remind the rear vehicle until the brake pedal is released.

■ **Driving in the rain**

- When it rains, as visibility is reduced, windows fog up easily and the road is slippery, so drive with caution.
- When it rains, do not drive at a high speed because a water film will form between tires and road surface, hindering the normal operation of steering and braking.

■ **Overspeed alarm***

The overspeed alarm function will be activated when driving vehicle at a speed of more than 120 km/h. Please slow down at this time.

■ **Running in new car**

To extend the life of the car, it is recommended that you observe the following precautions:

- Within the first 1,000 km:
  - Do not perform emergency stop.
  - Do not drive at a very high speed.
  - Do not accelerate suddenly.
  - Do not drive at a consistently low speed.
  - Do not drive at a constant speed for a long time.

■ **Driving abroad**

Please comply with the laws and regulations of the respective country or region, and make sure that applicable fuel can be obtained locally.

⚠ WARNING

■ **During start**

When the engine starts and the car stops, always depress and hold the brake pedal with one foot. This will prevent the vehicle from moving unexpectedly.

■ **Precautions when driving**

- If you are not familiar with the position of brake pedal and accelerator pedal, do not drive to avoid depressing the wrong pedal.
  - If the accelerator pedal is accidentally depressed when the brake pedal should be depressed, sudden acceleration will be caused, which may lead to serious accidents.
  - Although the car is equipped with reverse image system and parking radar, please operate the accelerator pedal carefully during reversing.
  - During reversing, as it may be inconvenient to operate the pedal due to body wriggle, ensure proper sitting posture to operate the pedal.
  - Even if move the vehicle slightly, you should keep the correct driving posture, so that you can depress the brake pedal and accelerator pedal accurately.
  - Depress the brake pedal with your right foot. Depressing the brake pedal with the left foot in an emergency may lead to delayed response, resulting in an accident.
- Do not drive over flammables or park near them.
  Flammables may be ignited because the exhaust system and exhaust gas are extremely hot.
- Do not move the car backward when the shift lever is set to D or P position, or forward when the shift lever is set to R or P position; otherwise, it may cause accidents or damage the car.
- If you smell exhaust gas in the car, open the windows.
  A large amount of exhaust gas in the car may seriously endanger the health of driver and passengers, or even cause accidents.
- Do not set the shift lever to P, R or N position when the car is moving forward; otherwise, it may seriously damage the automatic transmission and cause the car to lose control.
- Do not set the shift lever to P, D, M or N position when the car is moving backwards; otherwise, it may seriously damage the automatic transmission and cause the car to lose control.
- Do not set the shift lever to N position during driving; otherwise, the engine brake may not work normally, causing an accident.

⚠ WARNING

- Do not shut down the engine during driving.
  If the engine is not running, the brake booster, etc. will not work normally.
- When going down a steep slope, please use the engine braking (downshift) function to maintain a safe vehicle speed.
  Continuous use of the brake may cause brake overheating and failure.
- When the car is parked on an inclined road, depress the brake pedal and apply the EPB to prevent the car from moving forward or backward, causing an accident.
- Do not adjust the position of steering wheel, seat, interior or exterior rearview mirror during driving; otherwise, it may cause accidents.
- Be sure to check that all occupants' arms, heads or other body parts are not sticked out of the car; otherwise, serious personal injury may be caused.

■ When driving on a lippery road

- Emergency braking, acceleration and turns may cause wheel slippage and reduce the maneuverability of the car, causing accidents.
- A abrupt change in engine speed, such as engine braking caused by downshifting, may cause car slippage, resulting in accidents.
- After passing through a puddle, gently depress the brake pedal to ensure normal brake function. Wet brake linings may impede normal braking. Even if only brake lining on one side gets wet, it can affect car control.

■ When operating the shift lever

Be careful not to shift gears when depressing the accelerator pedal; otherwise, the car may accelerate suddenly, thus causing accidents.

⚠ WARNING

■ When the vehicle stops

- Do not run the engine at a high speed.
  If the shift lever is in a position other than P or N, the car may accelerate suddenly, thus causing accidents.
- Do not leave the car for a long time when the engine is running.
  If this situation cannot be avoided, please park the car in an open place and check that the exhaust gas does not enter the car.
- When the engine is running, please make sure that the EPB works normally; otherwise, keep your foot on the brake pedal to prevent accidents caused by car movement.

■ After the vehicle is parked

- Do not leave spectacles, lighters, sprayers or soft drink cans in the car at a high temperature place; otherwise, the following unexpected circumstances may occur.
  - Gas leaks from lighters or sprayers, causing fires.
  - The interior temperature may deform or rupture the lenses and other plastic parts of spectacles.
  - A soft drink can may rupture, causing the beverage to spill onto interior trims of car, and potentially causing a short circuit in electrical components of the car.
- Be sure to apply the EPB, set the shift lever to P position, turn off the engine switch and lock the car.
- Do not touch the exhaust pipe when the engine is running or just after it is shut down; otherwise, it may cause a scald.
- Do not keep the engine running in places with deep snow or where it is snowing.
  If the car is trapped in snow when the engine is running, the exhaust gas may accumulate and enter the car. This may seriously endanger health.
- Avoid engine idling at a high speed.
  Running the engine at high speed with the car stopped may cause the exhaust system overheating, and if there are flammables nearby, a fire may be caused.

⚠ WARNING

■ Exhaust gas

- Exhaust gas contains colorless and odorless harmful gas - carbon monoxide (CO). Inhaling a large amount of exhaust gas may seriously endanger health and even lead to death.
- If the car is parked in a poorly ventilated place, shut down the engine. In a closed place, such as a garage, exhaust gas may accumulate and enter the car. This may seriously endanger health and even lead to death.
- The exhaust system should be checked irregularly. If there are holes or cracks, joint damage or abnormal exhaust noise due to corrosion, please contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer to inspect and repair the car.

■ While napping in the car

Be sure to shut down the engine. Otherwise, it is possible to accidentally move the shift lever or depress the accelerator pedal, thus causing an accident or engine overheating. In addition, if the car is parked in a poorly ventilated place, the exhaust gas may accumulate and enter the car, which may seriously endanger health and even lead to death.

■ When applying the brake

- Drive carefully when the brake is wet.
  When the brake is wet, the braking distance will increase, the braking effects on both sides of the car may be different, and the parking brake may not hold the car still.
- If the brake assist function is abnormal, do not follow other vehicles at close range, and avoid going down long slopes or sharp turns.
  In this case, a greater force than usual is required to depress the brake pedal, and the braking distance may also increase.
- If the engine stalls, do not depress the brake pedal repeatedly. Part of the pressure used for brake boost will be consumed every time the brake pedal is depressed.

CAUTION

During driving

- Do not depress the accelerator pedal and brake pedal at the same time, otherwise the engine output may be limited.
- Do not use the accelerator pedal or depress the accelerator pedal and brake pedal at the same time to park on a slope.

Using the car in cold weather (below 0 ˚C)

It is recommended to idle for 1-3 minutes after cold start, and then drive after the oil temperature is raised, which is conducive to fuel saving, protection of the engine and transmission, and enhancement of driving comfort.

Using the car use in extremely cold weather (below -25 ˚C)

There may be a short delay in switching gears at extreme cold temperature; you must make sure that the car is in the correct gear before driving.

When parking

For long-term parking, be sure to apply the EPB and set the shift lever to P position. Otherwise, it may cause the car to move, or suddenly accelerate when the accelerator pedal is accidentally depressed.

Avoid damaging car parts

- Do not turn the steering wheel to the limit in either direction and keep it for a long time; otherwise, the power steering system will be damaged.
- During driving on a bumpy road, try to drive at a low speed to avoid damaging the wheels and bottom of the car.

In case of flat tire during driving

Tire leakage or damage may cause the following conditions:

- It may be difficult to control the car.
- The car will make abnormal sounds.
- The car runs abnormally.

In case of tire leakage or damage during driving, hold the steering wheel, slowly depress the brake pedal to reduce the speed, and replace the flat tire with a new one in time.

CAUTION

In case of water-logged road

Do not drive on a road with deep water; otherwise, the car may suffer from the following serious damage.

- The engine stalls.
- The electrical components are short-circuited.
- The engine is damaged due to water ingress.

If water enters the vehicle after driving on a water-logged road, contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer as soon as possible to check

the following items.

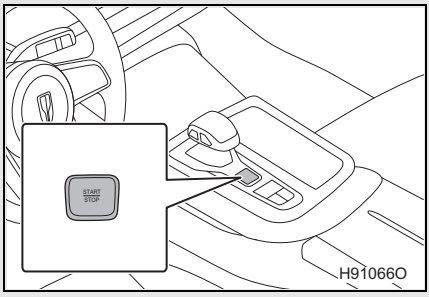
- Check whether the brake functions normally.
- Check whether the oil and transmission fluid are normal.
- Check whether the hub bearing, drive shaft and suspension are normal.

Engine (start) switch

You can switch the mode of engine (start) switch or start the engine when carrying the smart key or Bluetooth key.

■ Switching the mode of engine (start) switch

When the brake pedal is released, you can switch between OFF mode and IG-ON mode by pressing the engine (start) switch. (The mode is switched each time the button is pressed.)



OFF mode*1

The light horns, position lamps and hazard warning lamp can be used.

IG-ON mode

All electrical components can be used.

*1: Before shutting down the engine, set the shift lever to P position.

■ Starting the engine

Step 1 Check that the shift lever is set to P or N position and the EPB has been applied.

Step 2 Sit in the driver seat and firmly depress the brake pedal.

Step 3 Press the engine (start) switch to start the engine.

■ Stopping the engine

Step 1 Stop the car completely.

Step 2 Set the shift lever to P position and confirm that the parking brake has been applied.

Step 3 Press the engine (start) switch to stop the engine.

In case of failure to start the engine

The engine IMMO system may have not been deactivated. (See P.65)

WARNING

During engine start

Be sure to start the engine while sitting in the driver seat. Do not depress the accelerator pedal when starting the engine under any circumstances.

Otherwise, accidents may occur, resulting in serious personal injury or even death.

Precautions when driving

During driving, if the engine is to be forcibly shut down in an emergency, press and hold the engine switch for more than 3 s, or press it 3 consecutive times within 2 s.

Do not touch the engine switch during driving, except in an emergency. If the engine is shut down during driving, it may cause accidents.

CAUTION

Preventing low battery

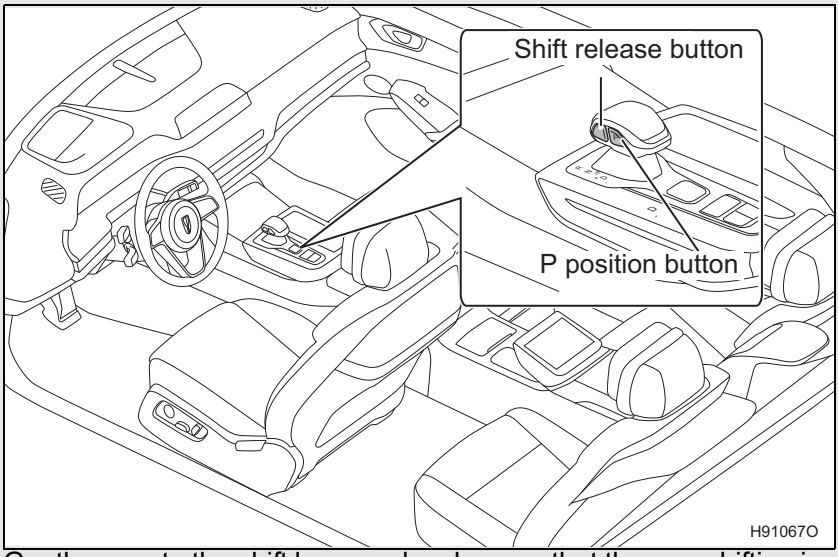
- Do not set the engine switch to "IG-ON" mode for a long time when the engine is not running; otherwise, the 12 V battery and 48 V battery may be low, resulting in irreversible damage to the battery in severe cases.
- When leaving the car, the driver should lock the car and carry the key. Do not leave the key in the compartment to prevent the PEPS from continuous operation, leading to low battery.

During engine start

- Do not run the engine at a high speed when it is cold.
- If the engine is difficult to start or stalls frequently, immediately contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer to check the car.

Gearshift control

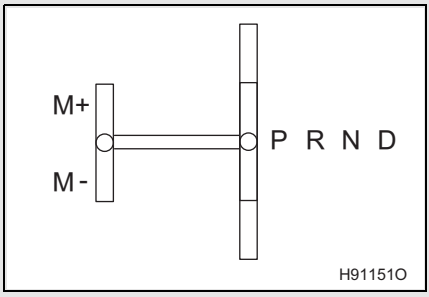
Choose a gear suitable for driving conditions.



Gently operate the shift lever and make sure that the gearshifting is correct.

After each gearshifting, release the shift lever to reset it.

■ Moving the shift lever



Automatic mode: The right track indicates automatic mode, with two travels in forward and backward directions respectively.

Manual mode: The left track indicates manual mode, with a travel in forward and backward directions respectively.

The switch between left and right tracks can be achieved by moving the shift lever left and right, and the manual mode can be entered only when the shift lever is in D position.

Note: If the gears cannot be changed when the shift lever is out of D position in the manual mode, the shift lever should be set to the automatic mode according to the prompt of the instrument cluster.

■ Gear shifting

After the engine is stated, shift gears as follows.

- Switch from P to D: Depress the brake pedal, press the unlock button, and operate the shift lever downward to the first or second travel.
- Switch from P to N: Depress the brake pedal, press the unlock button, and operate the shift lever upward to the first travel.
- Switch from P to R: Depress the brake pedal instead of accelerator pedal, press the unlock button, and operate the shift lever upward to the second travel.
- Switch from N to D: When the car is stationary, operate the shift lever downward to the first or second travel*.
- Switch from N to R: When the car is stationary and the accelerator pedal is not depressed, press the unlock button, and operate the shift lever upward to the first or second travel*.

*: If N gear engagement time is more than 1s, it is required to depress the brake pedal for gear shifting; if N gear engagement time is less than 1s, there is no need to depress the brake pedal for gear shifting.

- Switch from D to N: When the vehicle speed is 3 km/h or less, operate the shift lever upward to the first travel, and when the vehicle speed is more than 3 km/h, press the unlock button and operate the shift lever upward to the first travel.
- Switch from D to R: Depress the brake pedal instead of accelerator pedal until the car is stationary, press the unlock button, and operate the shift lever upward to the second travel.
- Switch from D to M: Operate the shift lever leftwards to the left track.

- Switch from M to D: Operate the shift lever rightwards to the right track.
- Switch from R to N: Operate the shift lever downward to the first travel.
- Switch from R to D: Depress the brake pedal until the car is stationary, and operate the shift lever downward to the second travel.
- Switch from N/D/R to P: Depress the brake pedal until the car is stationary, and press the P position button.

When selecting the gear, ensure that the desired gear is displayed on the instrument cluster.

■ Gear/function

Gear	Function
P	Parking
R	Reverse
N	Neutral
D	Drive
M+	Manual upshifting
M-	Manual downshifting

Gear description

▶ P (Parking) position

P position is used to lock the transmission and prevent the wheels from rotating.

⚠ WARNING

■ **Operating the shift lever for the first time**

This car adopts electronic shift mechanism, which needs to be operated according to the gear information on the cluster instrument and information display screen and the above gear operation description, and cannot be operated by feeling and consciousness to avoid danger.

■ **Be sure to set the shift lever to P position and apply the parking brake**

It is very dangerous to set the shift lever to P position without applying the parking brake. If P position cannot hold the car still, it will move, thus causing an accident.

▶ R (Reverse) position

When the shift lever is in R position, the car can only move backwards.

▶ N (Neutral) position

When the shift lever is in N position, the transmission is not locked. During parking on a gentle slope, you should depress the brake pedal or apply the parking brake; otherwise, the car may slide freely.

▶ D (Drive) position

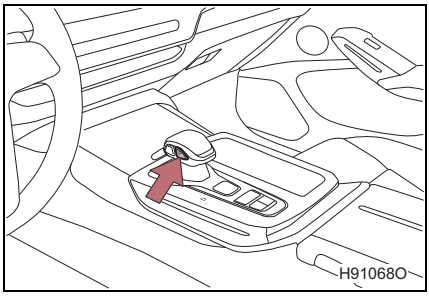
D position is commonly used during driving, which controls the car to move forward.

▶ M (Manual) position

M position indicates manual shift mode. You can shift to M position only from D position. When the shift lever is in D position, you can move the shift lever leftwards to M position. Upshifting or downshifting between M1-M7/M8 can be carried out by moving the shift lever.

P position button

When shifting to P position



You can shift to P position by using the P position button.

When the car is stationary, press the P position button.

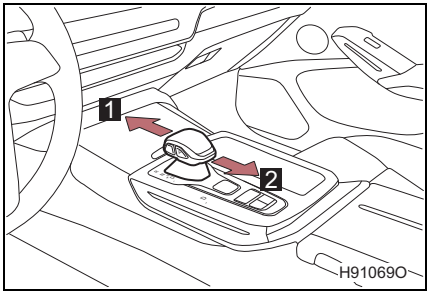
When P gear is engaged, the gear information on the instrument cluster is displayed as P.

If the vehicle speed is higher than 2 km/h, it will be impossible to shift to P position.

When shifting to another position from P position

- Press the unlock button while depressing the brake pedal firmly, and operate the shift lever. If the shift lever is operated without depressing the brake pedal, the gear shifting is prohibited.
- When changing gears, ensure that the gear information on the instrument cluster is displayed as the required gear.
- For vehicles equipped with 8AT transmission, it is not possible to shift out of P position when the engine stalls, and it is necessary to start the engine first before the operation of shifting out of P position can be performed; When the idle stop-start engine is shut down, if it is in the P position and the instrument cluster prompts to start the engine through the start switch, please shift out of P position after starting the engine.

Gear shifting in manual mode



1 Upshift
2 Downshift

The selected gear will be displayed on the instrument cluster multifunction display.

■ **If the current gear is D/R and the vehicle speed is lower than 2 km/h, the car will automatically switch to P position under the following conditions**

- After engine switch is set to "IG-OFF" mode, the car will automatically switch to P position.
- For vehicles equipped with 7DCT transmission, when the driver unfastens the seat belt, releases the brake pedal and accelerator pedal and opens the door, the car will automatically switch to P position.
- For vehicles equipped with 8AT transmission, when the driver releases the brake pedal and accelerator pedal and opens the door, the car will automatically switch to P position.

■ **The car is kept in N position for towing under the following conditions**

For vehicles equipped with 7DCT transmission, if the current gear is N, after the engine switch is set to "IG-OFF" mode, the car will be kept in N position and powered off.

■ **Gear limit (in manual mode)**

To protect the engine and transmission, gears are limited according to the engine speed during manual gear shifting. Therefore, under certain working conditions, upshifting or downshifting may not be achieved even if the shift lever is operated, or automatic upshifting or downshifting may be achieved without operating the shift lever.

■ **Hot mode**

After the transmission enters the hot mode, the oil temperature rise will be slowed down by reducing the number of times of gear shifting. At this time, the engine speed will increase and the shift smoothness may change slightly.

■ **When the car is stopped with the shift lever set to M position**

Once the car is stopped, the transmission will automatically downshift to M1.

⚠ WARNING

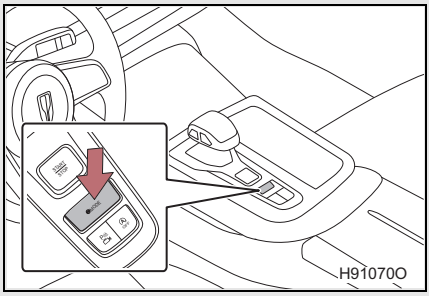
■ **During driving on a slippery road**

Be careful during sudden acceleration and deceleration; otherwise, it may cause car sideslip or wheel slipping.

Driving mode

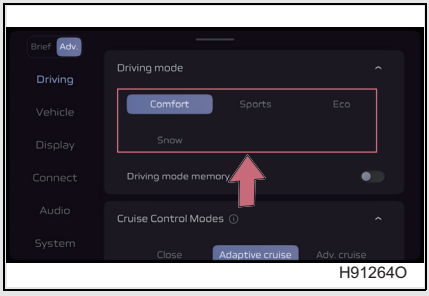
This car is equipped with a driving mode switching system which can provide different driving modes. In different modes, the car has unique driving performance to meet the driving needs of driver.

■ Driving mode selection



Method 1: Driving mode selection button

Press driving mode selection button to switch four driving modes (economic, comfort, sport, snow) circularly.



Method 2: Multimedia display

Four driving modes (economic, comfort, sport, snow) can be selected through the vehicle settings interface of the in-vehicle infotainment system.

Economic mode

In economic mode, the car has good economy and is suitable for driving on common urban pavement.

■ Driving characteristics in economic mode

- The transmission adopts a fuel-saving shifting strategy.
- Power output is gentle.
- For vehicles equipped with air suspension, the height of vehicle will be automatically adjusted to [Standard].
- The drive type for 4WD models is 2WD mode.
- The steering feel is heavy.

Comfort mode

In comfort mode, the car has good comfort and is applicable to common urban pavement.

■ Driving characteristics in comfort mode

- Power system output is smooth.
- The steering feel is light.
- For vehicles equipped with air suspension, the height of vehicle will be automatically adjusted to [standard].
- The transmission gearshift is in the default state.
- The drive type for 4WD models is AWD mode.

Sport mode

In sport mode, the car has good power performance and is applicable to highways or common urban pavement.

■ Driving characteristics in sport mode

- Acceleration is rapid and power output is strong.
- Movement sense is strong during turning.
- For vehicles equipped with air suspension, the height of vehicle will be automatically adjusted to [Lower].
- The transmission delays gearshifting.
- The drive type for 4WD models is AWD mode.

Snow mode

The snow mode is suitable for driving on low-adhesion roads, slippery grass and gravel roads after snow.

■ Driving characteristics in snow mode

- The power output is stable and gentle, reducing vehicle skidding.
- Gearshifting is gentle when vehicle starts off.
- For vehicles equipped with air suspension, the height of vehicle will be automatically adjusted to [Standard].
- The drive type for 4WD models is 4WD mode.
- Steering force is balanced.

■ **Setting conditions of driving mode switching**

- The engine switch is set to "IG-ON" mode.
- This system and related systems have no fault.

■ **Driving mode memory**

- After memory function is turned on, three driving modes (economic, comfort, sport) can be memorized.
- Memorization of the last driving mode can be selected through the driving settings interface of the in-vehicle infotainment system. (See P.177)

■ **Working state of driving mode system**

- When selecting the driving mode, the driver can know the current working condition of the driving mode system through the information displayed on the instrument cluster.

⚠ CAUTION

■ **Do not use snow mode on common urban pavement or highways, such driving mode is only designed for special road conditions. Long-term use on the above roads may damage the drivetrain.**

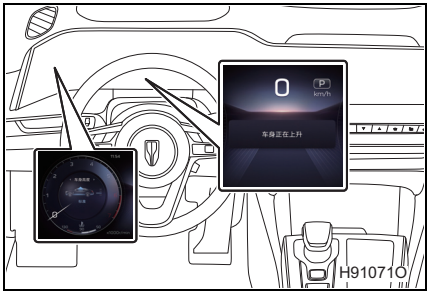
■ **Precautions during switch of driving modes**

- To ensure driving safety, switch the driving modes during parking or driving at a low speed on good roads.
- The driving mode switching system has self-protection function. If operating conditions for the corresponding driving mode are not met, activating the driving mode may damage the car and affect the driving safety. When the driver switches the driving mode, failure to switch to the target mode may be caused by the self-protection function of the system, which is normal.
- If the driving mode system still cannot work normally when operating conditions for the driving mode are met, immediately contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer to check the car.
- Since the driving mode system cannot replace the driver's judgment on driving environment, the driver must always keep control of the car and take full responsibility for the car.

Air suspension*

The vehicle can be maintained at different height levels by adjusting the air suspension, thus making different ground clearances.

Adjustment of air suspension



With the engine started, all doors, trunk lid and engine hood closed, the vehicle height can be adjusted manually through the vehicle settings interface of the in-vehicle infotainment system, and it will also be automatically adjusted according to the driving mode and speed during driving.
The instrument cluster displays "The vehicle body is lifting/lowering" prompt information when adjusting, and this information will disappear after adjustment. The air suspension height level can also be called out by the buttons on steering wheel.

Air suspension height level

■ [Very high] (+45 mm): It is the height set for the escape conditions such as slow-moving over obstacles, wading driving, etc., which is also the maximum body height. In order to protect the relevant parts of air suspension, this height should not be used for a long time.

- Entry method:
  - When the vehicle speed is less than 5 km/h, the vehicle height is set to [very high] through the multimedia display.
- Exit method:
  - When the driving mode changes, the vehicle height is adjusted automatically to the default height of the corresponding driving mode

(the default height of comfort mode, economic mode and snow mode is [standard], and the default height of sport mode is [low]).
- Select other heights through the multimedia display.
- When the vehicle speed is higher than 20 km/h, the vehicle height drops to [high] level.
- The vehicle will be automatically dropped to [standard] level after power off.

■ [High] (+25 mm): It is the height set for the escape conditions such as slow-moving over obstacles, wading driving, etc.

● Entry method:
- When the vehicle speed is less than 60 km/h, the vehicle height is set to [high] through the multimedia display.
- When the vehicle height is at [very high] level, and the vehicle speed is higher than 20 km/h, the vehicle height is automatically adjusted to [high].

● Exit method:
- When the driving mode changes, the vehicle height is adjusted automatically to the default height of the corresponding driving mode (the default height of comfort mode, economic mode and snow mode is [standard], and the default height of sport mode is [low]).
- Select other heights through the multimedia display (Other height entry conditions must be met).
- When the vehicle speed is higher than 80 km/h, the vehicle height drops to [standard] level.
- The vehicle will be automatically dropped to [standard] level after power off.

■ [Standard] (0 mm): Standard settings for comfort mode, economic mode and snow mode.

● Entry method:
- The driving mode is switched to the comfort mode.
- When the vehicle speed is less than 80 km/h, the driving mode is switched to the economic mode or snow mode.
- The driving mode is in the economic mode or snow mode, and the vehicle height is [low]. When the vehicle speed is less than 70 km/h and after a certain period of time, the vehicle height will be automatically raised to [standard] level.
- The driving mode is in the economic mode or snow mode, and the vehicle height is [low]. When the vehicle speed is less than 35 km/h, the vehicle height will be automatically raised to [standard] level.

- When the driving mode is in the comfort mode, the vehicle height is set to [standard] through the multimedia display.
- When the driving mode is non-comfort mode, and the vehicle speed is less than 80 km/h, the vehicle height is set to [standard] through the multimedia display.

● Exit method:

- The driving mode is switched to sport mode.
- Select other heights through the multimedia display (Other height entry conditions must be met).
- When the driving mode is non-comfort mode, and the vehicle speed is more than 100 km/h and after a certain period of time, the vehicle height will be automatically dropped to [low] level.

■ [Low] (-20 mm): Standard setting of sport mode.

● Entry method:

- The driving mode is switched to sport mode.
- When the driving mode is in the sport mode and the height is not [low], the vehicle height is set to [low] through the multimedia display.
- When the driving mode is non-comfort mode, and the vehicle speed is more than 100 km/h and after a certain period of time, the vehicle height will be automatically dropped to [low] level.

● Exit method:

- The driving mode is switched to the comfort mode.
- When the vehicle speed is less than 80 km/h, the driving mode is switched to the economic mode or snow mode.
- Select other heights through the multimedia display (Other height entry conditions must be met).
- The driving mode is in the economic mode or snow mode. When the vehicle speed is less than 70 km/h and after a certain period of time, the vehicle height will be raised to [standard] level.
- When the driving mode is in the economic mode or snow mode, and the vehicle speed is less than 35 km/h, the vehicle height will be immediately raised to [standard] level.

■ **When adjusting suspension**

● If the engine switch is turned off during suspension adjustment, the adjustment will be immediately interrupted. Start the engine again, and the suspension will be automatically adjusted to the previously set target height.

● At [high] or [very high] level, turn off the engine switch and the suspension will be automatically adjusted to the [standard] level.

● If the current speed does not exceed the vehicle speed limit of the selected suspension height, it can be adjusted to the selected height level. For

example, if [very high] is selected, the vehicle speed shall be less than 5 km/h.

WARNING

- **When parking, leave enough space above and below the body. Temperature fluctuations, load changes, vehicle height adjustment, etc., will change the vehicle height.**
- **When getting off the vehicle, the vehicle height will rise slightly, and then automatically return to the set height. Do not put your arm between the wheel brow and the tire. Nobody is allowed under the vehicle to avoid injury.**
- **If the engine is turned off when the vehicle is at [high] or [very high] level, the vehicle height will drop automatically. Leave enough space below the body. Do not put your arm between the wheel brow and the tire. Nobody is allowed under the vehicle to avoid injury.**
- **When the air suspension system fails, the warning lamp on the instrument cluster will come on with corresponding prompt message.**

  Ignoring the warning lamp and prompt message may lead to an accident and personal injury.

  If the air suspension system fails, please contact the authorized FAW Hongqi dealer to check the vehicle immediately.

CAUTION

- **Suspension height level failed to be adjusted normally**

  When a certain driving mode is selected, in order to ensure the safety of occupants, the air suspension system will determine whether to respond to the request according to the current driving conditions. When the system determines that the current working conditions are not suitable for adjustment, the suspension will not be adjusted, which is normal.

Lifting mode

The vehicle has a lifting mode, and if it is required to lift a single wheel or the whole vehicle, it should enter the lifting mode. After the lifting mode is entered, all air suspension adjustment functions will be disabled. When the maintenance is completed, you must exit the lifting mode.

Entering lifting mode

With the engine switch set to "IG-ON" mode, touch the [lifting mode] button on the body height interface of the in-vehicle infotainment system, and the instrument cluster will display the prompt message "Air suspension system is in lifting mode" to enter the lifting mode manually; At the same time, the system can also recognize and enter lifting mode automatically. After the vehicle is lifted (a single wheel or the whole vehicle), it enters lifting mode automatically.

Exiting lifting mode

With the engine switch set to "IG-ON" mode, and the vehicle in the lifting mode, touch the [exit lifting] button on the body height interface of the in-vehicle infotainment system to exit the lifting mode, and the prompt message "Air suspension system is in lifting mode" on the instrument cluster will disappear; When the vehicle speed is more than 5 km/h, the vehicle will automatically exit the lifting mode.

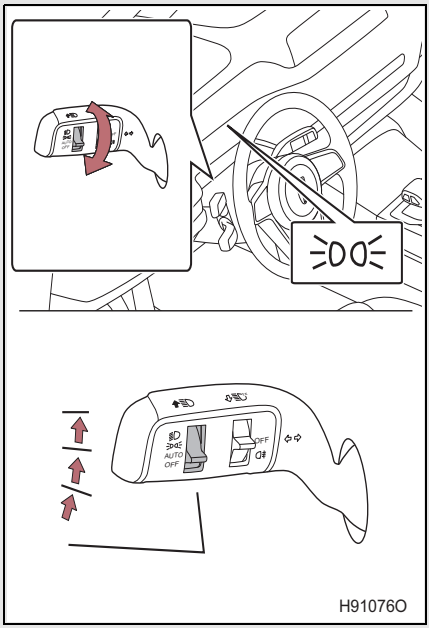
WARNING

- **If repairing the vehicle or getting under the vehicle, it is required to manually enter "lifting mode" to avoid injury.**
- **When using a tow truck to transport the vehicle, it is required to manually enter "lifting mode" before transport, and then turn off the engine.**

CAUTION

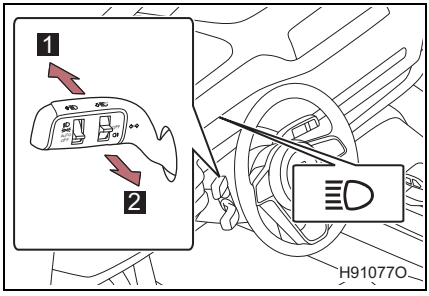
- **It is recommended to use manual mode to enter and exit lifting mode.**

Headlamp switch



	The headlamp (low beam), position lamp, license plate lamp and instrument panel backlight come on.
	The daytime running lamp, rear position lamp, license plate lamp and instrument panel backlight come on.
AUTO	The headlamp (low beam), position lamp, license plate lamp and instrument panel backlight come on and go out automatically.
OFF	The daytime running lamp comes on.

Turning on high beam



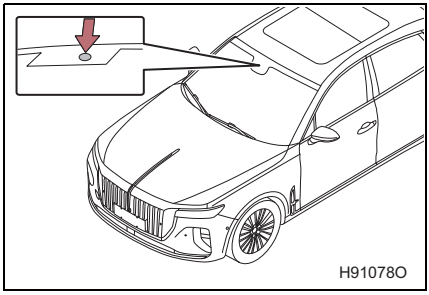
1 When the headlamp (low beam) is turned on, push the lighting control lever forward to turn on the high beam; pull the lever back to its original position to turn off the high beam.

2 Pull the lighting control lever backward to turn on the high beam; release the lighting control lever to turn off the high beam.

■ Daytime running lamp system

During daytime driving, in order to make it easier for other drivers to see your car, if the engine switch is set to "IG-ON" mode and the headlamps are off, the daytime running lamps will be turned on automatically.

■ Rain/light sensor



If an object is placed on the sensor or adherent matter on the windshield obscures the sensor, the sensor may work abnormally. The above situations will affect the sensor's detection on ambient light intensity, which may prevent the automatic headlamp and automatic wiper from working properly.

■ Automatic headlamp leveling system

The automatic headlamp leveling system can automatically adjust the headlamp beam height according to the number of occupants, the car load and the road environment, so as to ensure that the headlamps can provide a good lighting angle for the driver.

Getting-off lighting system

When the engine switch is set to "IG-ON" mode and the low beams are on, if a door is opened after the engine switch is set to "IG-OFF" mode, the low beams will stay on for a period of time and then go out automatically. The ON/OFF and lighting time of getting-off lighting can be set through the vehicle settings interface of the in-vehicle infotainment system. (See P.179)

Boarding lighting system

Unlock the car when the lamplight switch is in the automatic headlamp position. If the automatic headlamp on condition is met at this time, the lamp will be on for a period of time and then go out automatically. The turn-on/off and running time of boarding lighting can be set through the vehicle settings interface of the in-vehicle infotainment system. (See P.179)

Corner lamp

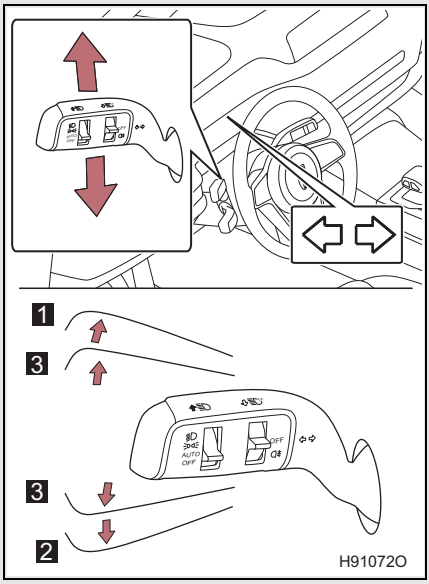
When the car runs at a low speed with the headlamps turned on, if the driver operates the turn signal lamp switch or steering wheel for turning, the corner lamp on the corresponding side will automatically come on to assist the driver in driving. When the R gear is engaged, if the driver operates the turn signal lamp switch or steering wheel for turning, the corner lamps on both sides of the car will come on at the same time to improve the lighting effect of surrounding area during reversing.

Lamp fogging

In the event of rain or car wash, the interior of headlights, taillights and turn signal lamps may temporarily mist with water. This is caused by cold condensation of water vapor on the inner surface of the lens when the temperature inside the lamp is significantly higher than the ambient temperature or when the ambient humidity is high (similar to fogging of window glass), and it will frost when the temperature is too low. This is a normal physical phenomenon that does not affect the function or life of the lamps.

When fog appears on the lamps, park the vehicle in a dry, ventilated place with suitable temperature, and the fog or frost will gradually reduce until it disappears; When the vehicle is driving or there is sunlight, the fog will dissipate faster. However, if you see a large amount of water or a large number of water droplets inside the lamp, please contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer for inspection of the car.

Turn signal lamp control lever



1 Right turn

2 Left turn

3 Comfort flashing

When the control lever is set to non-self-locking position once, the left/right turn signal lamp will flash three times; when the control lever is set to non-self-locking position continuously, the left/right turn signal lamp will flash continuously until the control lever is released.

■ **Operating conditions of turn signal lamps**

The engine switch is set to "IG-ON" mode.

■ **Control of turn signal lamp and hazard warning lamp**

When the turn signal lamp is on, if the hazard warning lamp switch is pressed, the left and right turn signal lamps will flash at the same time; if the hazard warning lamp switch is pressed again, the turn signal lamp will return to the working state.

When the hazard warning lamp is on and the engine switch is set to "IG-ON" mode, if the turn signal lamp is turned on, the turn signal lamp will work, and the hazard warning lamp will stop working; if the turn signal lamp is turned off, the hazard warning lamp will return to the working state.

ADB intelligent high beam control

The ADB can automatically control the corresponding LED particles in the high beam to turn it on or off according to the surrounding road conditions when the vehicle speed is greater than 50 km/h, thus providing the best view and ensuring the driving safety.

IHC indicator lamp

- When the ADB system working indicator lamp (blue) on the instrument cluster multifunction display comes on, it indicates that the intelligent high beam control is turned on and working.
- When the ADB system working indicator lamp (white) on the instrument cluster multifunction display comes on, it indicates that IHC is on but does not meet the operating conditions and is standby.

Enabling/disabling IHC

The IHC can be enabled and disabled through the vehicle settings interface of the in-vehicle infotainment system. (See P.179)

Operating conditions of IHC

Operating conditions of IHC

- Operating preconditions of IHC:

  When all of the following conditions are met, IHC can work normally.
  - The Intelligent high beam lamp is set to ON in the in-vehicle infotainment system.
  - The engine switch is set to "IG-ON" mode.
  - Headlamp switch is set to AUTO position.
  - The high beam switch handle is in the "high beam off" position.
  - Rain/light sensor has no fault.
  - ADB system has no fault.
- Standby conditions of IHC

  When any of the following conditions is met, the system enters the standby state and the high beam is completely turned off.
  - The vehicle speed is less than 30 km/h.
  - There are too many obstacles ahead, and ADB has failed to adjust adaptively.

- The low beam is turned off (automatically turned off at AUTO position, not manually turned off).
- The system recognizes that the environment is foggy.
- The area in front of the car is not dark.

● Operating conditions of IHC:

When all the following conditions are met, the system enters the working state, the high beam is turned on, and the lighting area is automatically adjusted.

- The vehicle speed is higher than 50 km/h.
- The low beam is turned on (automatically turned on at AUTO position, not manually turned on).
- The system does not recognize that the environment is foggy.
- The area in front of the car is dark.
- There is no vehicle ahead with tail lamps and oncoming headlamps on.
- There is no traffic sign on the road ahead.

■ Under the following circumstances, the system may not accurately detect the ambient brightness level, which may prevent the IHC from working properly. In this case, switch the high beam and the low beam manually.

- ● The rain/light sensor or ADAS camera is faulty.
- ● The front windshield is blurred by moisture, ice, dirt, etc.
- ● The front windshield is broken or damaged.
- ● The front view is unclear due to fog, heavy rain, snow and other reasons.
- ● The camera is deformed or dirty.
- ● The camera temperature is extremely high.
- ● The ambient brightness is equivalent to the brightness of headlamps, tail lamps or fog lamps.
- ● The headlamps or tail lamps of vehicle ahead are turned off, dirty, discolored or incorrectly aimed, or one of them is turned on.
- ● The car runs through an area with intermittent changes in brightness.
- ● The car runs on uphill and downhill roads, bumpy roads or uneven roads (e.g. stone-paved roads, and gravel roads) frequently or repeatedly.
- ● The car makes turns or runs on winding roads frequently or repeatedly.
- ● There are highly reflective objects in front of the car, such as signs or mirrors.
- ● The back of vehicle ahead is highly reflective, such as a container on the truck.
- ● The headlamps of the car are damaged, dirty or incorrectly aimed.

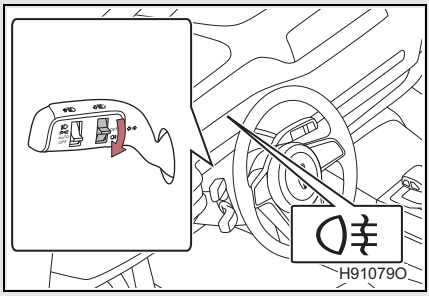
- The headlamps of opposite vehicle are turned off and its fog lamps are turned on.
- The car is inclined due to flat tire, towing a trailer, etc.
- The high beam and low beam are switched repeatedly in an abnormal way.
- There is a lamp similar to the headlamps or tail lamps in front of the car.
- Wet roads, snow roads, ice roads, etc. are reflective.

⚠ WARNING

■ **Do not rely on the automatic high beam too much. Be sure to drive safely, observe the surrounding environment, and turn on or off the high beam manually if necessary.**

Fog lamp switch

The fog lamps improve visibility under unfavorable driving conditions, such as rainy days or fogging.



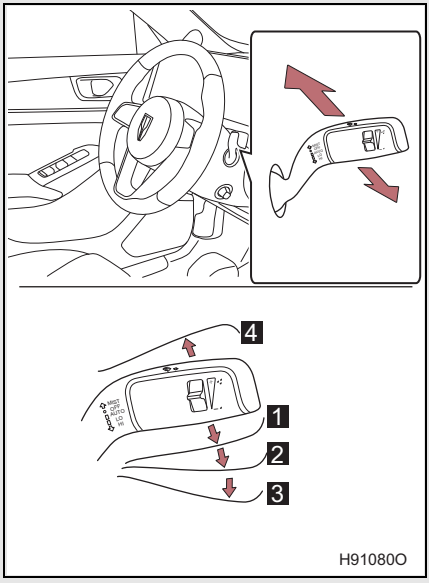
Toggle the fog lamp switch down to turn on the rear fog lamp, toggle the switch again to turn off the rear fog lamp

■ Operating conditions of fog lamps

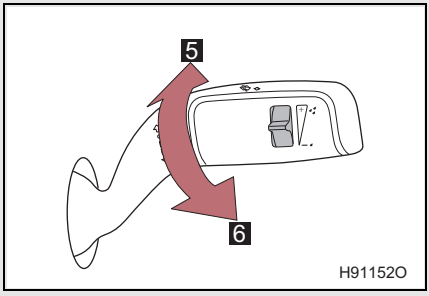
The engine switch is set to "IG-ON" mode and the headlamps are turned on.

Front windshield wiper & washer

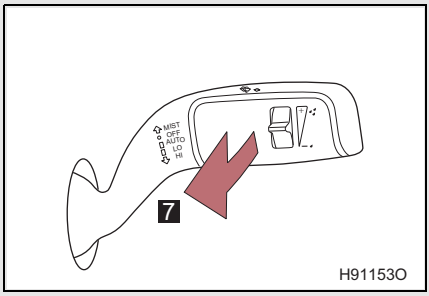
When the wiper control lever is in AUTO position, the wiper will automatically work if the rain/light sensor detects rain. The system automatically adjusts the wiper speed according to the rainfall and vehicle speed.



1. AUTO position - The wiper speed is automatically adjusted according to the rainfall.
2. LO position - The wiper works at a low speed.
3. HI position - The wiper works at a high speed.
4. MIST position - The wiper works at a low speed for 1 cycle.
   When the engine hood is open, the wiper will not work even if the control lever is pulled.



5. The sensitivity on rainfall increases.
6. The sensitivity on rainfall decreases.

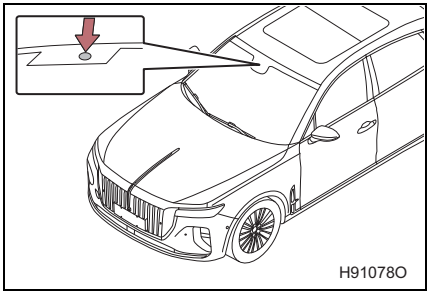


7 Cleaning/wiping operation.
Pull back the wiper control lever to wash the front windshield.

■ **Operating conditions of front windshield wiper & washer**

The engine switch is set to "IG-ON" mode and the engine hood is closed.

■ **Rain/light sensor**



The rain/light sensor determines the amount of rain.

■ **If the windshield washer fluid cannot be sprayed out**

Check whether there is washer fluid in the windshield washer fluid reservoir.

Check that the washer nozzle is not blocked.

■ **If the front windshield wiper blade needs to be replaced**

- Set the wiper to the service position through the vehicle settings interface of the in-vehicle infotainment system. (See P.180)
- Turn off the engine switch and switch the wiper control lever to MIST position within 10 s to set the wiper to the service position.
- When the wiper is in the service position, set the engine switch to "IG-ON" mode, and move the wiper control lever to any position or disable the wiper service position through the vehicle settings interface of the in-vehicle infotainment system, so as to disable the service position.

⚠ WARNING

■ **Warnings for using front windshield wiper in AUTO mode**

In AUTO mode, the front windshield wiper may work unexpectedly if the sensor is touched, the interior rearview mirror is pulled with force or the front windshield is strongly vibrated (for example, the front windshield is knocked with force). Be careful that your fingers or anything else are not pinched by the front windshield wiper.

■ **Precautions for use of washer fluid**

In cold weather, do not use the washer fluid before the front windshield is warmed. The washer fluid may freeze on the front windshield, resulting in reduced visibility. This may cause an accident that could result in serious injury or even death.

■ **Only the windshield washer fluid can be placed in the washer fluid reservoir**

It is dangerous to use engine coolant as washer fluid. If it is sprayed onto the windshield, it will stain the windshield, which could obstruct your view and may cause an accident.

■ **In freezing weather, always use windshield washer fluid mixed with antifreeze**

It is very dangerous to use windshield washer fluid without antifreeze in freezing weather, because it may freeze on the windshield, obstructing your view and thus causing an accident. In addition, before spraying washer fluid, make sure to fully heat the windshield with the defroster.

■ **The wiper blade should be replaced in time**

The use of worn or dirty wiper blade will greatly reduce the clarity of the front view and affect the driving safety. Therefore, it is necessary to replace the damaged or worn and inoperative wiper blade in time.

⚠ CAUTION

■ **When the front windshield is dry**

Do not use the wiper; otherwise, the wiper blade may be damaged.

■ **When the washer fluid cannot be sprayed out of the nozzle**

If the wiper control lever is pulled backward and held for a long time, it may cause damage to the washer fluid pump.

■ **When the nozzle is blocked**

Do not use needles or other objects to remove foreign matters without permission; otherwise, the nozzle will be damaged.

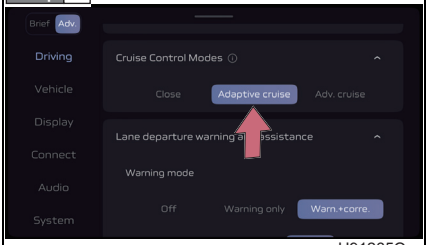
Adaptive cruise control (ACC)

ACC can comprehensively control the vehicle speed and the distance to the target vehicle within the speed range of 0~140 km/h, thus reducing the burden on the driver and increasing driving comfort. In addition, the system can automatically switch between cruise control and following cruise control based on the presence of a moving vehicle ahead. Because the actual driving environment is complex, in some cases, the driver can also intervene with the car at any time as needed, and actively control the distance between the car and the target vehicle. If necessary, ACC will prompt the driver by audible and visual alarms.

If ACC detects that the distance to the vehicle ahead is less than the set following distance, this car automatically decelerates; if the vehicle ahead accelerates or leaves the lane, the car can accelerate to the set cruising speed.

ACC setting

Step 1

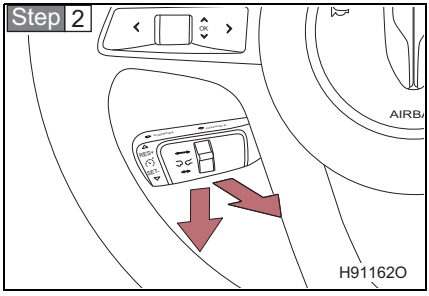


H91265O

The cruise function can be turned on through the vehicle settings interface of the in-vehicle infotainment system and set to ACC.

The cruise mode can only be set when the system is inactivated.

Step 2

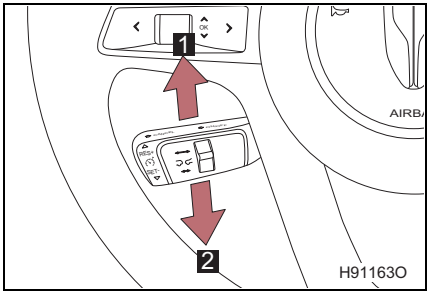


H91162O

When ACC white indicator lamp on the instrument cluster comes on, accelerate or decelerate to the desired vehicle speed, move the cruise control lever down to the "SET-" position or pull the cruise control lever backwards to the "ON/OFF" position, then release the lever. The ACC green indicator lamp comes on,

and the current vehicle speed can be set as the cruising speed.

■ Adjusting vehicle speed

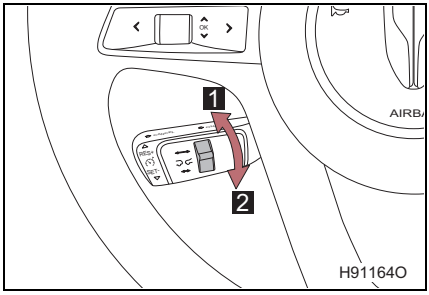


1 Increasing vehicle speed
Move: Each time it is moved, the vehicle speed increases by 5 km/h;
Move and hold: After the system confirms that the moving and holding is valid, the vehicle speed will increase by 1 km/h continuously.

2 Reducing vehicle speed
Move: Each time it is moved, the vehicle speed decreases by 5 km/h;
Move and hold: After the system confirms that the moving and holding is valid, the vehicle speed will decrease by 1 km/h continuously.

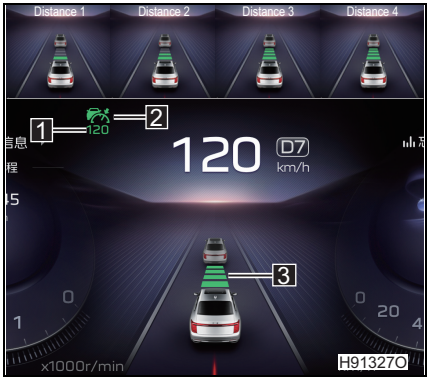
Note: If the currently set vehicle speed is not a multiple of 5 when the lever is moved, it will automatically change to a multiple of 5 at first during adjustment.

■ Setting following distance



1 Increasing following distance

2 Decreasing following distance
The system provides four distance modes. Each time the control lever is moved, one mode is switched.



1 Set cruising speed

2 ACC indicator lamp

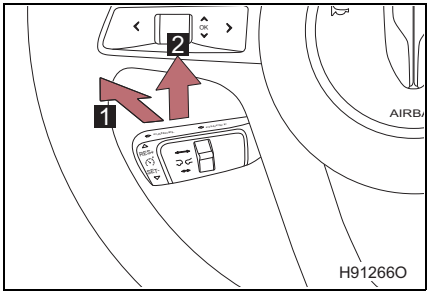
White: The system is enabled, the set conditions are met, and cruise control setting can be carried out.

Green: The system is working, and the cruise control mode is entered.

3 Set following distance

The default following distance is "Distance 4".

Canceling and resetting ACC



1 Cancel

Depress the brake pedal or push the cruise control lever forward to the "CANCEL" position and then release it to cancel the cruise control.

2 Reset

To reset the cruise control and return to the set speed, move the control lever upward to the "RES+" position and then release it.

■ **Noise during automatic deceleration by ACC**

During automatic deceleration by ACC, noise may occur, which is normal.

■ **Following distance**

The following distance is "Distance 4" by default.

■ **Setting conditions of cruise control**

- The ESC is enabled.
- All doors and the engine hood are closed.
- The driver has fastened the seat belt.
- The D gear is engaged.
- The driver does not depress the brake pedal.
- The ADAS cameras are not blocked and function properly.

- ACC/ESC/AEB/TCS/ABS/EMS has no fault.
- AEB/APA is not activated.
- The driving mode is not in snow mode.

Conditions of canceling cruise control

- Move the cruise control lever to the "CANCEL" position.
- Depress the brake pedal or apply the EPB.
- Open any door or the engine hood.
- The driver unfastens the seat belt.
- Depress the accelerator pedal for more than 1 min.
- Set the shift lever to a position other than D.
- ABS/TCS/ESC is activated.
- AEB/APA is activated.
- The driving mode switches to snow mode.
- The relevant function of the system fails.

ACC fault

In the event of an alarm due to ACC fault, please contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer to inspect the car.

After turning off the engine switch

After turning off the engine switch, the set cruising speed or following distance will be deleted.

Adjusting or calibrating ACC

Adjust or calibrate the ACC under the following conditions, otherwise the ACC may not work properly:

- The front windshield is damaged or replaced.
- The ADAS camera unit or forward millimeter wave radar mounting bracket is removed and then refitted.
- The four wheels are aligned.
- The front bumper is hit or deformed.

Contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.

⚠ WARNING

■ **To ensure driving safety, it is recommended that the set cruising speed should not exceed 140 km/h. It is very dangerous to use the cruise control during high-speed driving, so the driver is recommended to drive actively.**

■ **Prevent accidental activation of ACC**

When this function is not used, deactivate the cruise control.

■ **Situations where ACC should not be used**

To avoid the possibility of losing control of the car and causing serious injury or death, do not use the ACC under any of the following conditions:

- Traffic jams.
- Complicated road conditions.
- Sharp turns.
- Winding roads.
- Slippery roads (such as roads covered with rain, ice or snow).
- Steep slopes.
- There is a stationary obstacle in front of the car.
- Weather such as snow, rain, ice and dense fog.
- Poor road lighting at night.

■ **The driver is the most important controller of the car, whose control on the car takes precedence over the ACC. Even if the car is in ACC mode, when the driver depresses the accelerator pedal or brake pedal, the car will be under the control of the driver. The driver must always keep control of the car and take full responsibility for the car.**

■ **ACC is only a driver assistance system. If necessary, the driver should immediately deactivate the ACC and drive by himself/herself. When using ACC, please comply with relevant local laws and regulations, and adapt to the traffic, road and weather conditions at that time.**

⚠ WARNING

- **The front windshield shall not be modified or covered by any auxiliary equipment. Otherwise, the ACC may not work properly.**
- **When leaving the driver seat for a long time, be sure to disable the ACC to avoid accidents caused by misoperation.**
- **When this car follows the target vehicle for driving, the ACC mainly controls the following distance, and the actual speed of this car may be lower than the set cruising speed.**
- **If the distance from the vehicle ahead is too close (for example, due to the sudden emergency braking of the vehicle ahead) in ACC mode, the system will prompt the driver by audible and visual alarms through the instrument cluster, and the driver should pay attention to the distance and take over the car at this time.**
- **When the driver depresses the accelerator pedal for active acceleration, the cruising speed icon displayed on the instrument cluster multifunction display will flash, which is normal.**
- **When this car enters or exits a curve or changes the lane, or when the vehicle ahead is stationary, the ACC may lose the target vehicle or misidentify the target vehicle.**
- **The ACC cannot detect other sides than tail of the car, children, pedestrians, animals or other objects or apply the brake for them. At this time, the driver must drive carefully.**
- **The ACC has limited braking capacity. It may have no time to slow down to avoid a collision with the vehicle ahead when the vehicle ahead suddenly decelerates, stops or enters your lane. If a danger is felt, please actively depress the brake pedal for braking.**

⚠ WARNING

- **During driving, the driver must remain fully attentive and always be prepared to take action and apply brake.**
- **The driver should adjust the following distance and reasonably set the ACC according to the traffic ahead and the current weather conditions (such as rain and snow). The driver needs to ensure that the car can be decelerated to a stop within their field of view at all times.**
- **The ACC can only identify motor vehicles (such as cars and trucks) with legal license plates and capable of driving on highways.**
  If vehicles head have characteristics of irregular shape, modification, painted surface, etc., the recognition effect cannot be guaranteed. The recognition of pedestrians and narrow vehicles (such as bicycles and motorcycles) cannot be guaranteed too. At this time, the driver should take over the car at any time according to the actual situation.
- **The ACC may not accurately recognize large trailers. At this time, the driver should take over the car at any time according to the actual situation.**
- **The ACC cannot accurately determine the passing width of front lane. Therefore, if the driver feels that the front lane is too narrow for normal passage, they immediately deactivate the ACC through braking intervention and control the car.**
- **Do not use the ACC on steep slopes. The ACC may not detect vehicles in the same lane, so the driver usually needs to control the acceleration and braking of the car. If the brake is applied, the ACC will be deactivated.**
- **When a vehicle traveling in the same direction in the same lane is detected, a symbol of vehicle ahead will be displayed on the instrument cluster. If this symbol indication is inconsistent with the actual situation observed by the driver, the driver is responsible for taking over the car and driving according to the actual situation.**

⚠ WARNING

- **If a foot is placed on the accelerator pedal, the ACC may not automatically apply the brake, resulting in a collision with the vehicle ahead, so the driver should keep focused.**
- **The front bumper must not be painted, modified or covered by any auxiliary equipment. Otherwise, the performance of forward millimeter wave radar sensors may degrade or fail!**
- **Severe extreme weather conditions such as heavy snow, rain, ice and fog may lead to the performance degradation or failure of forward millimeter wave radar sensors. In such weather, the driver must disable the ACC.**
- **If the forward millimeter wave radar sensors are shifted due to collision, the ACC may degrade or fail. The driver shall calibrate the forward millimeter wave radar sensors in time.**
- **Do not use forward millimeter wave radar sensors that are incorrectly calibrated.**
- **When vehicles in the adjacent lane move in front of the car, if they do not enter the monitoring area, they could not be detected, thus resulting in a response lag of ACC. The driver should pay close attention to movements of vehicles in the adjacent lane and take the initiative to intervene when necessary.**
- **If the vehicle ahead brakes suddenly (for emergency stop), the ACC may be unable to respond or respond too slowly to the vehicle ahead, thus resulting in a risk of delayed braking. In this case, the driver may not receive a takeover request. The driver should keep focused, and take the initiative to intervene when necessary.**
- **When this car follows the target vehicle and stops in ACC mode, it may start suddenly due to the blocked target vehicle, pedestrians passing by, etc. The driver should keep focused, and take the initiative to intervene when necessary.**

CAUTION

- **The ACC will control this car at the set following distance from the target vehicle. If the target vehicle decelerates or stops, the ACC will control this car to decelerate or stop automatically.**
- **When the target vehicle restarts or leaves the lane after stopping for no more than 3 s, this car will start automatically under the control of ACC.**
- **When the target vehicle restarts or leaves the lane after stopping for more than 3 s but no more than 3 min, a message of resuming cruise control will be shown on the instrument cluster multi-function display of this car, and the driver can resume the ACC by gently depressing the accelerator pedal or moving the cruise control lever to the "RES+" position, thus realizing automatic starting. At this time, the driver should pay attention to the front traffic conditions, so as to determine whether the car can be safely started.**
- **When this car stops for more than 3 min, the ACC will be automatically deactivated.**
- **The ACC cannot keep the car braked for a long time. Do not leave the car when the ACC keeps the car stopped. Before leaving the car, be sure to engage the P gear.**
- **During driving through a curve with ACC, pay attention to the followings:**
  - In sharp curves, the ACC may be deactivated or limit the speed.
  - On curves, the ACC may respond to vehicles in another lane, have no time to respond to vehicles in the same lane, make the car collide with the front, or lose control of the car; especially during driving on ramps, the ACC may lose its target due to large curve, thus causing acceleration. On curves, the driver must take extra care and always be ready for braking when necessary. During driving on curves, choose a proper speed.

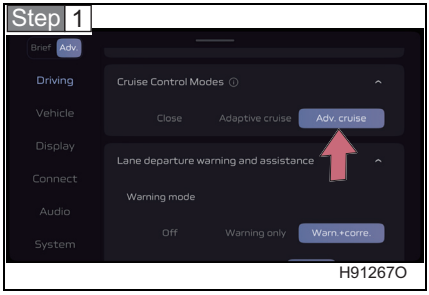
CAUTION

- **When this car passes through an intersection with traffic lights while following the vehicle ahead, the driver should pay attention to the change of traffic lights and actively intervene with the car when necessary to avoid violating traffic rules.**
- **When this car is in dense fog, rain, snow and other weather conditions, or when there are frost and dirt marks in the inspection window area of ADAS cameras, or when this car is running in the direction of the sun (or strong light source), a message reading "Since the ADAS camera is blocked, please clean the windshield" may be displayed on the instrument cluster due to "limited field of view" of camera, and the ACC cannot work at this time.**

Based on the ACC, SACC not only perform cruise and following functions, but also identify the lane markings through the ADAS camera. It can control the vehicle to drive along the center line of the lane, enhancing both driving comfort and safety.

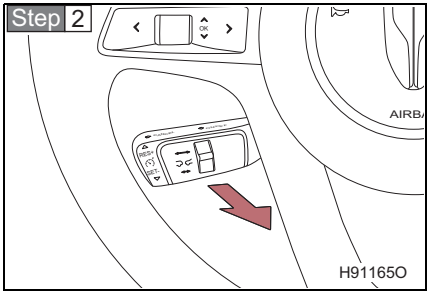
If SACC detects that the distance to the vehicle ahead is less than the set following distance, this car automatically decelerates; if the vehicle ahead accelerates or leaves the lane, the car can accelerate to the set cruising speed.

SACC setting



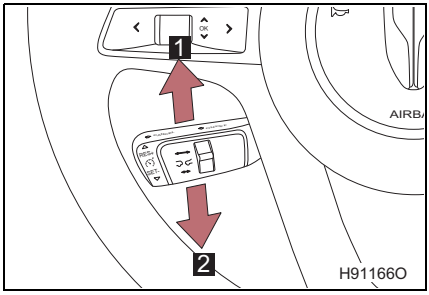
The cruise function can be turned on through the vehicle settings interface of the in-vehicle infotainment system and set to SACC.

The cruise mode can only be set when the system is inactivated.



When SACC white indicator lamp on the instrument cluster comes on, accelerate or decelerate to the desired vehicle speed, continuously pull the cruise control lever backwards twice to the "ON/OFF" position, and then release the lever, SACC green indicator lamp comes on, and the current vehicle speed can be set as the cruising speed.

■ Adjusting vehicle speed

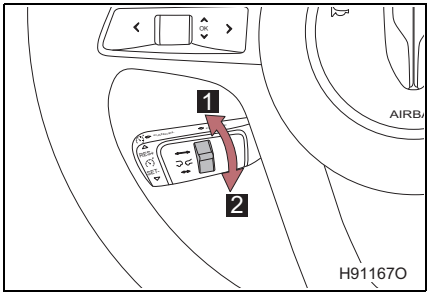


1 Increasing vehicle speed
Move: Each time it is moved, the vehicle speed increases by 5 km/h;
Move and hold: After the system confirms that the moving and holding is valid, the vehicle speed will increase by 1 km/h continuously.

2 Reducing vehicle speed
Move: Each time it is moved, the vehicle speed decreases by 5 km/h;
Move and hold: After the system confirms that the moving and holding is valid, the vehicle speed will decrease by 1 km/h continuously.

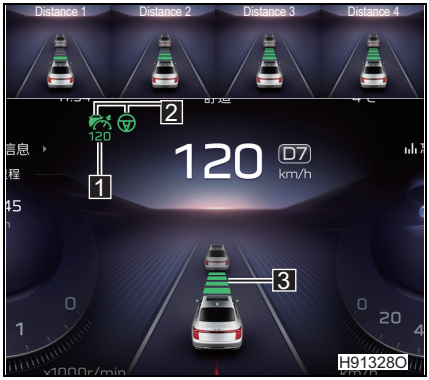
Note: If the currently set vehicle speed is not a multiple of 5 when the lever is moved, it will automatically change to a multiple of 5 at first during adjustment.

■ Setting following distance



1 Increasing following distance

2 Decreasing following distance
The system provides four distance modes. Each time the control lever is moved, one mode is switched.



1 Set cruising speed

2 SACC indicator lamp

(Off) (off): System is in standby and does not meet the setting conditions.

(Off) (white): System turns on and ACC setting can be performed.

(White) (white): System turns on and SACC setting can be performed.

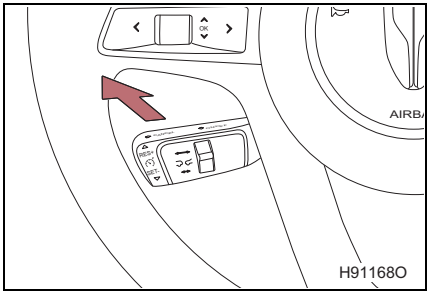
(Off) (green): System operates and enters ACC mode.

(Green) (green): System operates and enters SACC mode.

3 Set following distance

The default following distance is "Distance 4".

Canceling SACC



Depress the brake pedal or push the cruise control lever forward to the "CANCEL" position and then release it to cancel the cruise control.

Switching between SACC and ACC

When ACC is working and SACC setting conditions are met, continuously pull the cruise control lever backwards twice to the "ON/OFF" position to switch to SACC mode.

When SACC is working, if driver operates the steering wheel or turn signal lamp switch, it will automatically switch to ACC mode.

When SACC is working, if camera failed to recognize the lane markings ahead, it will automatically switch to ACC mode.

When SACC is working, if a sharp curve suddenly appears, it will automatically switch to ACC mode.

When SACC is working, if camera detects that the lane markings are too wide or too narrow, it will automatically switch to ACC mode.

■ Noise during automatic deceleration by SACC

When SACC performs automatic deceleration, noise may be produced, which is normal.

■ Following distance

The following distance is "Distance 4" by default.

■ Setting conditions of SACC

- The cruise mode is set to SACC in the in-vehicle infotainment system.
- All doors and the engine hood are closed.
- The driver has fastened the seat belt.
- The D gear is engaged.
- The brake pedal is not depressed.
- The ADAS cameras are not blocked and function properly.
- The lane markings are clear and meet the requirements of national standards.
- SACC/ESC/AEB/TCS/ABS/EPS/EMS has no fault.
- AEB/APA is not activated.
- The driving mode is not in snow mode.

■ Conditions of suspending SACC

- When overtaking, depress the accelerator pedal deeply and briefly for no more than 1 min and resume SACC after releasing the accelerator pedal.

■ Conditions of canceling SACC

- Operate the cruise control lever to the "CANCEL" position.
- Depress the brake pedal or apply the EPB.
- Open any door or the engine hood.
- The driver unfastens the seat belt.
- The system judges that both hands are off the steering wheel for a certain period of time.
- Depress the accelerator pedal for more than 1 min.
- Set the shift lever to a position other than D.
- ABS/TCS/ESC is activated.
- AEB/APA is activated.
- The driving mode switches to snow mode.
- The relevant function of the system fails.

■ **SACC fault**

In the event of an alarm due to SACC fault, please contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer to inspect the car.

■ **After turning off the engine switch**

After turning off the engine switch, the set cruising speed or following distance will be deleted.

■ **Adjusting or calibrating SACC**

Adjust or calibrate the SACC under the following conditions, otherwise the SACC may not work properly:

- The front windshield is damaged or replaced.
- The ADAS camera unit or forward millimeter wave radar mounting bracket is removed and then refitted.
- The four wheels are aligned.
- The front bumper is hit or deformed.

Contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.

⚠ WARNING

■ **Prevent accidental activation of SACC**

When this function is not used, deactivate the cruise control.

■ **Situations where SACC should not be used**

To avoid the possibility of losing control of the car and causing serious injury or death, do not use the SACC under any of the following conditions:

- Traffic jams.
- Complicated road conditions.
- Sharp turns.
- Winding roads.
- Slippery roads (such as roads covered with rain, ice or snow).
- Steep slopes.
- There is a stationary obstacle in front of the car.
- Weather such as snow, rain, ice and dense fog.
- Poor road lighting at night.
- The lane markings are not clear.

⚠ WARNING

- **The driver is the most important controller of the car, whose control on the car takes precedence over the SACC. Even if the car is in SACC mode, when the driver depresses the accelerator pedal, brake pedal or operates the steering wheel, the car will be under the control of the driver. The driver must always keep control of the car and take full responsibility for the car.**
- **When driving on a repaired asphalt road or a road with strong light reflection, the vehicle may deviate from the driving lane. The driver should keep focused, and take the initiative to intervene when necessary.**
- **When SACC is working, the driver should hold the steering wheel firmly with both hands to ensure driving safety.**
- **SACC is only a driver assistance system. If necessary, the driver should immediately deactivate the SACC and drive by himself/herself. When using SACC, please comply with relevant local laws and regulations, and adapt to the traffic, road and weather conditions at that time.**
- **The front windshield shall not be modified or covered by any auxiliary equipment. Otherwise, the SACC may not work properly.**
- **When leaving the driver seat for a long time, be sure to disable the SACC to avoid accidents caused by misoperation.**
- **When this car follows the target vehicle for driving, the SACC mainly controls the following distance, and the actual speed of this car may be lower than the set cruising speed.**
- **If the distance from the vehicle ahead is too close (for example, due to the sudden emergency braking of the vehicle ahead) in SACC mode, the system will prompt the driver by audible and visual alarms through the instrument cluster, and the driver should pay attention to the distance and take over the car at this time.**
- **When the driver takes over steering wheel for a short time or the lane markings disappear for a short time, the steering assist working indicator lamp on the instrument cluster multi-function display will flash, which is normal.**

⚠ WARNING

- **When the driver depresses the accelerator pedal for active acceleration, the cruising speed icon displayed on the instrument cluster multifunction display will flash, which is normal.**
- **When this car enters or exits a curve or changes the lane, or when the vehicle ahead is stationary, the SACC may lose the target vehicle or misidentify the target vehicle.**
- **The SACC cannot detect other sides than tail of the car, children, pedestrians, animals or other objects or apply the brake for them. At this time, the driver must drive carefully.**
- **The SACC has limited braking capacity. It may have no time to slow down to avoid a collision with the vehicle ahead when the vehicle ahead suddenly decelerates, stops or enters your lane. If a danger is felt, please actively depress the brake pedal for braking.**
- **During driving, the driver must remain fully attentive and always be prepared to take action and apply brake.**
- **The driver should adjust the following distance and reasonably set the SACC according to the traffic ahead and the current weather conditions (such as rain and snow). The driver needs to ensure that the car can be decelerated to a stop within their field of view at all times.**
- **The SACC can only recognize motor vehicles (such as cars and trucks) with legal license plates and be capable of driving on highways. If vehicles head have characteristics of irregular shape, modification, painted surface, etc., the recognition effect cannot be guaranteed. The recognition of pedestrians and narrow vehicles (such as bicycles and motorcycles) cannot be guaranteed too. At this time, the driver should take over the car at any time according to the actual situation.**
- **The SACC may not accurately recognize large trailers. At this time, the driver should take over the car at any time according to the actual situation.**
- **The SACC cannot accurately determine the passing width of front lane. Therefore, if the driver feels that the front lane is too narrow for normal passage, they immediately deactivate the SACC through braking intervention and control the car.**
- **Do not use the SACC on steep slopes. The SACC may not detect vehicles in the same lane, so the driver usually needs to control the acceleration and braking of the car. If the brake is applied, the SACC will be deactivated.**

⚠ WARNING

- **When a vehicle traveling in the same direction in the same lane is detected, a symbol of vehicle ahead will be displayed on the instrument cluster. If this symbol indication is inconsistent with the actual situation observed by the driver, the driver is responsible for taking over the car and driving according to the actual situation.**
- **If a foot is placed on the accelerator pedal, the SACC may not automatically apply the brake, resulting in a collision with the vehicle ahead, so the driver should keep focused.**
- **The front bumper must not be painted, modified or covered by any auxiliary equipment. Otherwise, the performance of forward millimeter wave radar sensors may degrade or fail!**
- **Severe extreme weather conditions such as heavy snow, rain, ice and fog may lead to the performance degradation or failure of forward millimeter wave radar sensors. In such weather, the driver must disable the SACC.**
- **If the forward millimeter wave radar sensors are shifted due to collision, the SACC may degrade or fail. The driver shall calibrate the forward millimeter wave radar sensors in time.**
- **Do not use forward millimeter wave radar sensors that are incorrectly calibrated.**
- **When vehicles in the adjacent lane move in front of the car, if they do not enter the monitoring area, they could not be detected, thus resulting in a response lag of SACC. The driver should pay close attention to movements of vehicles in the adjacent lane and take the initiative to intervene when necessary.**
- **If the vehicle ahead brakes suddenly (for emergency stop), the SACC may be unable to respond or respond too slowly to the vehicle ahead, thus resulting in a risk of delayed braking. In this case, the driver may not receive a takeover request. The driver should keep focused, and take the initiative to intervene when necessary.**
- **When this car follows the target vehicle and stops in SACC mode, it may start suddenly due to the blocked target vehicle, pedestrians passing by, etc. The driver should keep focused, and take the initiative to intervene when necessary.**

CAUTION

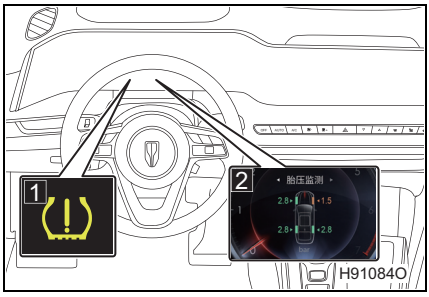
- **The SACC will control this car at the set following distance from the target vehicle. If the target vehicle decelerates or stops, the SACC will control this car to decelerate or stop automatically.**
- **When the target vehicle restarts or leaves the lane after stopping for no more than 3 s, this car will start automatically under the control of SACC.**
- **When the target vehicle restarts or leaves the lane after stopping for more than 3 s but no more than 3 min, a message of resuming cruise control will be shown on the instrument cluster multi-function display of this car, and the driver can resume the SACC by gently depressing the accelerator pedal or moving the cruise control lever to the "RES+" position, thus realizing automatic starting. At this time, the driver should pay attention to the front traffic conditions, so as to determine whether the car can be safely started.**
- **When this car stops for more than 3 min, the SACC will be automatically deactivated.**
- **The SACC cannot keep the car braked for a long time. Do not leave the car when the SACC keeps the car stopped. Before leaving the car, be sure to engage the P gear.**
- **During driving through a curve with SACC, pay attention to the followings:**
  - In sharp curves, the SACC may be deactivated or limit the speed.
  - On curves, the SACC may respond to vehicles in another lane, have no time to respond to vehicles in the same lane, make the car collide with the front, or lose control of the car; especially during driving on ramps, the SACC may lose its target due to large curve, thus causing acceleration. On curves, the driver must take extra care and always be ready for braking when necessary. During driving on curves, choose a proper speed.
  - In a curve, too small road radius may affect the judgment of SACC on the lane markings. Drive with caution on curves.

CAUTION

- **When this car passes through an intersection with traffic lights while following the vehicle ahead, the driver should pay attention to the change of traffic lights and actively intervene with the car when necessary to avoid violating traffic rules.**
- **When this car is in dense fog, rain, snow and other weather conditions, or when there are frost and dirt marks in the inspection window area of ADAS cameras, or when this car is running in the direction of the sun (or strong light source), a message reading "Since the ADAS camera is blocked, please clean the windshield" may be displayed on the instrument cluster due to "limited field of view" of camera, and the SACC cannot work at this time.**

Tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS)

The TPMS can monitor and check the tire pressure, and automatically issue an alarm when the tire pressure is lower than the limit.



1 Tire pressure abnormal/ system fault warning lamp
2 Tire pressure information

Operating condition of system

Car status	Alarm
Tire pressure is abnormal	The system fault warning lamp makes an alarm
The TPMS is not working	The system fault warning lamp comes on, and accompanied by a text indication that the TPMS is invalid

Tire pressure sensor matching

After wheel replacement or tire rotation, it is necessary to configure the TPMS. Please contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.

⚠ WARNING

■ Precautions for TPMS

- This system cannot prevent tire deflation and bursting. It is mainly used to give an alarm when it monitors that the tire pressure is lower than a set value.
- In winter, the tire pressure should be adjusted in time. Because the atmospheric temperature drops in winter, the tire pressure may decrease or fall below the alarm value. When the tire pressure decreases below the alarm value, an alarm will be issued.

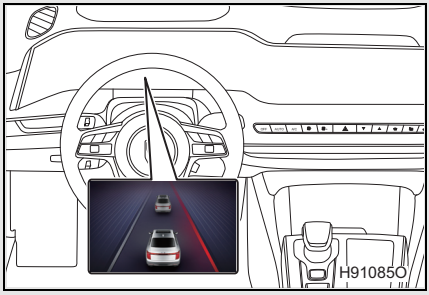
■ Situation in which TPMS cannot work properly

This system can make judgments based on subtle changes in tires. However, it sometimes cannot work properly under the following conditions.

- Four tires are not of the same size, manufacturer, brand and pattern, or they have significantly different wear degrees (the same for winter tires).
- Emergency tires, snow tires and tire chains are used.
- Tires with pressure significantly higher than the specified value are installed, or tire pressure drops rapidly due to tire burst (rupture).

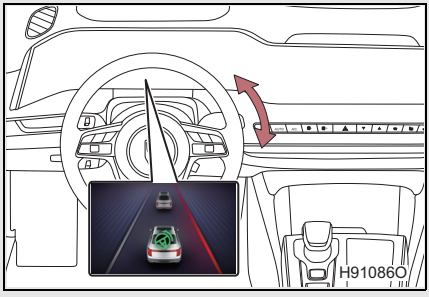
The LDW/LKA can detect the driver's status and the car's driving status when the vehicle speed is higher than 60 km/h. If it identifies non-subjective driver behavior (such as chatting, distraction, operating multimedia display, etc.) causing the car to deviate from the lane, it will give a warning, alarm and correction prompt to prevent danger and traffic violation.

■ Lane departure warning (LDW)



When the system judges that the car departs from the lane, the line on the corresponding side turns red and flashes, and a warning sound is issued at the same time.

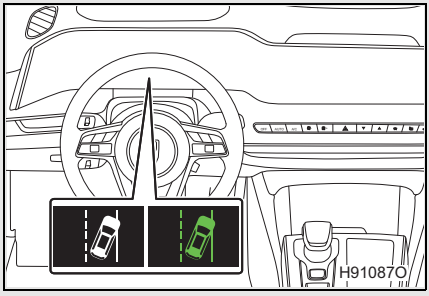
■ Lane keeping assist (LKA)



When the system judges that the car departs from the lane, the line on the corresponding side turns red and flashes, and at the same time, a warning sound is issued and the steering wheel also corrects automatically.

■ LDW/LKA settings

The LDW/LKA can be turned on/off through the driving settings interface of the in-vehicle infotainment system. After the system is turned on, the alarm mode can be selected as alarm only or alarm + correction and the LDW sensitivity can be set at the same time. (See P.177)



When the system is turned on, the LKA indicator lamp (white) on the instrument cluster comes on. When the system is turned off, the indicator lamp goes out.

When the system is turned on, the vehicle speed is higher than 60 km/h, and the system recognizes a valid lane marking, the LKA indicator lamp (green) on the instrument cluster comes on.

■ **Operating conditions of LDW/LKA:**

- The vehicle speed is higher than 60 km/h.
- The lane markings are clear and meet the requirements of national standards.
- The system cameras are not blocked.

■ **The system will suppress the alarm even if the car departs from the lane under the following conditions:**

- The driver turns the steering wheel to pass a bend.
- The car keeps driving on the lane marking.
- Within 3 s after the previous alarm is issued.
- The turn signal lamp switch is turned on or returned within 3 s.

■ **The system will not make corrections automatically even if the car departs from the lane under the following conditions:**

- The driver operates the turn signal lamps and steering wheel.
- The lane marking on one side or both sides disappears.

■ **The LDW/LKA may not work properly under the following conditions:**

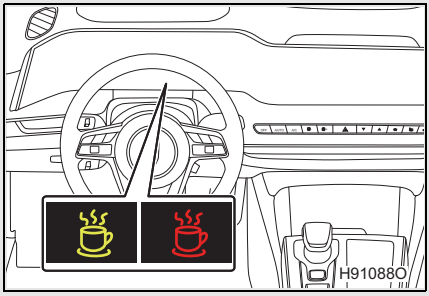
- Cameras are blocked by snow, ice, dust or stains on the front windshield.
- The weather causes low visibility, such as heavy fog, heavy rain, heavy snow, etc.
- The road is covered by vehicles or other obstacles.
- The road has a narrow width or the bend curvature is too large.
- The line of sight of the system cameras is blocked.
- When driving towards strong light.
- In complex lane marking conditions, such as diverging/merging, construction area, etc.
- Misrecognition may be caused when there are bridge cables or tree shadows on the road surface.
- When the light is dim or the lane markings are blurred at night.
- The vehicle speed is less than 60 km/h.
- The lane markings do not meet the requirements of national standards.
- The brightness of the external environment of the car suddenly changes, for example, entering a tunnel.

■ **When the ADAS camera unit or front windshield are replaced or when the four-wheel alignment is performed, the system needs to be recalibrated, otherwise it will not work normally. Contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.**

⚠ WARNING

- **The LDW/LKA is only a driver assistance system. Do not rely on it too much. The driver must drive carefully.**
- **The driver is the most important controller of the car, whose control on the vehicle takes precedence over the LDW/LKA. The driver must always have control on the car and take full responsibility for the car.**
- **Stop using the system when road and environmental factors may cause the system not to work properly.**
- **To prevent disturbance to the driver, the system will not give an alarm when the activation conditions of the LDW/LKA are not met.**
- **Incorrect calibration of the LDW/LKA may result in misrecognition of other lanes, and even cause accidents.**
- **The LDW/LKA can recognize lane markings and curbs with certain contrast. However, it may not recognize lane markings and curbs accurately or even fail to do so if they are blurred or stained, and may make false recognition of some wheel traces, watermarks or shadows exhibiting significant color differences and contrast on the road.**

The DSM presumes the driver's status (e.g., fatigue) by analyzing the car movement in the lane, and gives an early warning according to the driver's status, reminding the driver that he/she is not in a status suitable for driving now and needs to rest.



When the system determines that the driver may be in a relatively light abnormal driving status at present, the yellow indicator lamp on the instrument cluster comes on, and sound and text reminders will be given at the same time.

When the system determines that the driver may be in a serious abnormal driving status at present, the red indicator lamp on the instrument cluster flashes, and sound and text reminders will be given at the same time.

■ Turning on/off DSM

The DSM can be turned on and off through the driving settings interface of the in-vehicle infotainment system. (See P.178)

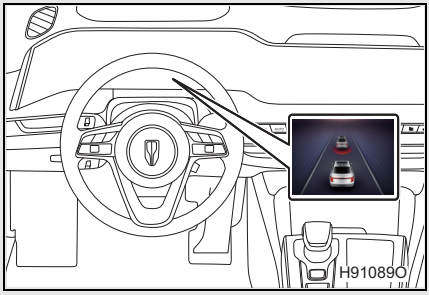
■ **When the ADAS camera unit or front windshield are replaced or when the four-wheel alignment is performed, the system needs to be recalibrated, otherwise it will not work normally. Contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.**

⚠ WARNING

- **The DSM is only a driver assistance system. It can only give warnings for the abnormal driving status of the driver, but cannot directly intervene in vehicle control. The driver must consider the early warnings and control the steering wheel by himself/herself to ensure the normal driving of the car.**
- **Due to road and environmental factors, the DSM may not normally judge the driver's abnormal driving status. The driver must abide by traffic regulations, stop and rest in time according to own conditions to ensure driving safety.**
- **If the DSM is not calibrated correctly, it may cause misjudgment and even cause accidents.**

Forward collision warning (FCW)

The system automatically judges the collision risk level through the relative distance, relative speed and relative acceleration between the vehicle and the target vehicle. If the conditions are met, the system will give an alarm.

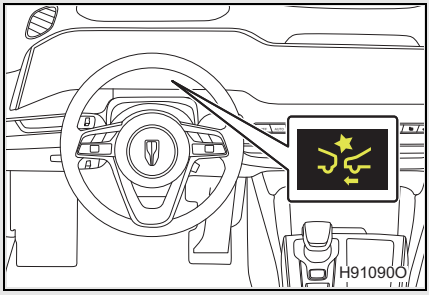


When the system judges that collision may occur, the instrument cluster displays alarm information and issues an audible alarm.

For the target vehicle, when the collision risk level goes up, the system will provide a braking reminder similar to the snub braking effect.

■ Turning on/off FCW

The FCW can be turned on and off through the driving settings interface of the in-vehicle infotainment system. It is turned on by default. (See P.178)



When the system is turned off, the instrument cluster will display the FCW OFF indicator lamp.

Adjusting or calibrating FCW

Adjust or calibrate the FCW under the following conditions, otherwise the FCW may not work properly:

- The front windshield is damaged or replaced.
- The ADAS camera unit or radar mounting bracket is removed and then refitted.
- The four wheels are aligned.
- The front bumper is hit or deformed.

Contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.

WARNING

- **To ensure driving safety, occupants in the car must fasten their seat belts!**
- **The FCW is only a driver assistance system. Do not rely on the FCW too much. The driver must drive carefully.**
- **The FCW only gives an early warning of collision danger. The driver must control the brake pedal or steering wheel to prevent collision.**
- **The FCW may not recognize modified or decorated vehicles with special appearance.**
- **As the FCW obtains information by recognizing the rear of other vehicles, it will not give an alarm for oncoming vehicles and front crossing vehicles.**
- **In complex traffic conditions, the FCW may experience delays in recognizing vehicles, leading to delayed alarms.**
- **On curved roads, hill roads or extremely bumpy roads, the system may not detect the vehicles ahead. The driver must drive carefully.**
- **The FCW system is a warning system. It cannot detect other vehicles in all cases. For example, the rear of a vehicle is seriously blocked, the shape of a vehicle is unusual (e.g., an overloaded vehicle carrying trees), the rear of a vehicle is seriously damaged, etc.**
- **The FCW may not recognize narrow objects such as pedestrian or bicycle.**
- **When rain, snow, ice, fog or dust blocks the sensors, the performance of system may degrade or fail. The driver must drive carefully.**

⚠ WARNING

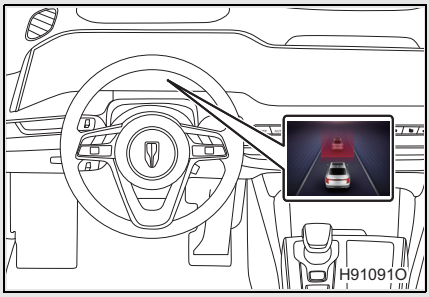
- **The front windshield shall not be modified or covered by any auxiliary equipment. Otherwise, the FCW may degrade or fail.**
- **If cameras are shifted due to collision, the FCW may degrade or fail. Please calibrate the FCW by driver in time.**
- **Never use an FCW that is incorrectly calibrated.**
- **For scenes like strong backlighting, road reflection, insufficient ambient lighting, etc., the FCW may not work normally. The driver must drive carefully.**
- **If the chassis of the preceding vehicle is high, or the goods protrude from the rear of the preceding vehicle, please pay attention to the danger that may occur.**
- **The FCW may not recognize targets such as cyclist.**
- **The front bumper must not be painted, modified or blocked by any auxiliary equipment. Otherwise, the performance of forward millimeter wave radar sensors may degrade or fail!**
- **Severe extreme weather conditions such as heavy snow, rain, ice and fog may lead to the performance degradation or failure of forward millimeter wave radar sensors. In such weather, the driver must use the FCW carefully.**
- **If the forward millimeter wave radar sensors are shifted due to collision, the FCW may degrade or fail. The driver shall calibrate the forward millimeter wave radar sensors in time.**
- **Do not use any forward millimeter wave radar sensors that are incorrectly calibrated.**

⚠ CAUTION

- **In order to avoid disturbing the driver by false alarms, no alarms will be given under the following conditions:**
  - The front windshield is damaged or replaced.
  - The vehicle speed is less than 8 km/h.
  - Within 3 s after the previous alarm is issued.
  - The driver turns the steering wheel too fast or by a large angle.
  - The driver slams on the accelerator pedal, causing a large pedal position.

Autonomous emergency braking (AEB)

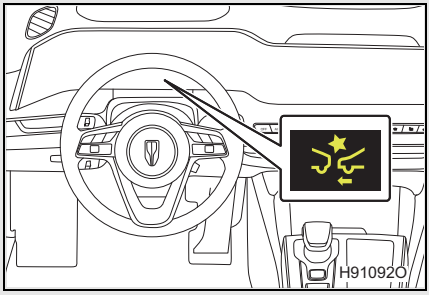
The working range of the AEB is 8 km/h ~ 80 km/h.
When the vehicle may collide with the preceding vehicle in case of emergency, if the driver fails to perform emergency braking or emergency steering to avoid danger in time, the system will assist the driver in applying brake to avoid or reduce the collision injury.



When the AEB works, the instrument cluster displays alarm information and an audible alarm is issued.

■ Turning on/off AEB

The AEB can be turned on and off through the driving settings interface of the in-vehicle infotainment system. (See P.178)



When the system is turned off, the instrument cluster will display the AEB OFF indicator lamp.

Adjusting or calibrating AEB

Adjust or calibrate the AEB under the following conditions, otherwise the AEB may not work properly:

- The front windshield is damaged or replaced.
- The ADAS camera unit or radar mounting bracket is removed and then refitted.
- The four wheels are aligned.
- The front bumper is hit or deformed.

Contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.

⚠ WARNING

- **To ensure driving safety, occupants in the car must fasten their seat belts.**
- **The AEB is only a driver assistance system. Do not rely on the AEB too much. The driver must drive carefully.**
- **The AEB may not be able to recognize modified or decorated vehicles with special appearance.**
- **On curved roads, hill roads or extremely bumpy roads, the system may not detect the vehicles ahead. The driver must drive carefully.**
- **The AEB may not recognize targets such as cyclist.**
- **The braking function of the AEB system will not be activated when the ESC is off or faulty.**
- **If there is heavy snow or rain, the system may not work properly.**
- **For scenes like strong backlighting, road reflection, insufficient ambient lighting, etc., the AEB may not work normally. The driver must drive carefully.**
- **If the vehicle is towing another vehicle or a trailer, turn off the AEB. When brakes are controlled under towing conditions, the safety of the vehicle deteriorates.**
- **If the chassis of the preceding vehicle is high, or the goods protrude from the rear of the preceding vehicle, please pay attention to the danger that may occur.**
- **The front windshield shall not be modified or covered by any auxiliary equipment. Otherwise, the performance of AEB may degrade or fail.**
- **If cameras are shifted due to collision, the AEB may degrade or fail. Please calibrate the AEB by driver in time.**

⚠ WARNING

- **Never use an AEB that is incorrectly calibrated.**
- **As the AEB obtains information by recognizing the rear of other vehicles, it will not give an alarm for oncoming vehicles and front crossing vehicles.**
- **The AEB is an auxiliary system. It cannot detect other vehicles in all cases. For example, the rear of a vehicle is seriously blocked, the shape of a vehicle is unusual (e.g., an overloaded vehicle carrying trees), the rear of a vehicle is seriously damaged, etc.**
- **When the vehicle is driving in a curve, the AEB may not be able to accurately judge the state of stationary objects in the driving direction, so the system may not carry out autonomous emergency braking assistance.**
- **The AEB does not always help the driver in all environments. Therefore, the driver shall not rely on the system completely, and must concentrate on observing road conditions to ensure driving safety.**
- **The AEB is an active auxiliary safety system. However, it cannot completely guarantee collision avoidance with vehicles in front under any conditions. The driver is responsible for driving and avoiding dangerous conditions. In case of emergency, the driver should brake as soon as possible.**
- **If the AEB is activated, the driver should promptly take control of the car after it comes to a stop to prevent unintended restarting, which may lead to the car slipping.**
- **The front bumper must not be painted, modified or blocked by any auxiliary equipment. Otherwise, the performance of forward millimeter wave radar sensors may degrade or fail!**
- **Severe extreme weather conditions such as heavy snow, rain, ice and fog may lead to the performance degradation or failure of forward millimeter wave radar sensors. In such weather, the driver must use the AEB carefully.**
- **If the forward millimeter wave radar sensors are shifted due to collision, the AEB may degrade or fail. The driver shall calibrate the forward millimeter wave radar sensors in time.**
- **Do not use any forward millimeter wave radar sensors that are incorrectly calibrated.**

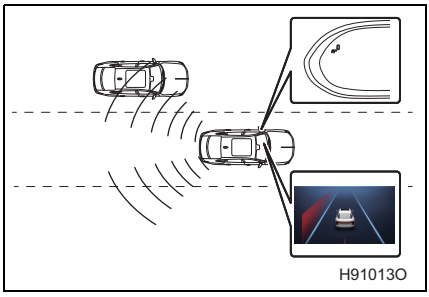
CAUTION

- **In order to avoid disturbing the driver by false alarms, no alarms will be given under the following conditions:**
  - The vehicle speed is less than 8 km/h.
  - Within 20 s after the previous alarm is issued.
- **When the AEB works, it will be deactivated if any of the following conditions are met:**
  - The driver turns the steering wheel too fast or by a large angle.
  - The driver slams on the accelerator pedal, causing a large pedal position.
  - The vehicle speed reduces below the threshold of 45 km/h.
- **When any of the following conditions are met, the AEB will not be triggered, allowing the driver to maintain control of the vehicle without unnecessary interference:**
  - ESC/TCS/ABS function is activated.
  - The R gear is engaged.
  - Any door is not closed.
  - The engine hood is not closed.
  - The driver unfastens the seat belt.
  - The automatic parking function is turned on.
  - The previous alarm is issued not more than 20 s.
  - The vehicle speed is less than about 8 km/h.
  - The driver turns the steering wheel too fast or by a large angle.
  - The driver slams on the accelerator pedal, causing a large pedal position.

Blind spot detection (BSD)

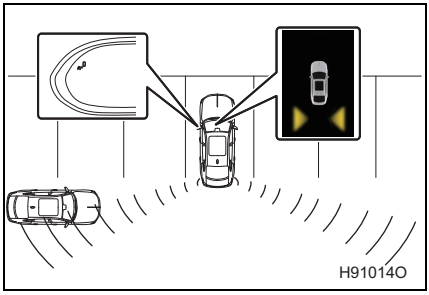
The system has the functions of blind spot detection, lane change assistance, rear cross traffic alert and rear collision warning to assist the driver in driving.

Blind spot detection and lane change assistance



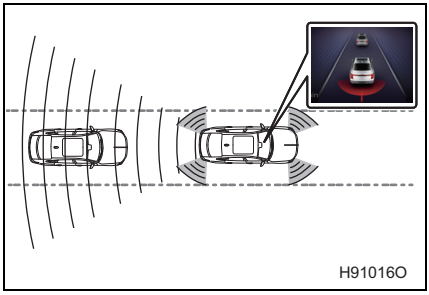
When the car is set to a gear rather than R and the vehicle speed is greater than 15 km/h, if a rear side vehicle within the blind spot of 7 m behind the vehicle or the interval of 7~70 m meets the collision condition, the warning indicator lamp on the exterior rearview mirror on the corresponding side comes on and the instrument cluster displays the alarm information. If the turn signal lamp switch on the corresponding side is turned on at this time, the warning indicator lamp flashes and a warning sound is issued at the same time, prompting the driver that there is danger in changing lanes. The function is turned off when the vehicle speed is less than 12 km/h.

Rear cross traffic alert



When the car is set to R gear and the vehicle speed is 0~10 km/h, if there are targets such as transverse running vehicle, electric motorcycle and bicycle etc. within 30 m in transverse direction and 7 m in longitudinal direction behind the car, the indicator lamp on the rearview mirror on the corresponding side comes on, and the multimedia display indicates alarm information, prompting the driver that it may be dangerous to reverse at this time.

Rear collision warning



When the car is set to a gear other than R, the vehicle speed is greater than 0 km/h and the vehicle doors are locked, if a rear vehicle is within 55 m of the car, the sensors will monitor the driving state of the following vehicle behind to judge the danger level of rear-end collision. According to this danger level, the instrument cluster will display alarm information, and at the same time the hazard warning lamp will flash, to alert both the driver and the rear vehicle to the risk of collision.

Turning on/off BSD

Each function of the BSD can be turned on and off through the vehicle settings interface of the in-vehicle infotainment system. (See P.177)

■ **The BSD and lane change assistance systems may not give an alarm or may give a delayed alarm under the following conditions:**

- The car is driving on a steep slope.
- The car is navigating the mountain top or a hill road.
- There is a height difference between the driving lane and the adjacent lane.
- The turning radius is small.
- The car is driving on snow-covered roads for a long time.
- A large amount of snow or ice gathers near radar sensors.

■ **The BSD and lane change assistance systems may advance the alarm or expand the alarm range under the following conditions**

- If two lanes are too narrow, an alarm will occur in the adjacent lane.
- The car drives on roads with fixed obstacles near the side of the car for a long time (e.g., tunnel wall, cement barrier of viaduct, metal billboard, etc.).

■ **The rear cross traffic alert may not give an alarm or may expand the alarm range under the following conditions:**

- The car is parked at an oblique angle.
- The reversing speed exceeds 10 km/h.
- A large amount of snow or ice gathers near radar sensors.
- The speed and yaw angle of the target vehicle are constantly changing in the detection area.
- Another vehicle directly approaches this vehicle from the rear.

■ **The rear collision warning system may not give an alarm or may expand the alarm range under the following conditions:**

- A large amount of snow or ice gathers near radar sensors.
- The speed and yaw angle of the target vehicle are constantly changing in the detection area.

CAUTION

- **Be careful not to impact the rear bumper during parking. Otherwise, the sensors in the bumper may be shifted or damaged, which may cause the system to shut down automatically or affect the system function.**
- **In order to ensure the normal operation of the system, the sensors in the bumper must be kept clean and not be covered by other objects.**
- **Only the paint approved by our company can be applied to the rear bumper. Other types of paint may cause limited functions or failure of the BSD.**
- **If the BSD does not work normally, turn it off immediately, and contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer for repair.**
- **After the BSD is repaired, it needs to be calibrated. For details, please contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.**
- **The BSD is only an auxiliary reminder, and cannot completely avoid vehicle collision in blind spots. Before changing lanes, please check the rearview mirrors, give a glance to rear areas and use the turn signal lamps.**
- **Under special working conditions such as wet weather and high vehicle speed, the BSD may give false alarms or miss alarms, which are normal phenomena.**
- **When the rear BSD radar is blocked, the BSD will not work. Therefore, it needs to be cleaned in time.**
- **As the BSD is limited by physical laws and working conditions, it may not correctly recognize traffic conditions under some driving conditions. For example:**
  - In a sharp turn lane.
  - In a lane with varying width.
  - On a bumpy road in the mountain.
  - In bad weather.
  - Near some special buildings on the roadside, such as high or scattered highway guardrail.

⚠ WARNING

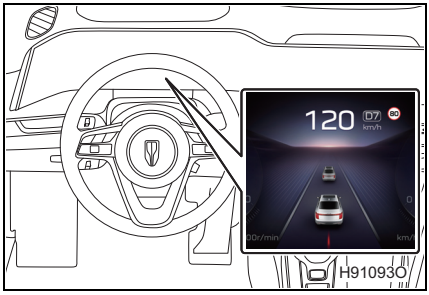
- **The BSD is only a driver assistance system. Do not rely on it too much. The driver must drive carefully.**
- **The driver is the most important controller of the car. The BSD is only an auxiliary reminder. The driver must always have control on the vehicle and take full responsibility for the car.**
- **Turn off the radar detection system when a trailer or some accessories (e.g., bicycle bracket) are installed at the rear. Otherwise, the radio waves emitted by the radar may be blocked, resulting in abnormal operation of the system.**
- **The BSD can detect targets such as car, electric motorcycle and bicycle etc. If target vehicles have characteristics such as irregular shape, modification, painted surface, etc., the recognition effect cannot be guaranteed. The recognition of pedestrians, animals or other objects cannot be guaranteed too. In such cases, the driver must drive carefully.**

⚠ WARNING

■ **The BSD utilizes intelligent technologies that adhere to the laws of physics, and it operates within specific system limitations. Therefore, the driver should concentrate on observing road and traffic conditions to prevent accidents.**

- Be sure to adjust the vehicle speed and maintain the safe distance from the vehicle ahead based on current visibility, weather conditions, road and traffic conditions.
- Always hold the steering wheel with both hands while driving, and be ready to turn it at any time.
- Pay attention to the indicator lamps on exterior rearview mirrors and the information displayed on the multifunction display screen of the instrument cluster, and take appropriate actions in response to the indications.
- The BSD may react to specific roadside structures (e.g., high or skewed guardrail) and thus give false alarms.
- Always pay attention to the road conditions and surrounding conditions of the car.
- Do not use the BSD when the sensors are dirty or damaged, as this may impact the functions of the BSD.
- When the sun shines directly, the field of view of exterior rearview mirrors may be limited.
- During driving, be sure to strictly follow the instructions provided by warning lamps/indicator lamps and related text information. Otherwise, accidents are prone to occurring and serious personal injuries will be caused.

TSR can accurately recognize the speed limit sign and speed limit release sign ahead during the driving.



When the system recognizes a speed limit sign, if the vehicle speed is less than the speed limit value, the instrument cluster will only display the current speed limit requirement through the indicator lamp; and if the vehicle speed is more than the speed limit value, the instrument cluster will remind the driver of overspeed through sound/icon/text message, etc.

When the system recognizes a speed limit release sign, the indicator lamp on the instrument cluster will go out and the speed limit reminder will be canceled.

Turning on/off TSR

TSR can be turned on and off through the vehicle settings interface of the in-vehicle infotainment system. (See P.178)

■ **Under the following conditions, the system will cancel the speed limit alarm:**

- The vehicle has passed the speed limit sign for a certain distance.
- The turn signal lamp is turned on and a turn is made.
- A U-turn is made at low speed.

■ **Adjusting or calibrating TSR**

Adjust or calibrate the TSR under the following conditions, otherwise the TSR may not work properly:

- The front windshield is damaged or replaced.
- The four wheels are aligned.
- The ADAS camera unit is replaced.

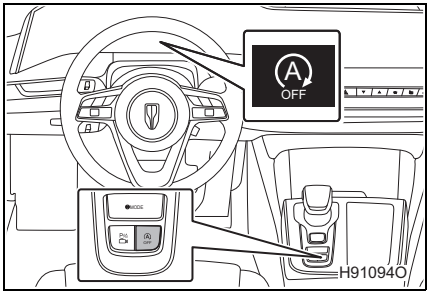
For calibration, contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.

⚠ WARNING

- **The TSR is only a driver assistance system. Do not rely on the TSR too much. The driver must drive carefully.**
- **The driver is the most important controller of the car, and must always have control on the car and take full responsibility for the car.**
- **If there is heavy snow or rain, the system may not work properly.**
- **For scenes like strong backlighting, road reflection, insufficient ambient lighting, etc., the TSR may not work normally. The driver must drive carefully.**
- **The front windshield shall not be modified or covered by any auxiliary equipment. Otherwise, the performance of TSR may degrade or fail.**
- **If cameras are shifted due to collision, the TSR may degrade or fail. Please calibrate the TSR in time.**
- **When the sign is not in a style or placed at a position that conforms to regulations, the system will fail to recognize it properly.**

The idle stop-start system controls the engine to start and stop at idle speed according to driving operations and system requirements during short stop.

Turning on/off idle stop-start system



Press the idle stop-start off button, causing the idle start-stop off indicator lamps on the cluster instrument to come on, and the idle stop-start system is turned off; press the idle stop-start off button again, to turn the system on, and the indicator lamp will go out.

■ If the idle stop-start off button is pressed during parking

- When the engine is shut down through the idle stop-start system, pressing the idle stop-start off button will restart the engine. At the same time, the idle stop-start system is turned off, and the idle stop-start off indicator lamp on the instrument cluster comes on.
- When the idle stop-start system is off, pressing the idle stop-start off button will resume the idle stop-start system, but in this case the engine will not be shut down.

Working process of idle stop-start system

■ Stopping the engine

- When the car is driving in D gear, if the driver depresses the brake pedal until the vehicle speed reaches zero and continues to hold the brake pedal, the engine will stop automatically. The idle stop-start on indicator lamp on the instrument cluster will come on.
- When the car is driving in D gear, if the driver depresses the brake pedal until the vehicle speed reaches zero, then moves the shift lever from D to N, and keeps depressing the brake pedal, the engine will stop automatically. The idle stop-start on indicator lamp on the instrument cluster will come on.

- When the car is driving in D gear, if the driver depresses the brake pedal until the vehicle speed reaches zero, and moves the shift lever from D to P, the engine will stop automatically. The idle stop-start on indicator lamp on the instrument cluster will come on.
- When the car is driving in D gear, if the driver depresses the brake pedal until the vehicle speed reaches zero and the EPB/AUTO HOLD engages, the engine will stop automatically. The idle stop-start on indicator lamp on the instrument cluster will come on.

■ Starting the engine

- When the car stops in D/N gear, if the driver keeps depressing the brake pedal and then releases the brake pedal, the engine will start automatically.
- When the car stops in P gear, if the driver depresses the brake pedal or accelerator pedal again, the engine will start automatically.
- When the EPB/AUTO HOLD is activated, if the driver depresses the brake pedal or accelerator pedal again, the engine will start automatically.
- When the shift lever is moved to R, the engine will start automatically.
- When the steering wheel is turned, the engine may start automatically.
- When the A/C or the front windshield defrosting/defogging function is activated, the engine will start automatically.

Idle stop-start indicator lamp

- When the idle stop-start on indicator lamp (green) on the instrument cluster comes on, it indicates that the idle stop-start system is turned on and operational.
- When the idle stop-start limited indicator lamp (white) on the instrument cluster comes on, it indicates that the idle stop-start system is turned on but does not meet the operating conditions.
- When the idle stop-start fault indicator lamp (yellow) on the instrument cluster comes on, it indicates that the idle stop-start system is faulty.

Operating conditions of idle stop-start system

■ Operating conditions of idle stop-start system

- Preconditions for automatic engine shutdown

  The engine will automatically stop when all the following conditions are met:

  • The car has no fault related to the idle stop-start system.
  • The idle stop-start system is enabled.

- The driver's door is closed.
- The driver's seat belt is fastened.
- The engine hood is closed.
- The A/C comfort system meets the requirements.
- Auto parking assist does not intervene.
- The battery has good performance and sufficient charge.
- The coolant temperature meets the requirements.
- The current operating conditions of the car meet the set conditions of the idle stop-start system.
- The shift lever is not set to R.
- The steering wheel angle should not be too large.
- The driving mode is set to "Comfort" or "Economic".

Note: For 2.0T model, when setting the shift lever to P position, the system can stop only if the basic conditions such as battery and coolant temperature meet the stopping status.

● Preconditions for automatic start of engine

The engine starts automatically when all of the following conditions are met:

- The car has no fault related to the idle stop-start system.
- The driver's door is closed.
- The engine hood is closed.
- The driver's seat belt is fastened.

● The engine restarts automatically without driver operation (any of the conditions are met)

- The battery status does not meet the specified conditions.
- The coolant temperature does not meet the specified conditions.
- The brake vacuum is insufficient.
- The A/C does not meet the operating conditions.

⚠ WARNING

■ **Operation of idle stop-start system**

- Vehicles equipped with 48 V system have various stop-start modes, and the system will judge according to 48 V battery status, ambient temperature and other conditions and automatically select the optimal stop-start mode.
- Do not leave the car when the idle stop-start system stops the engine. Accidents may occur due to the automatic start function of the engine.
- When the car is placed in a poorly ventilated place, do not use the idle stop-start system to stop the engine. The automatic start function of the engine may result in a restart, causing exhaust to accumulate and enter the car, which may seriously endanger health and even lead to death.
- In a gear position other than P, in order to ensure safety, it is necessary to ensure that the doors are closed, the driver's seat belt is fastened, the engine hood is closed, and the steering wheel is aligned. Otherwise, the idle stop-start system cannot be activated, and automatic stop or automatic start of the engine cannot be achieved.
- To prevent frequent start and stop of the engine during severe congestion, after the engine stops, the vehicle speed needs to be greater than 3 km/h to activate the idle stop-start system again; after the shift lever is set to D position for the first time from R position, the vehicle speed needs to be greater than 10 km/h to activate the idle stop-start system.
- In the idle stop-start state, if the idle stop-start system detects that the relevant conditions are not met, even if the driver does not depress the brake pedal, the engine may start automatically.
- In the idle stop-start state, if the driver unfastens the seat belt or opens the door, and triggers the engine start, at this time, the instrument panel will prompt that the engine needs to be started manually. In such a scenario, the driver is required to start the engine manually using the engine switch.

⚠ WARNING

■ **To ensure the drivability and comfort of the car and the protection of various systems within the car, there are many preconditions for activating the idle stop-start system. For example, low battery charge, low temperature, improper A/C settings, low engine coolant temperature, high altitude, non-comfort or economic driving mode, steep slope, low braking vacuum, high transmission temperature, related system failure, etc. will disable the idle stop-start system. After braking and stopping the car, if the engine cannot be stopped due to the aforementioned conditions, the idle stop-start limited indicator lamp on the instrument cluster will come on. Therefore, drivers need not concern themselves with whether the engine stops during driving, as the idle stop-start system can make decisions by considering various factors such as drivability, safety and comfort.**

CAUTION

- **After the engine stops automatically, pressing the engine switch will not start the engine at that moment.**
- **When the car is in the idle stop-start state, the idle stop-start system is disabled if the following conditions occur. In such cases, if the driver triggers the engine start conditions, the instrument cluster will remind the driver to start the engine manually.**
  - The engine hood is opened or the transmission sends a no-start signal.
  - The seat belt is unfastened or the door is opened.
  - The seat belt is not fastened after being unfastened for a period of time or the door is not closed after being opened for a period of time.
- **The idle stop-start system will be prevented from entering the active state when the A/C is in any of the following states:**
  - The A/C is in defrost/defog state.
  - The cabin temperature does not reach the target temperature range for comfort.
  - The ambient temperature is too high or too low.
- **When the transmission sends the start-stop prohibited signal, the idle stop-start system will be prevented from entering the active state.**
  - The risk of car darting caused by the engaged drive chains can be prevented during engine start after shutdown.
- **The driver is the most important controller of the car. The idle stop-start system is only an driver assistance system. The driver must drive carefully according to the actual road conditions, have control on the car all the time and take full responsibility for the car.**

The related functions integrated in the ESC vary slightly among different vehicle models. To improve the driving safety and performance of the car, the following functions will work automatically based on various driving conditions. However, remember that these functions are only for auxiliary purpose. Do not rely on them too much during driving.

- Antilock brake system (ABS)
  This system can prevent sideslip or pulling to one side of the car due to locked wheels during driving on slippery roads or during emergency braking.
- Electronic brakeforce distribution (EBD)
  This system can dynamically distribute brake force proportionally between the front and rear wheels based on the change in car load, road conditions and brake force, so as to improve the braking stability and maneuverability of the car.
- Traction control system (TCS)
  This system can prevent the driving wheels from slipping and ensure the acceleration performance when the vehicle starts or accelerates on a slippery road.
- Hydraulic brake assist (HBA)
  This system can execute the braking force compensation when the brake pedal is depressed quickly, so as to effectively increase the brake force.
- Hydraulic brake booster (HBB)
  This system can execute the brakeforce compensation when the vacuum degree of braking system is insufficient, so as to effectively increase the brake force.
- Hill hold control (HHC)
  When the car is started on the slope, for a certain duration after the driver transitions from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal, this function will properly maintain the brake pressure applied by the driver to prevent the car from slipping.
- Electronic stability control (ESC)
  This system can help the driver control sideslip during sudden or slippery road turns, so as to ensure the car follows the correct driving track.

■ Controlled deceleration for ACC-Stop & Go (CDD-S)*

This system can assist the ACC in achieving deceleration control of the car.

■ Controlled deceleration for parking brake (CDP)

When the EPB switch is pulled up for a long time, the car actively enters the deceleration state.

■ AUTO HOLD

When the car is stationary, the AUTO HOLD applies the parking brake through the system and maintains this state for a short time, and then the EPB performs parking. This function can be turned off/on using a dedicated button.

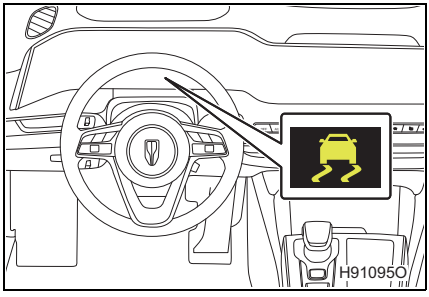
■ Automatic brake prefill (ABP)*

According to the request of the relevant control unit, the ESC actively pre-pressurizes the braking system to improve the response speed to braking.

Electric power steering (EPS)

This system can use a motor to reduce the force required for turning the steering wheel.

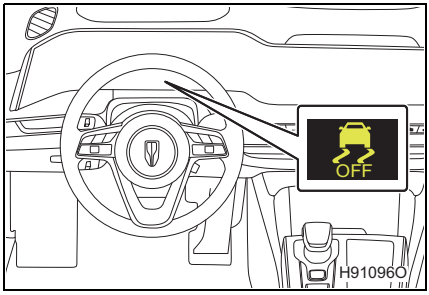
When TCS/ESC works



If the car skids or the driving wheels idle, the indicator lamp will flash to indicate that the TCS/ESC is working.

Disabling ESC

If the car becomes stuck in snow or mud, the ESC may reduce the power output from the engine to the wheels. Disabling the system can be beneficial for the car to rock back and forth, aiding in getting out of the trapped situation.



The ESC can be turned on and off in the driving settings interface of the in-vehicle infotainment system. When it is turned off, the ESC off indicator lamp of the instrument cluster comes on. (See P.178)

■ **Automatic response of ESC**

After turning off ESC/TCS and restarting the engine, or if the vehicle speed exceeds 70 km/h, the system will be reactivated automatically.

■ **Sound and vibration produced by ABS/HBA/TCS/ESC/CDP/CDD-S/HBB and AUTO HOLD**

- Noises may be heard from the engine compartment when the vehicle starts or when using functions such as ACC and APA. This sound does not indicate a failure in these systems.
- Some normal conditions may occur during the operation of the above systems. These conditions do not indicate a fault.
  - Vibration may be felt through the car body and steering wheel.
  - The motor sound may be heard when the car stops.

⚠ WARNING

■ **Handling of wheels and suspension**

Faulty wheels or modified suspension can have an impact on the driver assistance system and may lead to system failure.

■ **ABS cannot work effectively under the following conditions:**

- The limits of ground grip of tires are exceeded.
- The car skids when driving on slippery roads at high speed.

■ **Braking distance of ABS on special road surface**

ABS is not designed to shorten the braking distance of the car. Be sure to keep a safe distance from the vehicles driving ahead under the following conditions:

- The car drives on muddy, gravel or snowy roads.
- The car drives with tire chains.
- The car drives on bumpy roads.
- The car drives on cratered or uneven roads.

■ **TCS may not work effectively under the following conditions:**

When the car drives on slippery roads, even if the TCS works normally, it may not control the driving direction or meet the power requirements. Do not drive the car under the condition that the car may lose stability and power.

■ **When ESC is activated**

If the indicator lamp flashes, be sure to drive carefully. Otherwise, accidents may occur easily.

■ **When ESC is off**

Take special care and drive at a speed suitable for road conditions. In this case, the ESC can ensure the stability and driving force of the car. If not necessary, do not turn off the ESC.

■ **Replacement of wheels**

Ensure that all wheels have the same specifications, brand, tread pattern and load capacity. In addition, ensure that the tire pressure meets the requirements specified on the tire pressure label. If the car is equipped with different wheels, the ABS and ESC may not work properly. For details of tire or wheel replacement, please contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.

7-1. Parking control

Front and rear parking radar 290

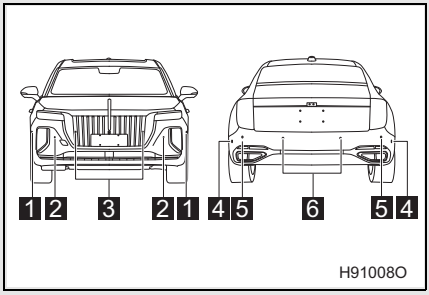
Around view monitor (AVM) 297

Auto parking assist (APA) 303

Front and rear parking radar

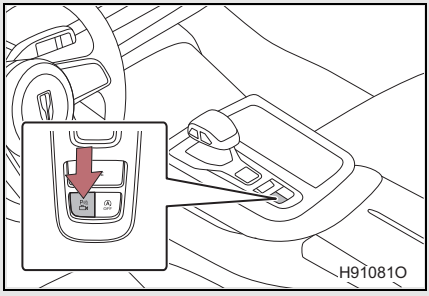
The front and rear parking radar system comprises of a control unit and ultrasonic sensors. These sensors can measure the distance between the car and obstacles. According to the change of the distance from obstacles within the detection area, the speaker sounds at different frequencies, and at same time, the multimedia display screen displays information about the distance and orientation of the obstacle. When using the system, be sure to pay attention to the surrounding area.

■ Sensor type



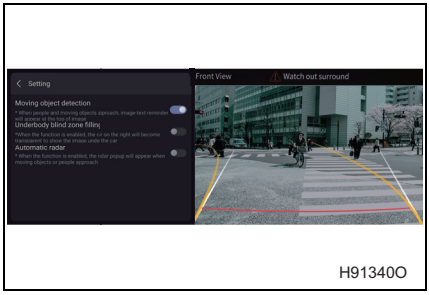
1 Front side long-range radar sensor
2 Front corner short-range radar sensor
3 Front central short-range radar sensor
4 Rear side long-range radar sensor
5 Rear corner short-range radar sensor
6 Rear central short-range radar sensor

■ Turning on and off parking radar



When the vehicle speed is lower than 15 km/h, press the radar/image button, the indicator lamp on button comes on and parking radar is turned on; press the radar/image button again, the indicator lamp on button goes off and parking radar is turned off.

Radar setting



The radar alarm volume and the automatic radar can be set in the image interface of in-vehicle infotainment system.

When setting the automatic radar to ON

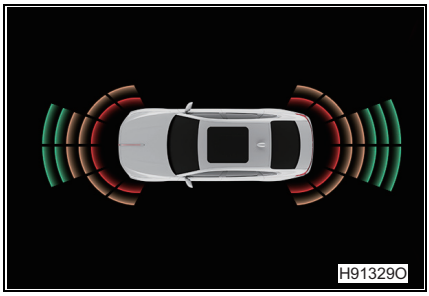
- When the shift lever is set to D position and the vehicle speed is lower than 15 km/h, if there are obstacles within 80 cm, the radar warning will pop up on the display screen. Click the Back button to exit the radar prompt. At this time, the automatic function of the radar is disabled during this ignition cycle.
  Note: The radar does not give an alarm when the shift lever is in N position and the car is stationary.
- When the shift lever is set to R position, the parking radar system is turned on. At this time, the parking radar system can be turned off by pressing the radar/image button.
- After the parking radar system is turned on, when the vehicle speed is higher than 15 km/h, the system will exit. When the vehicle speed is lower than 10 km/h, the parking radar system will work again.

When setting the automatic radar to OFF

- When the shift lever is set to R position, the parking radar system is turned on. At this time, the parking radar system can be turned off by pressing the radar/image button.
- After the system is turned on and the shift lever is set to R position, when the vehicle speed is higher than 15 km/h, the system will exit and when the vehicle speed is lower than 10 km/h, the parking radar system will work again; if the shift lever is set to D position, when the vehicle speed is higher than 15 km/h, the system will exit and do not automatically resume.

Display

■ When an obstacle is detected



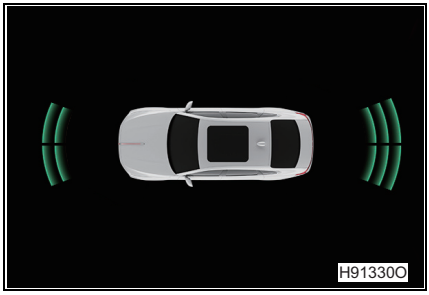
When the radar detects an obstacle, an image corresponding to the position and distance from the obstacle is displayed on the multimedia display screen.

The slow-moving area, warning area and danger area are indicated in green, yellow and red respectively.

Obstacle distance detection

When an obstacle is detected, the color block corresponding to the sensor will continuously illuminate.

■ Parking slow-moving area information indication of central radar sensor



Front central short-range radar sensor

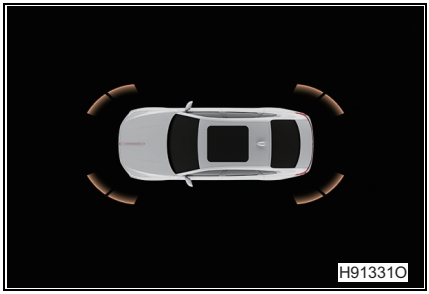
The distance from the obstacle is 80 ~ 120 cm

Rear central short-range radar sensor

The distance from the obstacle is 80 ~ 150 cm

If the obstacle is detected within these range, a green indicator bar is indicated on the multimedia display screen and the speaker sounds to warn the driver.

■ Warning area information indication of side radar sensor for parking



Side corner short-range radar sensor

The distance from the obstacle is 40 ~ 60 cm

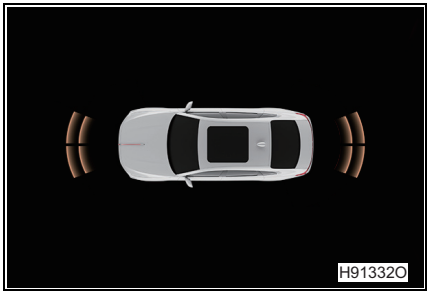
If the obstacle is detected within these range, a yellow indicator bar is indicated on the multimedia display screen and the speaker sounds to warn the driver.

Side long-range radar sensor

The distance from the obstacle is 30 ~ 60 cm

If the obstacle is detected within these range, a yellow indicator bar is indicated on the multimedia display screen to warn the driver.

■ Parking warning area information indication of central radar sensor

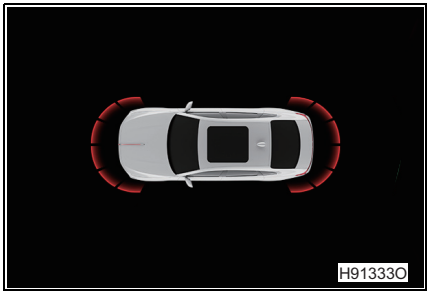


Central short-range radar sensor

The distance from the obstacle is 40 ~ 80 cm

If the obstacle is detected within these range, a yellow indicator bar is indicated on the multimedia display screen and the speaker sounds to warn the driver.

■ Parking danger area information indication of radar sensor



Central/corner short-range radar sensor

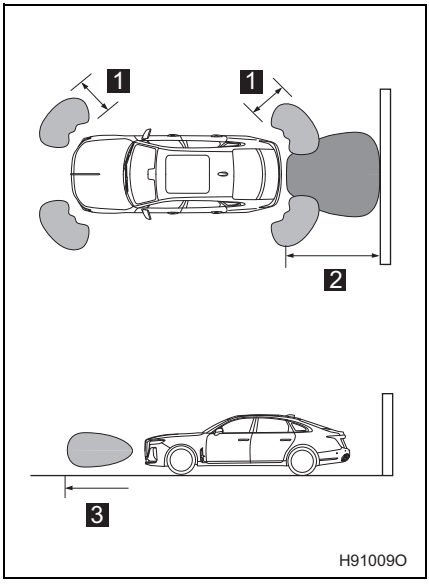
The distance from the obstacle is 1 ~ 40 cm

Side long-range radar sensor

The distance from the obstacle is 1 ~ 30 cm

If the obstacle is detected within these range, a red indicator bar is indicated on the multimedia display screen and the speaker continuously sounds to warn the driver.

Farthest detection distance of sensors



1 About 60 cm
2 About 150 cm
3 About 120 cm

The figure shows the farthest distance detected by radar sensors. (Note: Radar sensors cannot detect obstacles that are extremely close to the car.)

Depending on the shape of the obstacle, the detection range of the radar sensors may vary.

■ **Detection information of sensors**

- Certain car conditions and surrounding environments may affect the sensor's ability to correctly detect obstacles. For example:
  - There is dirt, snow or ice on the sensors.
  - Sensors are obscured.
  - The car is obviously tilted.
  - The car is on particularly bumpy roads, slopes, gravel roads or grass.
  - There is a lot of noise in the vicinity of the car, such as sounds from vehicle horns, motorcycle engines and pneumatic braking of large vehicles or other strong noises that can produce ultrasonic waves.
  - There is another vehicle equipped with parking assist sensors nearby, and the sensors are working.
  - The car is equipped with a fender antenna mast or wireless antenna.
  - The car is equipped with a towing eye.
  - Bumpers or sensors are strongly impacted.
  - The car is approaching a high or bent curb.
  - In hot or cold weather.

  In addition to the above cases, traffic signs and other objects may sometimes be judged by sensors as being closer than their actual distance due to their specific shape.
- The shape of an obstacle may prevent the sensors from detection, especially the following obstacles.
  - Wires, fences, ropes, etc.
  - Cotton, snow and other materials that absorb radio waves.
  - Objects with sharp edges and corners.
  - Low obstacles.
  - High obstacles with the upper part extending toward the car.

WARNING

■ Warnings for using the front and rear parking radar

To avoid accidents, please observe the following precautions:

- Do not install anything within the working range of the sensors.
- Parking radar system is only a driver assistance system. Do not rely on it too much. The driver must drive carefully. When necessary, intervene proactively to avoid danger.
- The driver is the most important controller of the car, and must always have control on the car and take full responsibility for the car.
- When the vehicle speed is too fast, the system will exit. The driver must drive carefully.

CAUTION

■ Precautions for car washing

Do not flush the sensors with water or steam. Otherwise, the sensors may fail.

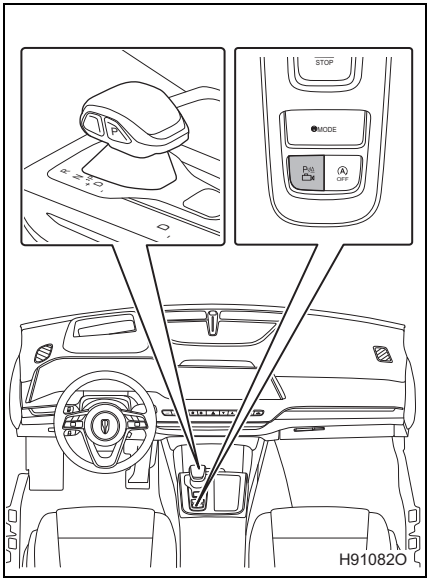
The AVM gives indications through the multimedia display screen, which is convenient for the driver to clearly view and understand the surrounding conditions of the car, and at the same time judge the relative orientation and distance of obstacles, so as to achieve safe and easy parking.

The images used in this section are examples only and may differ from those actually indicated in the car.

Activating and deactivating AVM

■ Activation

There are two methods to enter the AVM:



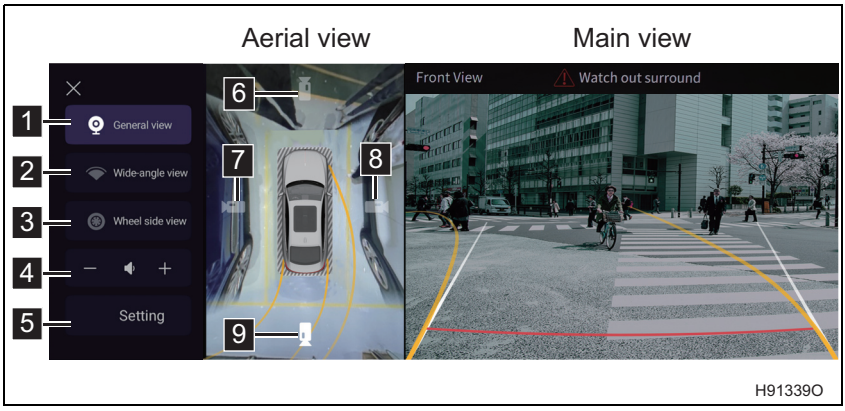
Method 1: Set the shift lever to R position to activate the AVM.
Method 2: When the vehicle speed is less than 15 km/h, press the radar/image button to activate the AVM.

■ Deactivation

Press radar/image button or touch screen button ✕, or set the shift lever to P position or vehicle speed exceeds 15 km/h, exit the AVM.

Screen modes of AVM

The AVM features several screen modes. The driver can choose the corresponding mode based on specific needs.



1 Regular view

In regular view, the front view, rear view, left view, right view and aerial view can be checked.

2 Wide-angle view

It is selectable in the front and rear view modes, switch the main view and aerial view to wide-angle view after selecting, providing a nearly 180° picture.

3 Wheel side view

It is selectable in the front and rear view modes, you can select to check the left and right wheel side views of front or rear wheel side.

4 Volume of radar alarm

The volume of radar alarm tone can be adjusted.

5 Setting

Turn signal lamp follow, underbody blind spot detection, AVM self-starting and object detection can be set.

- Moving object detection: After enabled, it can detect the dynamic objects within a range of 3×5 m in the front and rear of vehicle.
- Underbody blind spot filling: After enabled, as the vehicle moves, the blind spot under the car is filled with visual image to achieve the visual effect at the bottom.

- Automatic radar: Set whether the front radar automatically gives an alarm during driving.

6 Front view
Display the front view and aerial view.

7 Left view
Display the left view and aerial view.

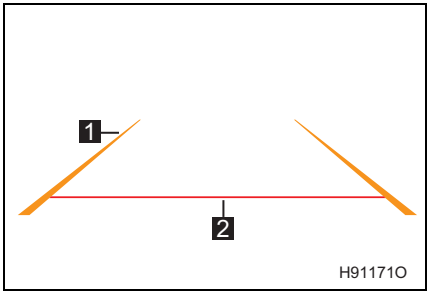
8 Right view
Display the right view and aerial view.

9 Rear view
Display the rear view and aerial view.

When the turn signal lamps are turned on, the screen mode is automatically switched to the corresponding left and right views and aerial view. When the turn signal lamps are turned off, the previously selected screen mode is restored.

Parking assist line

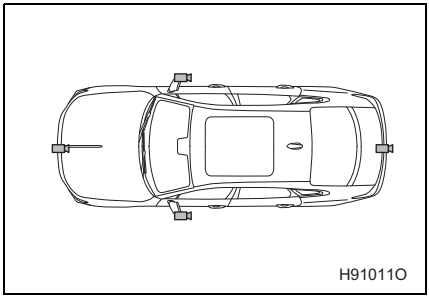
The indication on the screen assists the driver in complete parking, and the parking guide lines are dynamically adjusted according to different angles of the vehicle.



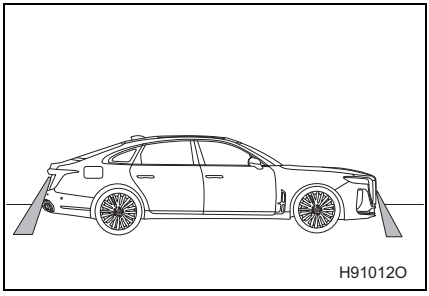
1 Parking guide line
It represents the expected car trajectory as the steering wheel rotates.

2 Distance guide line
Indicates the distance line 50 cm from rear edge of bumper.

Around view camera

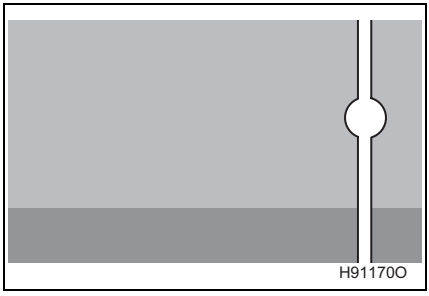

H91011O

Around view cameras are installed at the front grille, trunk lid and left and right external rearview mirrors respectively.


H91012O

The area that the camera can monitor is limited. Objects near the corners of the bumpers or under the bumpers are not displayed on the screen.

The area displayed on the screen may change with the car direction or the road conditions.


H91170O

If the cameras receive strong light (for example, sunlight reflected by the car body), they may produce the smear effect*1 unique to the camera.

*1: When the cameras are used to transmit images, the light source seems to have a vertical stripe extending up and down.

⚠ WARNING

■ **The AVM is only a driver assistance system. Do not rely on it too much.**

- The driver is the most important controller of the car, and must always have control on the car and take full responsibility for the car.
- Please drive carefully and visually confirm the situation around the car. It is very dangerous to reverse only by observing the display screen, which may lead to accidents or collisions with objects. The AVM is only a visual auxiliary system. The image on the display screen may be different from the actual situation.

■ **When using AVM**

Please observe the following precautions to prevent serious personal injury or even death.

- Do not rely solely on the AVM when reversing.
- Visually check and confirm through the rearview mirror that the selected path is clear.
- The displayed distance between the object and the plane may be different from the actual distance.
- The aerial view of AVM can only show close objects, and the cameras will not show objects outside the field of view.
- The moving object/person detection function can only detect low-speed moving objects, and some objects may be missed during detection. Please remain vigilant during driving.
- Do not use this system when the cameras can not work normally.

⚠ WARNING

■ Conditions affecting AVM

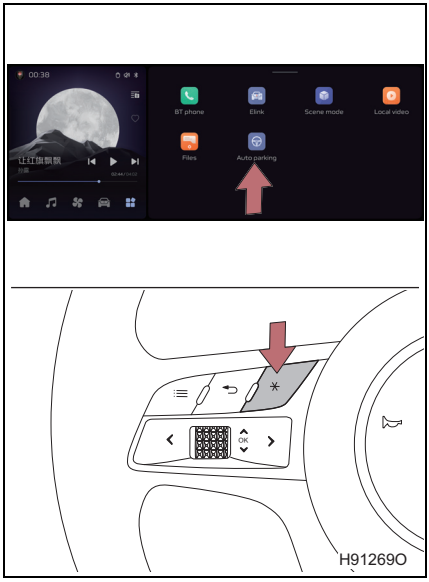
- If the car is hit, the position and mounting angle of the camera may change. Please contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer to inspect the car.
- If the temperature changes sharply, for example, when the car is splashed with hot water in cold weather, this system may not work properly.
- If the camera is dirty, it may not transmit a clear image. Rinse it with water and wipe it clean with a soft cloth. If the camera is very dirty, clean it with neutral detergent and wipe it.
- When the system temperature is low, the displayed image may darken and the moving image may be slightly distorted.
- Under the conditions of rain, snow, fog and low visibility, the camera image may not be clear.
- Situations where AVM should not be used
  - On icy, slippery or snowy roads.
  - Tire chains or an emergency spare tire are used.
  - On an uneven or bended road, such as a bend or slope.
- If the tire is changed, the guide line position indicated on the display screen may deviate. For tire change, please consult an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.
- Depending on the car conditions (number of occupants or luggage, etc.), the guide line position indicated on the display screen may change. Before operation, make sure to visually check the conditions behind and around the car.

Auto parking assist (APA)

APA measures the length of the parking spaces on both sides of the road using ultrasonic waves and cameras. After the appropriate parking space is selected, the system will automatically control the vehicle to perform parking to park in the selected parking space. APA includes auto parking-in and auto parking-out. They can be selected through the multimedia display.

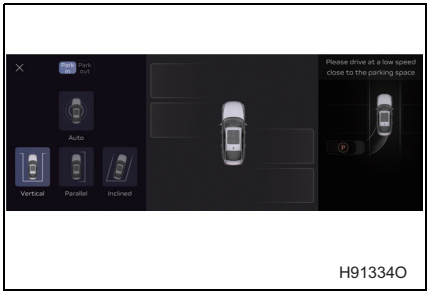
Before using the APA, be sure to check the automatic parking steps, precautions and warnings described in this section to prevent accidents.

Entering APA



Touch the parking button in the extended application of the in-vehicle infotainment system to enter the automatic parking selection interface; or press the multi-function button of steering wheel to quickly enter the automatic parking selection interface.

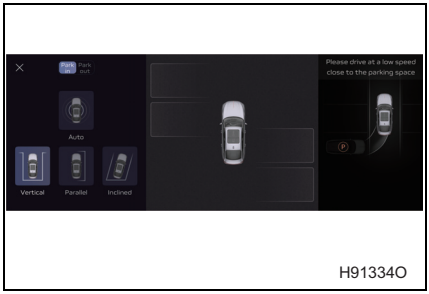
Function settings of the multi-function button can be performed via the in-vehicle infotainment system. (See P.180)



The parking mode can be selected as parking-in or parking-out in the parking selection interface.

Auto parking-in

■ Selecting the parking space type



You can search parking spaces in automatic mode and manual mode. And in each mode, there are three types of parking spaces available: Vertical parking, parallel parking, and inclined parking.

When the vehicle speed is not zero, the system defaults to automatic mode. Only when the vehicle speed is zero, the manual mode can be selected.

■ Selecting parking space



H91335O

Method 1: Automatic mode selection

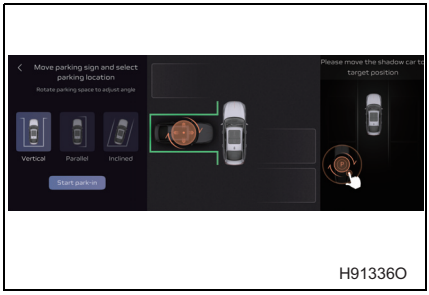
Driving at a speed of less than 20 km/h, the system will automatically recognize the parking spaces of the same type selected by the driver along both sides of the driving direction. When the system finds the parking spaces, the parking spaces will be displayed in red, yellow or green. The system regards the green preferred parking space as the target parking space by default, but the driver can also manually select other available parking spaces displayed on the screen as the target parking space by touching them.

Red: Unavailable parking space

Yellow: Available parking space

Green: Preferred parking space

Note: After selecting the automatic mode, the default is full parking space type, allowing the system search all the parking space types. If users select the parking space type, it can improve the success rate of finding a parking space of that particular type.



H91336O

Method 2: Manual mode selection

After selecting manual locating and the type of parking space, drive the vehicle at a speed lower than 20 km/h. When the screen shows the available parking area, stop the vehicle, drag and rotate the target parking space frame to move it to the available parking area. When the parking space frame is red, it means that the vehicle can not be parked in that area, and you need to adjust the position of the target parking space frame on the screen.

■ Parking control

With the target parking space confirmed, depress the brake pedal, touch the "Start parking-in" button, and release the brake pedal to start parking.



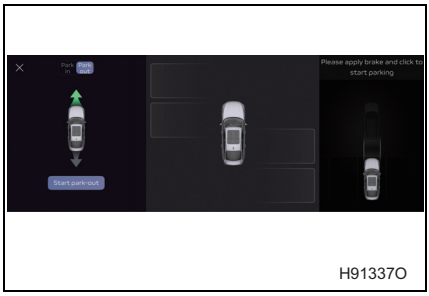
H91338O

The parking process can be controlled through the display during the parking.

During parking, the number of parking steps, current vehicle running status and peripheral image of vehicle will be displayed on the display.

Auto parking-out

■ Selecting the parking-out type

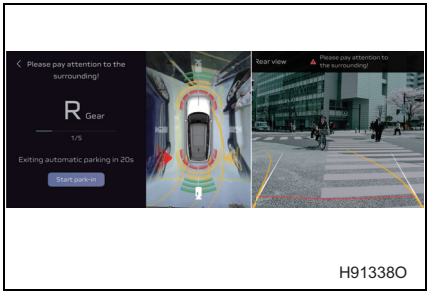


H91337O

Four types of parking-out can be selected through the multimedia display: Vertical backwards, vertical forward, parallel leftwards, and parallel rightwards.

■ Parking-out control

With the parking-out type selected, depress the brake pedal, touch the "Start parking-out" button, and release the brake pedal to start parking-out.



H91338O

The parking process can be controlled through the display during the parking-out.

■ **Parking operating conditions:**

- In the process of searching a parking space, the vehicle speed should be less than 20 km/h; when it exceeds 20 km/h, slowdown will be prompted.
- No one is operating the steering wheel during parking.
- ESC OFF switch is not activated.
- ESC/ABS/TCS is not working.
- APA/ESC/ABS/TCS/EPS has no fault.

■ **Parking exit conditions:**

- The vehicle speed is more than 30 km/h during the process of searching a parking space.
- The driver operates the steering wheel.
- Door is opened.
- The parking canceling button is pressed.
- Parking is not completed beyond the maximum number of movements after the automatic parking is activated.
- SACC is activated.
- ESC OFF switch is activated.
- ESC/ABS/TCS functional intervention.
- APA/ESC/ABS/TCS/EPS has fault.

■ **During the automatic parking process, it is necessary to observe the surrounding conditions of the vehicle throughout the entire process. When an emergency situation occurs and braking is required, the driver needs to touch the parking canceling button or depress the brake pedal or pull the EPB switch to stop the vehicle.**

CAUTION

- **The driver is the primary controller of the vehicle, and the APA is only a driver assistance system. Although the system can provide assistance to the driver during parking, it should not replace the driver to park the vehicle and the driver must be responsible for the parking. During parking, the driver should pay attention to the surrounding environment of the vehicle and control the vehicle if necessary to avoid danger.**
- **To ensure the success rate and safety of parking system, the system needs to be used in the following environmental conditions:**
  - The road surface is flat, the height of obstacle is less than 5 cm, and the slope does not exceed 4 degrees.
  - The parking space lines are clear and the parking space is large enough.
  - The weather is good, and the driver can see the environment near the parking space clearly and unobstructedly.
  - The driving road is dry and non-slip.
- **In the process of automatically searching for parking spaces, the following situations should be paid attention to:**
  - The vehicle needs to move close to the parking space. Failure to do so may cause the parking space not to be recognized.
  - The steering angle of the vehicle should not be excessive, otherwise it may cause failure of the parking space recognition.
  - The vehicle speed should not be more than 20 km/h, otherwise it may cause failure of the parking space recognition.
  - Rain, snow, fog or dark light conditions may reduce the recognition rate of parking spaces.
  - When the parking space is too small, the parking space lines are not clear, or the parking space is irregular, it may cause failure of parking space search.
  - In the process of searching for a parking space, the image can only assist the driver, and the driver needs to pay attention to the surrounding environment in real time.

⚠ CAUTION

■ **In the process of automatically parking, the following situations should be paid attention to:**

- The distance prompting function may have blind spots, and the driver needs to pay attention to the surrounding environment in real time.
- Insufficient parking space may cause failure of parking.
- Steep slope may cause failure of parking.
- Slippery roads may cause failure of parking.
- Uneven road surface, steps or low obstacles may cause failure of parking.
- During parking, the driver should not operate the pedals, shift lever and steering wheel, otherwise the parking process will be terminated.

■ **If a tire needs to be replaced, please make sure that the size of the replacement tire is exactly the same as that of the original tire, and check the four-wheel alignment parameters.**

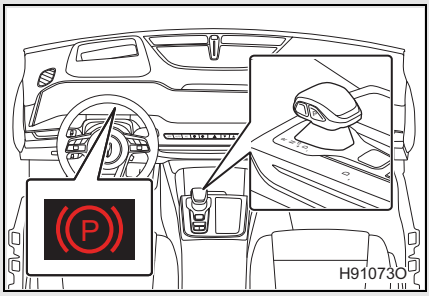
WARNING

- **Please pay special attention to people, animals and various obstacles around the vehicle, the sensor has a blind spot that cannot be detected.**
- **When searching for a parking space or during parking, please be aware that there are no obstacles in the parking space, such as stones, thin poles or tow bars, as the system may not detect such obstacles.**
- **The system may not recognize the surface or structure of certain objects (e.g., wire fences, fluffy snow, angular pillar, etc.). Therefore, please re-check that there is enough space in the parking space and surroundings before parking the vehicle.**
- **If the parking radar system detects an obstacle, the obstacle may disappear from the sensor detection range after the car approaches (this is highly likely to happen when detecting obstacles that are too high and too low), thus not detecting these items. Do not ignore the warning from the parking distance warning system, otherwise the vehicle may be at risk of collision.**
- **Due to the influence from various external sound field and electromagnetic field (e.g. other vehicles using ultrasonic ranging, air pressure, engine noise, electric control gears, induction loops, etc.), the system cannot achieve absolute immunity to interference.**
- **The immunity to interference and detection performance of ultrasonic ranging may be reduced by environmental conditions and obstacle reflection properties, which are determined by the physical properties of ultrasonic propagation.**
- **The installation position of the sensor has an important impact on the system performance, which is reflected in the reflection from the vehicle bumper surface itself, ground echo reflection and detection range.**

⚠ WARNING

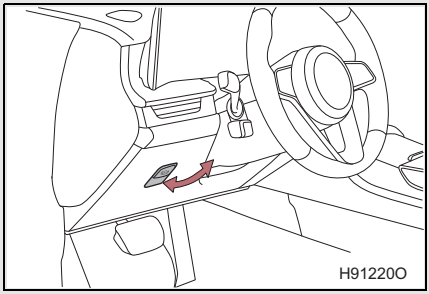
- **Avoid cleaning the sensor with a high pressure washer or steam cleaner to prevent damaging the sensor. When cleaning the vehicle, you should use a smaller water flow to rinse the sensor surface for a short time and keep at least 10 cm away.**
- **The propagation of sound waves in air is influenced by the physical properties of refraction and diffraction phenomena. Temperature differences in the air is one of the most important factors in generating a non-uniform propagation medium, leading to acoustic diffraction.**
- **The detection performance of ultrasonic detection equipment can be affected by the following factors:**
  - Hot vehicle exhaust.
  - High temperature asphalt road.
  - Summer breeze.
  - Temperature stratification.
- **When there is a temperature difference between the bumper and the ambient air (common in winter), temperature stratification may occur. This can lead to acoustic wave diffraction, and in certain bumper structures may pose a risk of false alarms due to reflected echoes.**
- **Some important factors that can lead to reduced detection range or failure of detection:**
  - Snow or sludge adhering to the bumper surface.
  - Plaster or ice adhering to the sensor surface.
  - High acoustic attenuation (e.g., in dry, hot environments).
  - Heavy rain or in foam.
  - Obstacles with wave-absorbing materials.
  - Flat type obstacles with angles facing the sensor and reflected echoes occurring only in a specific angular range.

8-1. Parking assist
Electronic parking brake (EPB) 314
AUTO HOLD 316
8-2. Get-off
Door opening warning 318



Automatic application/release of EPB

Depress the brake pedal, and set the shift lever to P position, so the EPB is automatically applied; set the shift lever from P to D/R position to automatically release the EPB.



Manual application/release of EPB

Depress the brake pedal and confirm that the vehicle is stationary, lift the EPB switch to apply the EPB; set the engine switch to "IG-ON" mode, depress the brake pedal, and press the EPB switch to release the EPB.

■ Other features of EPB

- HHC: The driver fastens the seat belt and closes the door. Before the engine starts, if the EPB is applied and the accelerator pedal is depressed, the system will automatically release the EPB, so that the car will not slip down the slope and start smoothly.
- CDP: When the car is running, continuously lift the EPB switch up, so the car will brake until it stops.

■ AUTO HOLD after power-off

When the driver stops the car and turns off the engine switch, the EPB is automatically applied.
The AUTO HOLD after power-off can be turned on and off through the driving settings interface of the in-vehicle infotainment system. (See P.178)

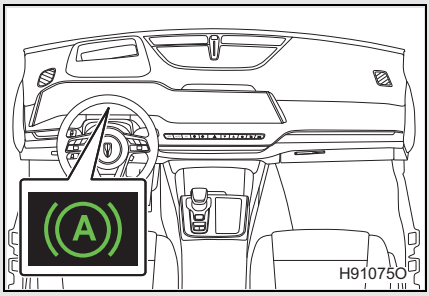
CAUTION

■ **Precautions before driving**

- Release the EPB completely. In case of failure (e.g., electrical failure), the rear brake disc locked by the EPB can only be unlocked by mechanical method. It is recommended that you contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer for handling.
- When the EPB is not released, the red indicator lamp is on. Driving the car at this time will cause the brake components to overheat, thus affecting the braking performance and aggravating the wear of the brake.

AUTO HOLD

When the AUTO HOLD is ready, depress the brake pedal to stop the car and activate the AUTO HOLD. At this time, if the brake pedal is released, the car will keep braking. When the accelerator pedal is depressed with the gear in D, the system will deactivate the AUTO HOLD to achieve a smooth start.



When the AUTO HOLD is activated, the AUTO HOLD indicator lamp of the instrument cluster comes on.

■ Turning on and off AUTO HOLD

The AUTO HOLD can be turned on and off through the vehicle settings interface of the in-vehicle infotainment system.
(See P.178)

■ **AUTO HOLD function**

- The AUTO HOLD can assist in holding the vehicle during engine start on slope. However, on steep slopes, the AUTO HOLD may not stop the car. In this case, it is necessary to apply the brake manually.
- After the AUTO HOLD is activated for a period of time, the EPB will take over the AUTO HOLD.

■ **Operating conditions of AUTO HOLD**

- The driver's door is closed.
- The driver has fastened the seat belt.
- The driver depresses the brake pedal until the car is stationary, and then releases the brake pedal.

⚠ WARNING

■ **Parking on slippery roads**

The AUTO HOLD does not prevent the car from moving if the ground grip of the tires is exceeded. Do not use this system on slippery roads.

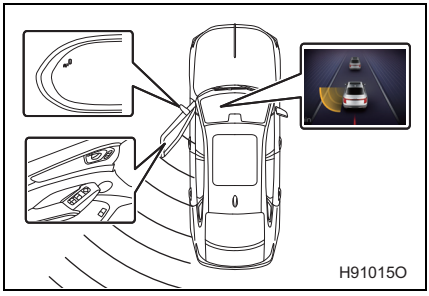
⚠ CAUTION

■ **When parking**

The AUTO HOLD cannot be used for long-term parking. If the car needs to be parked for a long time, please apply the EPB.

Door opening warning

The system assesses the risk by considering the relative position, relative speed and relative acceleration of the car to the side and rear oncoming vehicles, as well as the door opening intention of the driver and passengers. If there is danger in opening the doors at this time, the driver will be prompted by audible and visual alarms.



When the gear is not in R and the vehicle speed is 0 ~ 3 km/h, if another vehicle approaches within 2 m laterally and 30 m longitudinally behind the car, the warning indicator lamp on the exterior rearview mirror on the corresponding side comes on, the ambient lamp on the door on the corresponding side remains on, and the instrument cluster displays alarm information. At this time, if the door is opened, the indicator lamp flashes, and the ambient lamp on the door on the corresponding side flashes, and the system issues an audible alarm to warn the driver that it is dangerous to open the door. When the vehicle speed is greater than 3 km/h, the function is turned off.

Turning on/off door opening warning system

The door opening warning system can be turned on and off through the vehicle settings interface of the in-vehicle infotainment system. (See P. 178)

■ **The door opening warning system may not give an alarm or may expand the alarm range under the following conditions:**

- A large amount of snow or ice gathers near radar sensors.
- There are fixed obstacles on the roadside (e.g., tunnel wall, cement barrier of viaduct, metal billboard, etc.).

⚠ CAUTION

- **Be careful not to impact the rear bumper during parking. Otherwise, the sensors in the bumper may be shifted or damaged, which may cause the system to shut down automatically or affect the system function.**
- **In order to ensure the normal operation of the system, the sensors in the bumper must be kept clean and not be covered by other objects.**
- **Only the paint approved by our company can be applied to the rear bumper. Other kinds of paint may cause limited functions or failure of the system.**
- **If this system does not work normally, please turn it off immediately, and contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer for repair.**
- **After relevant components of the door opening warning system are repaired, calibration is required. For details, please contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.**
- **The door opening warning system is only an auxiliary reminder, and cannot completely avoid vehicle collision. Before opening the door and getting off, please check the rearview mirrors and give a glance to rear areas.**
- **Under special working conditions such as wet weather, the door opening warning system may give false alarms or miss alarms, which are normal phenomena.**
- **When the rear radar is blocked, the system will not work. Therefore, it needs to be cleaned in time.**

⚠ WARNING

- **The door opening warning system is only a driver assistance system. Do not rely on it too much. The driver must drive carefully.**
- **The driver is the most important controller of the car. The door opening warning system is only an auxiliary reminder. The driver must always have control of the vehicle and take full responsibility for the car.**
- **Turn off the radar detection system when a trailer or some accessories (e.g., bicycle bracket) are installed at the rear. Otherwise, the radio waves emitted by the radar may be blocked, resulting in abnormal operation of the system.**
- **The door opening warning system can detect targets such as car, electric motorcycle and bicycle. If target vehicles have characteristics of irregular shape, modification, painted surface, etc., the recognition effect cannot be guaranteed. The recognition of pedestrians, animals or other objects cannot be guaranteed too. At this time, the driver must drive carefully.**

Fault and emergency handling

9

9-1. Important information

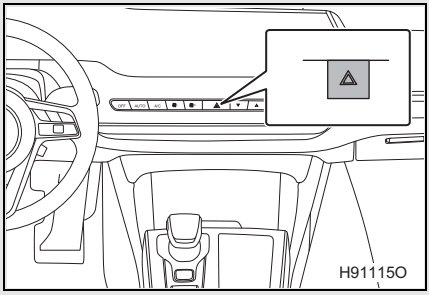
Hazard warning lamp 322
SOS alarm* 323
Emergency call device* 324

9-2. Countermeasures in case of an emergency

If the car needs to be towed 329
If the car is found to be abnormal 334
If you have a flat tire 335
If the engine cannot start 343
If the key is lost 344
If the key fails to work normally 345
If the door cannot be locked normally 348
If battery or super-capacitor power is low* 350
If your car overheats 355
If car gets trapped 357
If driving on water-logged road 359
If you have a burst tire 360
If an accident occurs 361
Emergency opening of trunk lid 362

Hazard warning lamp

When the car breaks down, please stop by the roadside and turn on the hazard warning lamp; if the car cannot be moved due to breakdown, please turn on the hazard warning lamp and put a warning triangle behind the car. If necessary, please wear a reflective vest.



Press the hazard warning lamp switch to make all turn signal lamps flash; press it again to turn off the hazard warning lamp.

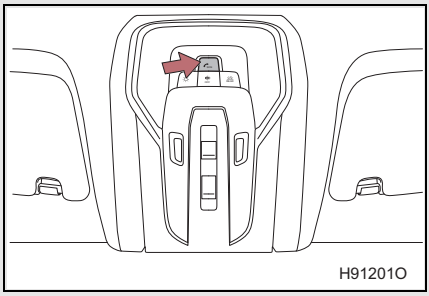
CAUTION

■ **Preventing low battery**

When the engine is not running, if it is not necessary to use the hazard warning lamp, turn it off.

SOS alarm*

If you need help in an emergency, press and hold the SOS alarm switch for 3 seconds. The emergency rescue phone will start dialing, and the SOS lamp will change from always on to flashing. After receiving your call for help, the background service will coordinate appropriate rescue assistance.



SOS alarm switch is located behind the front interior lamp.

⚠ CAUTION

- **Please use the SOS alarm switch when needed.**
- **The SOS alarm function requires an Internet connection to operate. In some regions, vehicles may not be equipped with this function or it may be temporarily unavailable. For detailed configuration and usage information, please consult authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.**

Emergency call device*

Your car is equipped with an emergency call device. This device is used to report accidents or other emergency situations to the emergency service department.

Overview

■ **Emergency call uses the GSM/UMTS network to call the ERA-GLONASS emergency response system.**

When driver or passenger presses the "SOS" button, a call can be made manually, or if the built-in sensor in the device records car rollover during traffic accident, endangering lives of person in the car, a call can be made automatically.

■ **Automatic mode**

Emergency call in automatic mode is provided during ignition and when traffic accident occurs.

■ **Manual mode**

Emergency call in manual mode can be made when ignition switch is turned on and off.

■ **Emergency call function**

After establishing a connection with ERA-GLONASS system, this device will transmit a set of data, including information such as vehicle location coordinates, vehicle type and fuel that vehicle is used, as well as other critical information required for immediate response of emergency service. So as to provide help as soon as possible. After the data transmission is completed, voice connection will be established with the system operator, and for this purpose, the device includes microphone and speaker.

"SOS" button, microphone and device status indicator lamp are located behind the driver's sun visor.

There is also an "Additional function" button on the ceiling for canceling emergency call and access service function.

Emergency call

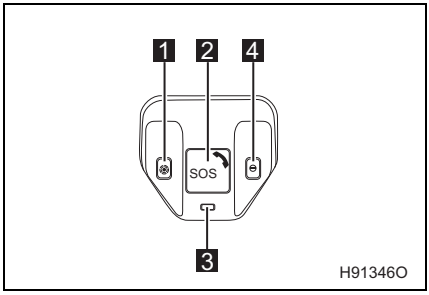
If there is an accident or any emergency situation that requires emergency service, please operate as follows:

Step 1 Check the emergency call status indicator lamp. If indicator lamp flashes or lights up in green, it indicates that the accident has been confirmed in automatic mode and an emergency service call has been made (skip item 2).

Step 2 If the device has not switched to this mode yet, press the "SOS" button.

CAUTION

- **The time to press the button must be at least 2 seconds!**



1 "Additional function" button

2 SOS button

3 Microphone status indicator lamp

4 Microphone

If a connection to emergency service has not been established and the call was manually initiated, emergency service call can be canceled by pressing "Additional function" button.

CAUTION

- **During emergency call, it is prohibited to press "SOS" button. An incorrect call can cause damage to the ERA-GLONASS infrastructure and interfere with the normal operation of operator.**

Step 3 When an emergency call starts, the voice message "Emergency call is in progress" will be played. Once connection is established with the emergency service department, a set of data will be transmitted, which includes the information required for rapid assistance. It will take up to 20 seconds for information transmission. Wait for the data transmission to end and establish a voice connection with the emergency response service operator. In order to facilitate communication with the operator, other sound sources (audio system) in the car will be turned off. Answer the operator's question and try to speak in the direction of user interface unit.

If there are any problems (such as unstable GSM network signal), the device will attempt to make emergency call several times. If the connection to emergency response service still cannot be established, the indicator lamp on the user interface unit will flash in red and a voice message "Emergency call cannot be made" will also be played. In this case, please try calling the emergency service in any other way possible.

Voice connection to emergency response service can only be completed at the initiative of service operator. After connection is completed (green indicator lamp goes off), if necessary, you can remake the emergency call by pressing corresponding button. After the emergency call ends, emergency service operator can make a callback for communication and the connection with personnel in the cabin will be automatically established.

Self-diagnosis

Emergency call has the function of self diagnosing the performance of all its main components. Every time when ignition, self-diagnosis program will be activated, and the emergency call status indicator will light up in red for 3-5 seconds. In the case of ignition, self-diagnosis will also be regularly turned on. If a fault is detected during self-diagnosis process, the status indicator will remain illuminated in red (during ignition).

To locate the fault, you can switch the emergency call to test mode. Switch to test mode only when ignition is on and the vehicle is not moving.

To switch to test mode within 1 minute, briefly press the "Additional function" button, and then follow the instructions played by the device through speakers. During the inspection of individual component, the device will report the integrity of each component. Switching to test mode is prohibited within 2 hours after the end of emergency call.

⚠ CAUTION

- **If there is a fault, the correct operation of emergency call cannot be guaranteed. Please contact the authorized service center as soon as possible for troubleshooting.**

Emergency call system is equipped with built-in backup battery, operation is possible even if the car is damaged/turned off resulting from an accident.

⚠ CAUTION

- **If you turn off ignition switch, the backup battery built into the emergency call will discharge. Therefore, when the main battery is subsequently connected until emergency call backup battery is fully recovered to charge, self-diagnosis can detect a fault. However, this is not the reason to contact service center and replace it. Automatically charge the backup battery when the ignition switch is turned on and the battery temperature is positive. After being fully charged, the usage time can reach 10 hours.**

Status indicator

The following table lists the possible options for displaying device status and their corresponding operating modes:

Working mode	Status indication
Start self-diagnosis when ignition	Indicator lamp illuminates in red for 4 seconds
Test mode	Indicator lamp flashes alternately in red and green
Fault is found	Indicator lamp continuously illuminate in red
Emergency call: dialing and data transmission	Indicator lamp flashes in green
Emergency call: initialization and voice connection with operator	Indicator lamp continuously illuminate in green
Emergency call is unavailable	Indicator lamp flashes in red

Value added service

The emergency call device installed in your car has implemented the following additional services:

- Remote monitoring of car position and connected sensor status;
- Driving style control;
- The function of phone call program number.

By default, these functions are unavailable, but they can be activated if you contact the nearest representative of device manufacturer's regional network.

If the car needs to be towed

If the car needs to be towed, FAW suggests that a rollback carrier tow truck is used and the towing is handled by an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer or a professional rescue company.

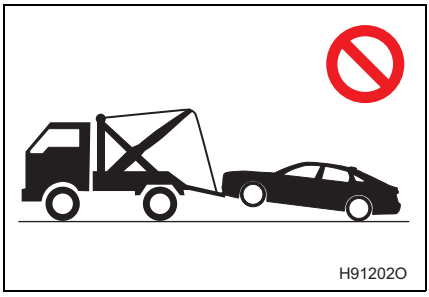
During the towing process, safety chains shall be used and all laws and regulations of the country shall be complied with.

Before towing

If the following conditions occur, the transmission may be faulty. Please contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer before towing the car.

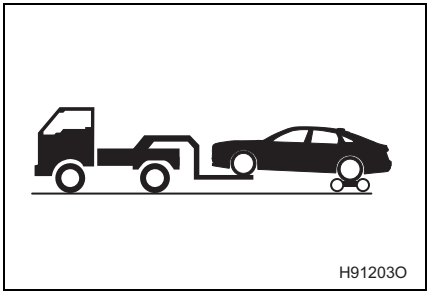
- The engine is running normally, but the car cannot move.
- The transmission has abnormal noise or vibration.

It is strictly forbidden to use a bumper lift tow truck for towing



Do not use a bumper lift tow truck for towing, as it may cause damage to the car body.

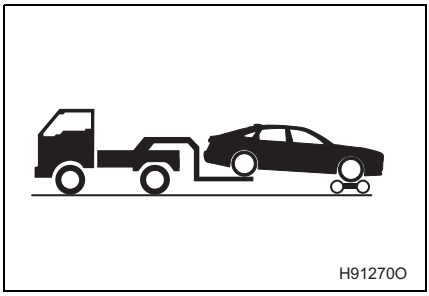
Towing from the front with a wheel lift tow truck



Locate the towing trolley under the rear wheels and put the car into lifting mode.

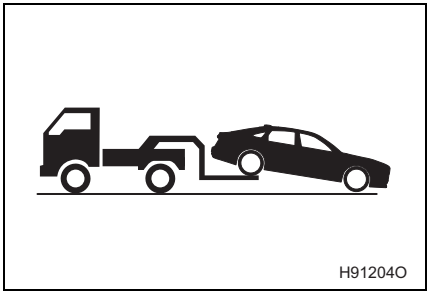
Towing from the rear with a wheel lifting tow truck

■ 4WD



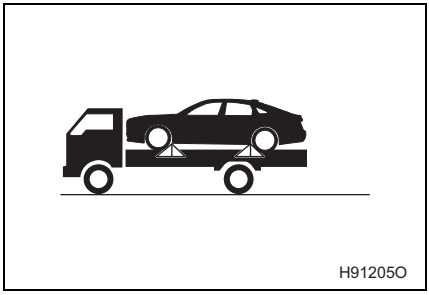
Locate the towing trolley under the front wheels and put the car into lifting mode.

■ 2WD



The front wheels and suspension of the car must be in good condition and put the car into lifting mode.

Towing with a rollback carrier tow truck



Apply the EPB ,put the car into lifting mode and turn off the engine switch.

Use wedges under 4 wheels to prevent the car from moving.

As shown in the figure, tie the tires to the bottom plate of the tow truck to secure the car.

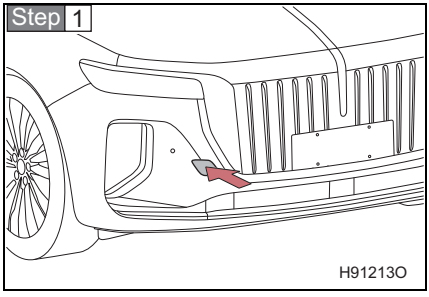
Emergency towing

If the carrier tow truck cannot be found in an emergency, fasten the towing cable or towing chain to the towing eye and set the shift lever to N position to temporarily tow the car. This method can only be used for towing forward at low speed (⩽ 50 km/h) and short distance (50 km) on hard pavement.

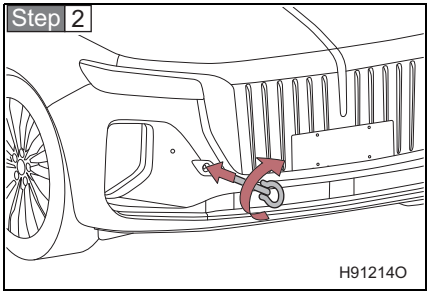
The driver must sit in the car and control the steering wheel and brake pedal. The wheels, drivetrain, steering wheel and brakes must be in good condition.

Emergency towing steps

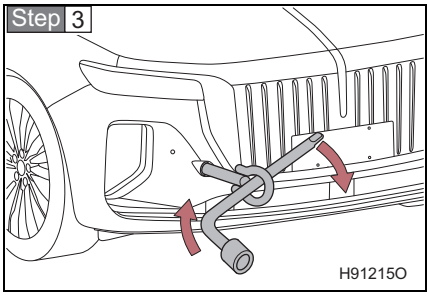
The following procedures use the towing from front as an example, and for reference if towing from rear.



Press the left side of towing eye hole cover to detach the towing eye hole cover.



Insert the towing eye into the hole and tighten it slightly by hand.



Tighten the towing eye with the auxiliary tool.

Step 4 Secure the towing cable or towing chain firmly to the towing eye.
Be careful not to damage the car body.

Step 5 Start the vehicle, release the EPB and set the shift lever to N position.

■ **Towing**

- If the engine is not running, the power assist for the brakes and steering wheel will not work, making braking and steering more difficult.
- If the shift lever cannot be set to N position, do not carry out emergency towing. Otherwise, the car may be damaged during towing.

■ **Towing a trailer**

FAW recommends that you do not use the car to tow a trailer, or install any towing equipment or tow any wheelchair, scooter, bicycle, etc. using the towing equipment. The car is not designed for towing any trailer or as a mounting carrier of towing equipment.

■ **Towing eye**

The towing eye is stored in the driver's tool box. (See P.336)

⚠ WARNING

Please observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in serious personal injury or even death.

■ **Before towing**

Be sure to transport the car with all the driving wheels or all four wheels off the ground.

If the car is towed with the driving wheels touching the ground, the drivetrain and related parts may be damaged.

■ **Towing**

- For towing with ropes, the tow truck starts only when the ropes are tightened, and the ropes must be kept tightened all the time during towing. Otherwise, excessive pulling force will be generated on the towing eye and ropes, resulting in damage to the towing eye or ropes and personal injury.
- Do not set the engine switch to "IG-OFF" mode. The steering wheel may be locked and inoperable.

■ **Installation of towing eye on the car**

Ensure that the towing eye is securely installed. Otherwise, the towing eye may loosen during towing, which may cause accidents.

⚠ CAUTION

■ **During towing with a wheel lift tow truck, prevent damage to the car.**

When the car is lifted, make sure that there is enough ground clearance at the landing end of the car for towing. Otherwise, the car may be damaged during towing.

■ **During towing with a bumper lift tow truck, prevent damage to the car.**

Regardless of towing at the front or rear of the car, do not use a bumper lift tow truck.

■ **During towing with a rollback carrier tow truck, prevent damage to the car.**

- Do not pass the wedges. Otherwise, the tires may be damaged.
- Do not tie other parts (such as suspension) except for tires.

If the car is found to be abnormal

If any of the following symptoms are found, the car may need to be adjusted or repaired. Please contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer as soon as possible.

■ Visible symptoms

- There is a liquid leaked under the car.
  (It is normal for the A/C to drip water after use, and for the drain hole on the exhaust pipe may also drip water.)
- Flat tire or uneven tire wear.
- Continuously and abnormally high coolant temperature.

■ Audible symptoms

- Change in the exhaust sound.
- Excessive tire noise during turning.
- Abnormal noise related to suspension system.
- Engine-related noise.

■ Operation symptoms

- Misfire, instability or unstable operation of the engine.
- Noticeable decrease in power.
- The car pulls to one side seriously during braking.
- The car pulls to one side seriously during driving on a flat road.
- The brake system malfunctions, or the brake pedal feels soft and nearly reaches the floor.

Removing the leaking tire and replacing it with a spare tire.

⚠ WARNING

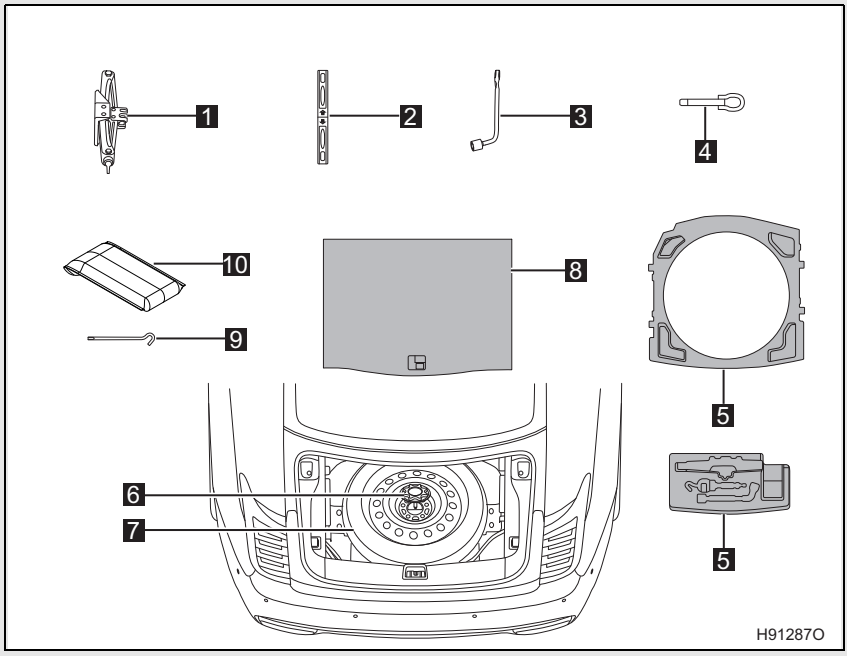
■ Do not drive the car with flat tires

- Do not continue driving the car when any tire leaks.
  Otherwise, even if the driving distance is short, tires and the car may be damaged, which will lead to unfeasible repair and even cause traffic accidents.

■ Before jacking up the car

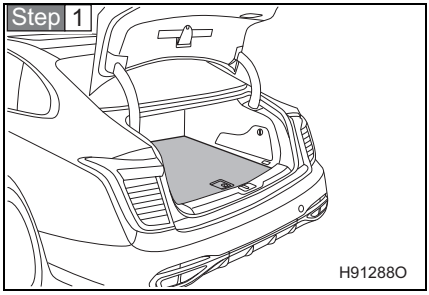
- Park the car on a solid and level road.
- Apply the EPB.
- Set the shift lever to P position.
- Shut down the engine.
- Turn on the hazard warning lamp and place the warning triangle.

■ Spare tire and driver's tools

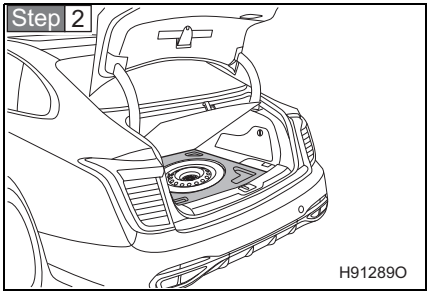


1 Jack
2 Warning triangle
3 Tire wrench
4 Towing eye
5 Driver's tool box
6 Spare tire retainer
7 Spare tire
8 Trunk carpet
9 Jack crank
10 Reflective vest assembly

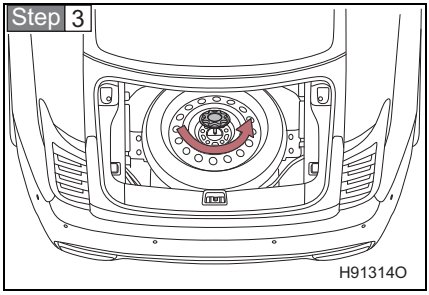
Taking out the spare tire



Take out the trunk carpet.



Take out the driver's tool box.



Loosen and remove the spare tire retainer and take out the spare tire.

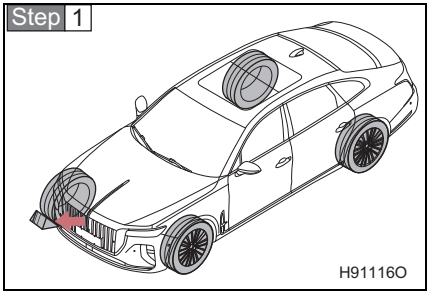
⚠ WARNING

■ Handling the spare tire

Be careful not to get fingers or other parts of your body trapped between the spare tire and car body.

Replacing the leaking tire

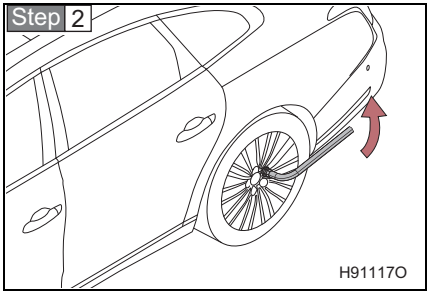
Step 1



Wedge the tire.

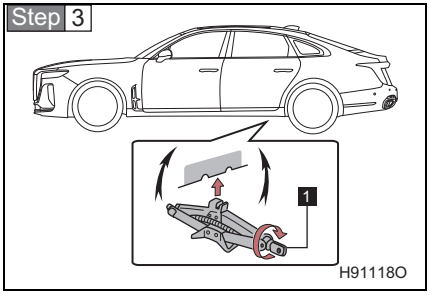
Leaking tire		Wedge position
Front wheel	Left	Behind the right rear tire
	Right	Behind the left rear tire
Rear wheel	Left	Before the right front tire
	Right	Before the left front tire

Step 2



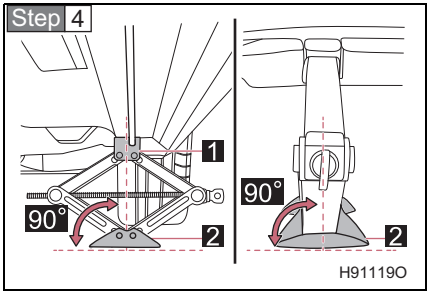
Loosen the wheel nuts slightly (one turn) using the tire wrench.

Step 3

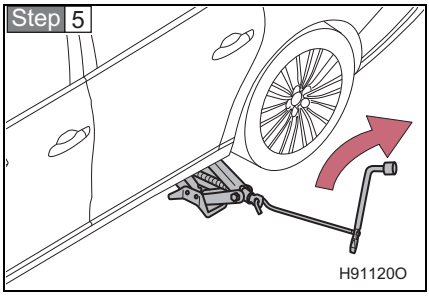


Turn the "1" position of the tire jack by hand until the jack notch contacts the jacking point of the car.

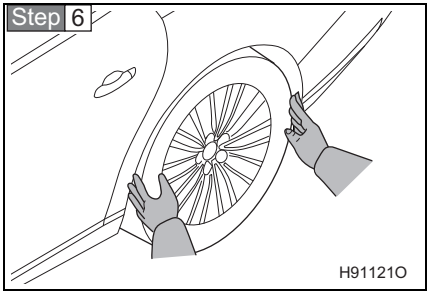
The jacking point mark is under the door sill plate. Be sure to support the car at the jacking point.



Correct the position of the jack so that the notch "1" aligns the jacking point and the bottom plate "2" is flat on the ground. At this time, the bottom plate "2" must be right under the jacking point.



Insert the jack crank into the opening of the jack, then combine the tire wrench with the jack crank and rotate the tire wrench to lift the car so that the wheels are slightly off the ground.



Remove all wheel nuts, and then remove the wheel.

When the wheel is placed on the ground, the spokes should be placed upwards to avoid scratching the rim surface.

⚠ WARNING

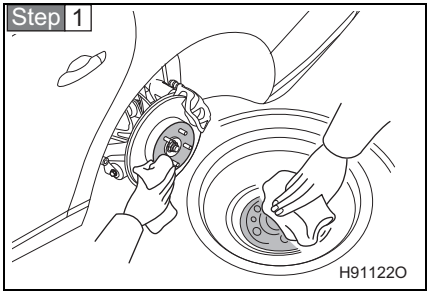
■ Replacing the leaking tire

- Do not touch the areas around wheels or brakes immediately after the car runs.

  After the car runs, the areas around wheels and brakes will be very hot. When changing tires, avoid touching them with hands, feet, or other body parts to prevent burns.
- Failure to observe the following precautions may result in loose wheel nuts and detached tires, resulting in serious personal injury and even death.
  - After the wheel is replaced, use a torque wrench to tighten the wheel nuts to the specified torque.
  - Do not install any severely damaged wheel trim, as it may fall off the wheel while the car is running.
  - When installing wheels, only use wheel nuts specially designed for that wheel.
  - If there are cracks or deformations on the wheel bolts or nuts, please contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer to inspect the car.
- Be sure to tighten the wheel nuts correctly and firmly.

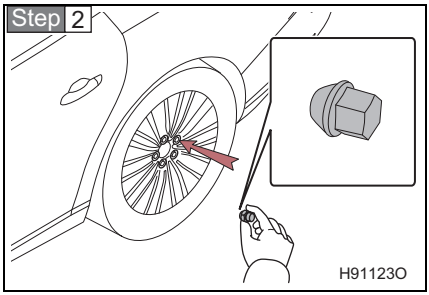
  It is dangerous that the wheel nuts are tightened improperly or become loose. Wheels may shake or fall off. This may cause a loss of control and lead to serious accidents.

Installing the spare tire

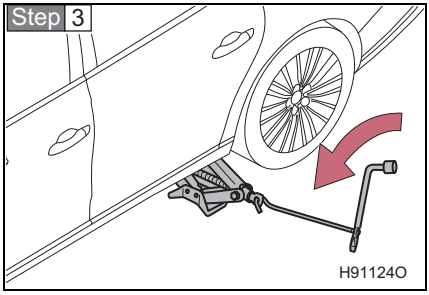


Remove dirt or foreign matters from the mating surface of the wheel.

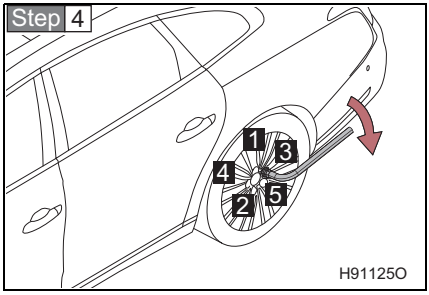
If there are foreign matters on the mating surface of the wheel, the wheel nuts may loosen while the car is in motion, which may cause the wheel to detach from the car.



Install the wheel and tighten the wheel nuts evenly by hand.



Lower the car.



Tighten the wheel nuts with force in the order shown in the figure.

Tightening torque:
140 ± 10 N·m

⚠ WARNING

■ **After using tools and jacks**

Before driving, ensure that all tools and jacks are firmly secured in their storage positions to minimize the risk of personal injury in the event of a collision or emergency braking.

■ **Cleaning before wheel installation**

If there are foreign matters on the mating surface of the wheel, the wheel nuts may loosen while the car is in motion, which may cause the wheel to detach from the car.

■ **Installing the spare tire**

- Never apply oil or grease to wheel bolts.

  Oil and grease may over-tighten the wheel nuts, resulting in damage to the bolt or spoke wheel. In addition, oil or grease may cause wheel nuts to become loose and cause the wheel to fall off, thus causing accidents, serious injury or even death. Please remove all oil or grease from wheel bolts or nuts.
- After the wheel is replaced, please go to an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer as soon as possible to tighten the wheel nuts to the standard torque with a torque wrench.
- If the bolt holes of the wheel are damaged or cracked, please contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer for inspection and replacement of the wheel.

⚠ CAUTION

■ **Do not drive the car with flat tires**

Do not continue driving the car when any tire leaks.

Otherwise, even if the driving distance is short, tires and the car may be damaged, which will lead to unfeasible repair and even cause traffic accidents.

If the engine cannot start

If the engine does not start even after correct engine start steps are performed (see P.207), consider the following reasons.

■ Even if correct engine start steps are followed, the engine cannot start.

The failure may be caused by one of the following conditions:

- There is not enough fuel in the fuel tank of the car.
  Fuel the car.
- The engine may spill fuel.
  Try to start the engine again according to the normal engine start steps. (See P.207)
- There is a fault in engine IMMO system. (See P.64)

■ Starter speed is slow, interior lamps and headlamps are dim, or horns do not sound or sound with low volume

The failure may be caused by one of the following conditions:

- Battery power is low. (See P.350)
- The terminals of the battery may be loose or corroded.

■ Starter is not running

An electrical failure (e.g., open circuit) may cause engine starting system failure.

■ The starter does not operate, the interior lamps and headlamps do not come on, or the horn does not sound.

The failure may be caused by one of the following conditions:

- The terminals of the battery may be disconnected.
- The battery may be depleted.

If the faults cannot be eliminated or the maintenance steps are unclear, please contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.

If the key is lost

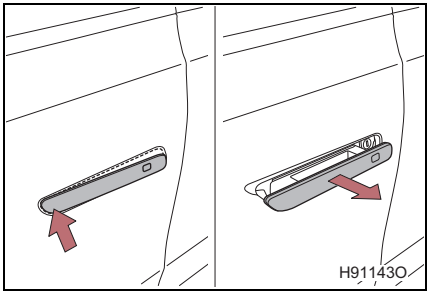
If the smart key is lost or stolen, please provide the remaining keys to an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer as soon as possible. After the keys are re-matched, the lost or stolen key will become invalid. Unauthorized modification or non-genuine spare parts may lead to system failure.

If the key fails to work normally

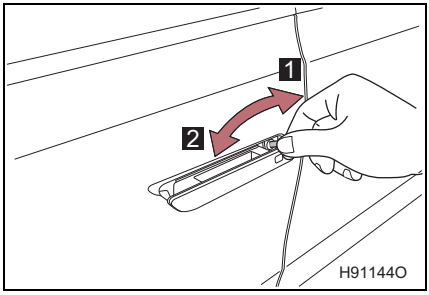
If communication between the key and the car is interrupted (see P.94) or the key cannot be used due to insufficient battery power, the PEPS and wireless remote control will be invalid. At this time, the following steps can be followed to open the doors or start the engine.

Locking and unlocking the doors

▶ Concealed door handle



Press the front of driver's door handle to raise it, then pull the middle part and pull it out vertically.

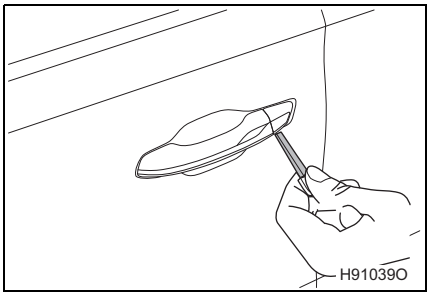


Hold the door handle, lock and unlock the door with a mechanical key.

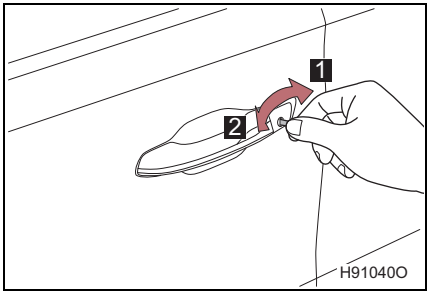
1 Unlocking the door

2 Locking the door

▶ Cross-bar pull-out type door handle



Use the mechanical key to remove the door keyhole cover.



Use the mechanical key to lock and unlock the doors.

1 Unlocking the door

2 Locking the door

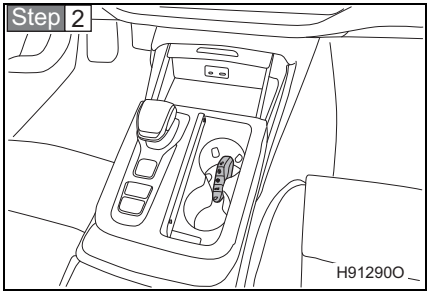
Backup start mode

When the key battery is depleted, the backup start mode should be used.

Step 1 Set the shift lever to P position, depress the brake pedal and press the engine switch.

At this time, the multifunction display in the instrument cluster will prompt that the key cannot be recognized.

Step 2



Open the front cup holder, and then put the smart key in the cup holder.

Step 3 Depress the brake pedal and press the engine switch to start the engine.

If the engine still can't start, please contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.

Replacing key battery

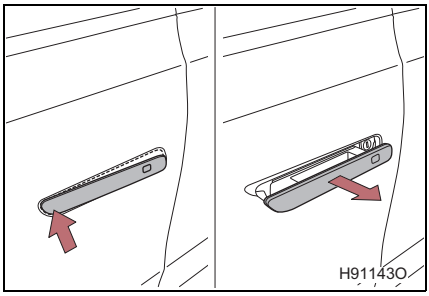
If the key battery is low, replace it in time. (See P.406)

If the door cannot be locked normally

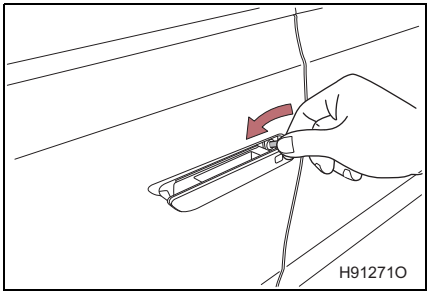
Doors cannot be locked by PEPS or wireless remote control when the key battery is depleted. At this time, the following steps can be followed to lock doors.

Locking the driver's door

▶ Concealed door handle

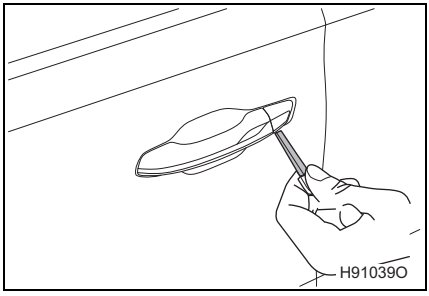


Press the front of driver's door handle to raise it, then pull the middle part and pull it out vertically.

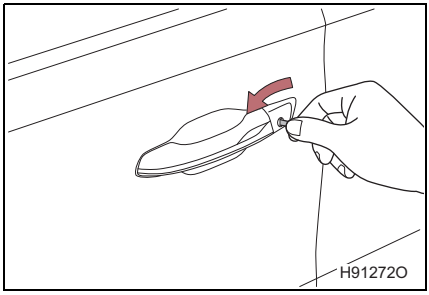


Use the mechanical key to lock the doors.

▶ Cross-bar pull-out type door handle

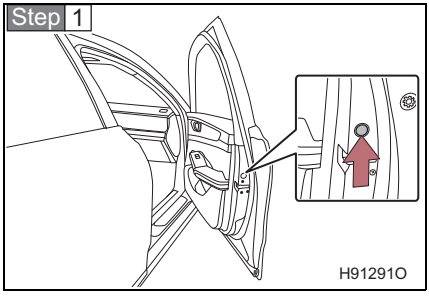


Use the mechanical key to remove the door keyhole cover.

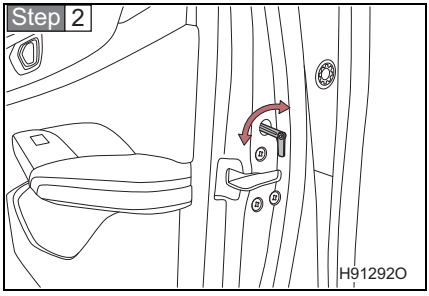


Use the mechanical key to lock the doors.

Locking the front passenger's door and rear passenger's doors



Disengage the cover of the mechanical lock switch on the door on the corresponding side.



Close the door after locking with the mechanical key.

Front passenger's and right rear doors: turn the switch clockwise;

Left rear door: turn the switch counterclockwise.

If battery or super-capacitor power is low*

If the battery or super-capacitor power is low, the following measures can be adopted to start the engine.

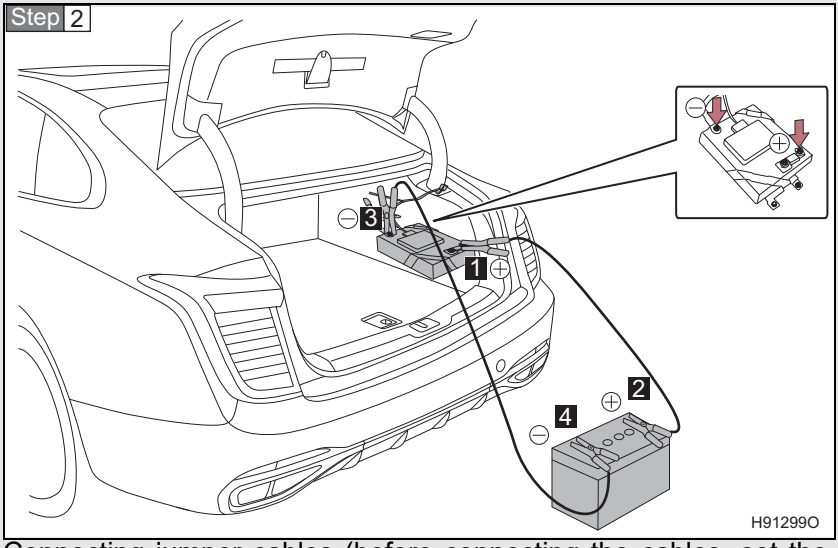
You can contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer or a professional repair shop.

If you have a set of jumper cables (length is not less than 2.5 m and diameter is not less than 50 mm^2) and another vehicle with a 12 V battery, you can jump start your car according to the following steps.

■ Jumping super-capacitor*

Step 1 Open the access cover guard on the right side of trunk.

Step 2



Connecting jumper cables (before connecting the cables, set the engine switches of both vehicles to "IG-OFF" mode).

1 Connect to the super-capacitor positive (+) terminal of your car (right stud).

2 Connect to the battery positive (+) terminal of the other vehicle.

3 Connect to the super-capacitor negative (-) terminal of your car.

4 Connect to the battery negative (-) terminal of the other vehicle.

When jumping, please note that the distance between the battery and the super-capacitor should be not less than 1.5 m.

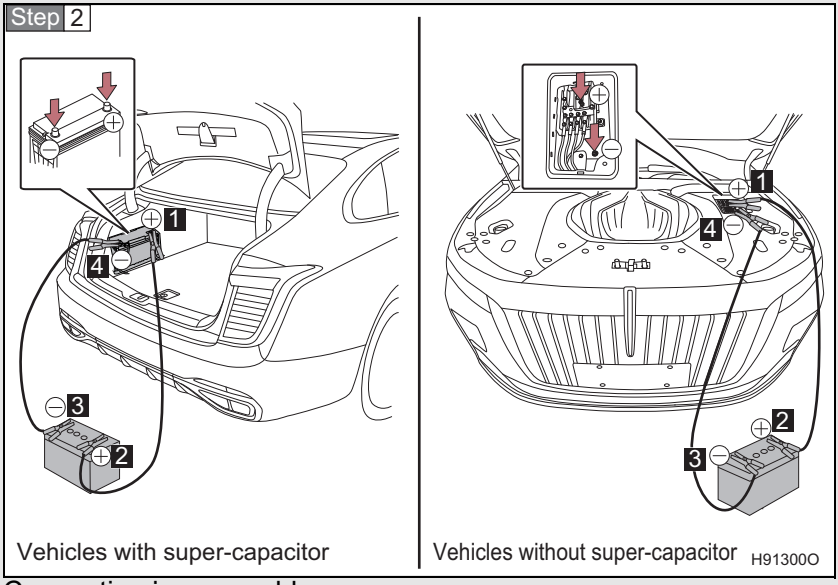
Step 3 Remove the jumper cables in the reverse order of connection after charging for 20 seconds.

If the engine does not start successfully after jumping super-capacitor, please charge the battery as follows. Vehicles without super-capacitor can charge the battery directly.

■ Jumping battery

Step 1 Open the access cover guard on the left side of trunk or the access cover on the left trim cover of engine compartment.

Step 2



Vehicles with super-capacitor

Vehicles without super-capacitor H91300O

Connecting jumper cables

1 Connect to the positive (+) terminal of your car.

2 Connect to the battery positive (+) terminal of the other vehicle.

3 Connect to the battery negative (-) terminal of the other vehicle.

4 Connect to the negative (-) terminal of your car. (Also, it can connect to metal parts on engine body)

Step 3 Start the engine of the other vehicle. Increase the engine speed slightly and keep it for about 5 min to recharge the battery of your car.

Step 4 Keep the engine of the other car running, turn the engine switch of this car to "IG-ON" mode, and start the engine.

Step 5 Remove the jumper cables in the exact reverse order of connection once the engine is started successfully.

■ **Preventing low battery/super-capacitor power**

- After engine stalls, turn off the headlamps and in-vehicle infotainment system, and ensure that the car is locked.
- When the car is not in use for a long time, it is recommended to start the car and keep it running for more than 20 minutes every 10 days or so.
- Turn off any unnecessary electrical equipment when the car is driven at low speed for a long time (e.g. in traffic jams).

■ **Charging battery/super-capacitor**

- Due to natural discharge and the wear-out effect of certain electrical consumers, the power stored in the battery and super-capacitor is gradually depleted even when the car is not in use. If the car is not in use for a long time, the battery power may be exhausted and the engine may fail to be started.
- The battery can be charged by a charger or another vehicle. When charging via a charger, be sure to turn off the engine switch and disconnect the ground wire.
- The super-capacitor can be charged through auxiliary 12 V lead-acid battery or 12 V battery on other vehicles. Before charging, be sure to turn off the engine switches of both vehicles.

■ **Replacing battery**

- Use the battery that meets the standard of genuine part.
- Confirm that super-capacitor power is sufficient after removing the battery, and then install a new battery.

■ **Replacing super-capacitor**

- Use the super-capacitor that meets the standard of genuine part.
- Before installation, confirm that super-capacitor power is sufficient, then install it.

⚠ CAUTION

■ **Handling jumper cables**

- Only use a 12 V auxiliary battery.
- When connecting or disconnecting jumper cables, do not tangle the cables with the cooling fan or engine belt.
- Charging/discharging capability of super-capacitor is particularly strong. Once short circuit occurs, sparks may be generated and operator may be burned. When charging or jumping cables, be careful to avoid short circuit.

⚠ WARNING

■ **Removing terminal of battery/super-capacitor**

- Be sure to disconnect the negative (-) terminal first. If the positive (+) terminal is removed and it touches any metal in the surrounding area, it may spark and cause a fire, possibly an electric shock, resulting in serious injury or even death.
- Because the battery and the super-capacitor are dual power components, the vehicle may still be in a charged state when the single power wiring is removed, make sure to prevent short circuit.
- Do not start the vehicle before the super-capacitor positive/negative terminal or the controller connector is not installed, otherwise there is a risk of damage to the vehicle.

■ **It is strictly prohibited to use all kinds of equipment to perform jumping, charging/discharging on 48 V battery. (See P.391)**

■ **Once the engine is started after charging, drive it to an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer for inspection as soon as possible.**

■ **Preventing fire or explosion of battery/super-capacitor**

The battery/super-capacitor may release flammable gases, therefore, be sure to observe the following precautions to avoid accidental ignition:

- Make sure that the jumper cables are connected to the correct terminals and will not accidentally touch any terminals other than the correct ones.
- Do not let the other end of the jumper cable connected to the "+" terminal touch any other part or metal surface in this area, such as bracket or unpainted metal.
- Do not let the "+" and "-" clamps of the jumper cable contact with each other.
- Do not use any open flames, smoke or use matches or lighters near the battery/super-capacitor.

⚠ WARNING

■ Precautions for battery

The battery contains toxic and corrosive acidic electrolytes. Therefore, be sure to observe the following precautions when handling the battery:

- Always wear goggles when handling the battery to prevent any battery electrolyte from coming into contact with your skin and clothing or car body.
- Do not lean over the battery.
- If the battery electrolyte comes into contact with your skin or eyes, rinse the contact area immediately with water and seek medical attention. Cover the contact area with a damp sponge or a piece of damp cloth until you see a doctor.
- Always wash your hands after handling the battery bracket, terminals, and other battery-related parts.
- Keep children away from the battery.

■ Precautions for super-capacitor

- The voltage for charging super-capacitor is strictly prohibited to exceed 15 V. It is strictly prohibited to use all kinds of chargers to charge the super-capacitor, even a device specifically designed for battery charging.
- Sparks may be generated at the moment of circuit connection during jumping, which is normal. Make sure that the jumper cables are connected securely. It is strictly prohibited to connect reversely or generate electric sparks when wiring the super-capacitor side.
- If irritating odor is smelt during the charging process, you should immediately remove the negative terminal wire of the external battery (be careful to avoid electric sparks during operation, and the removed jumper cables cannot be short connected). It is prohibited to operate the super-capacitor side until the odor dissipates.
- If the vehicle battery and the super-capacitor are depleted at the same time, it is prohibited to charge the super-capacitor and the battery simultaneously.
- After charging the super-capacitor and starting the vehicle, if the instrument cluster still prompts that the super-capacitor system is faulty, please contact the authorized FAW Hongqi dealer to check the vehicle immediately. It is strictly prohibited to charge the super-capacitor repeatedly many times or for a long time.

If your car overheats

The car may be overheated under the following conditions.

- The alarm for high coolant temperature is issued or a power drop is felt.
- Steam comes out beneath the hood.

■ Countermeasures

Step 1 Park the car in a safe place and turn off the A/C system.

Step 2 Check whether steam comes out from beneath the hood.

If steam comes out:
Turn off the engine switch. After steam dissipates, carefully lift the hood and restart the engine.

If steam does not come out:
Keep the engine running and carefully lift the hood.

Step 3 Check whether the cooling fan is operating.

If the fan runs:
Wait until the engine coolant temperature starts to decrease (engine coolant temperature is displayed on the instrument cluster), and stop the engine.

If the fan does not run:
Stop the engine, and contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.

Step 4 After the system has cooled down sufficiently, check the coolant level, and check the radiator for leakage.

Step 5 Add coolant if necessary. (See P.385)
If there is no coolant in case of emergency, contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.

⚠ WARNING

■ **Precautions for inspection:**

When opening the hood for inspection, be sure to observe the following precautions to avoid accidents or personal injuries.

- If steam comes out beneath the hood, do not open the hood before steam dissipates. The engine may be very hot, resulting in serious injuries such as scalding.
- When the engine is running, do not approach the fan and engine belt.
- When the engine and radiator are hot, do not release the coolant filler cap, otherwise hot coolant and steam may be released under pressure, resulting in serious scalding and other injuries.

⚠ CAUTION

■ **Adding coolant**

Add coolant slowly after the engine has cooled sufficiently. If cold coolant is added too quickly when the engine is hot, it can cause damage.

■ **Preventing damage to cooling system**

Please observe the following precautions:

- Prevent foreign matters (such as sand or dust) from entering into coolant.
- Do not use any coolant additives.

If car gets trapped

In case of wheel idling or trapping in mud or snow, perform the following operations.

Step 1 Apply the EPB and set the shift lever to P position. Turn off the engine switch.

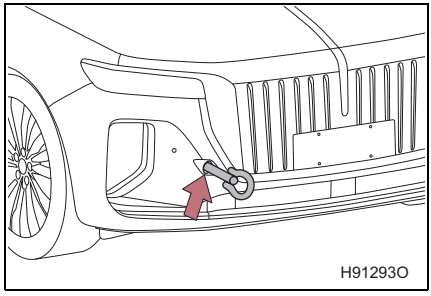
Step 2 Remove mud, snow or sand around the trapped tires.

Step 3 Place wooden blocks, stones or other materials under all tires to help increase the ground grip of the tires.

Step 4 Restart the engine.

Step 5 Set the shift lever to D or R position, and depress the accelerator pedal carefully to drive the car out of the trap.

Emergency towing



- If the car is trapped or immobile, the towing eye can be used to tie the towing cable or chain to another vehicle to tow the car in an emergency.
- For details, refer to "If the car needs to be towed" in this chapter. (See P.329)
- It is not recommended to tow other vehicles with your car.

⚠ WARNING

Driving the car out of the trap

If the car is driven out of the trap by pushing the car from the front and rear, make sure that the surrounding area is spacious and unimpeded to avoid colliding with other vehicles, objects or people. When the car is to be driven out of the trap, it may suddenly rush forward or backward, so extra care shall be taken.

When operating the shift lever

Do not depress the accelerator pedal during gear shifting, otherwise the car may accelerate suddenly, resulting in a serious accident.

CAUTION

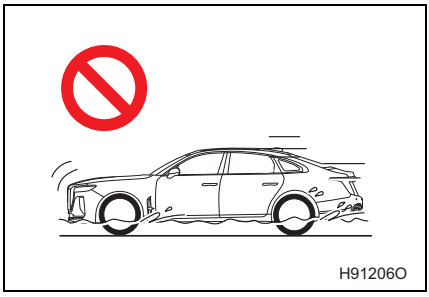
■ **Preventing damage to transmission and other components**

- Avoid wheel idling and do not run the engine at high speed.
- If the car still cannot get out of the trap after several attempts, it is required to seek the assistance of a tow truck.

If driving on water-logged road

In case of accidental driving on a water-logged road and water entry, contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer for the following inspections:

- Check the braking efficiency of brakes.
- Check the oil level and quality of the engine, transmission, reducer, etc. (if the lubricating oil is turbid, it is contaminated by water; in this case, change the lubricating oil).
- Check the lubrication of the propeller shaft, bearings, joints, etc.



In case of driving on a water-logged road, engine flameout, short circuit of electrical components, and water entry are likely to occur. Do not attempt to start the engine after flameout, otherwise the engine may be damaged seriously.

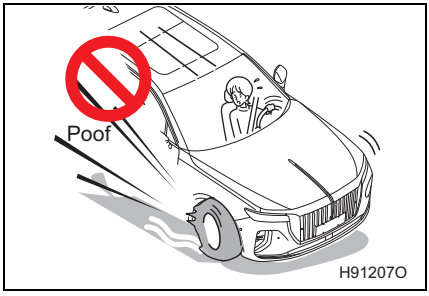
If you have a burst tire

In the event of tire burst or rupture during driving, keep calm.

Hold the steering wheel firmly and depress the brake pedal slowly to decelerate the car. If you perform emergency braking or turn the steering wheel sharply, you are prone to lose control of the car.

It is necessary to check for tire burst or rupture under the following conditions:

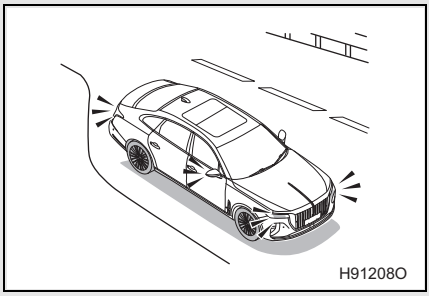
- Steering wheel jitter.
- Abnormal car vibration.
- Abnormal car inclination.



Do not drive with a flat tire.

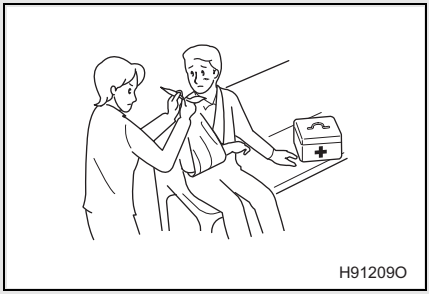
Driving with a flat tire is so dangerous that accidents are likely to occur. In addition, tires, rims, suspensions and body will be damaged. In this case, replace the tires promptly or contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.

Don't panic, instead, follow the steps below:


H91208O

1 Prevent consecutive accidents.

Move the car to a safe area so as not to interfere with traffic, and turn off the engine switch.


H91209O

2 Take emergency measures in case of personal injuries.

Try to take emergency measures before arrival of the doctor and ambulance. If the head is injured seriously, try to keep still. If there is a risk of consecutive accidents, move the injured person to a safe place.



H91210O

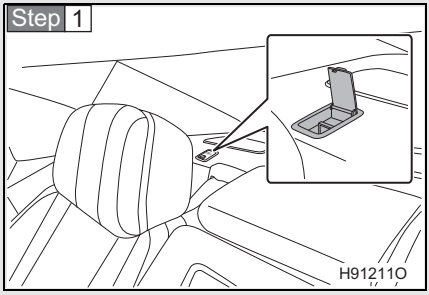
3 Call the police.

4 Confirm the troublemaker and record the relevant information (name, address, phone number, etc.).

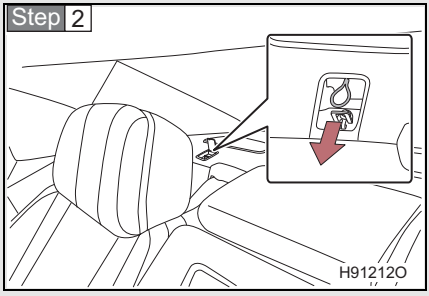
5 Contact the authorized FAW Hongqi dealer and insurance company.

Emergency opening of trunk lid

The following steps can be taken as emergency measures to ensure that the trunk lid can be opened.



Open the right anchorage support cover upwards.



Pull the trunk lid unlocking cable to open the trunk lid (remove the anchorage support cover if necessary).

⚠ WARNING

■ **When opening or closing the trunk lid manually in an emergency, be careful to prevent injuries.**

- Do not allow children or persons in need of assistance to operate the car alone, otherwise they may be trapped in the car or trunk and cannot safely leave or perform self-rescue in the event of an emergency.
- With the variation of seasons, the temperature in the locked car may be very high or low, therefore, occupants especially children are prone to injury or illness and even death.
- When opening or closing the trunk lid, take special care to ensure that there is no person between the trunk lid and the body.

CAUTION

■ **Preventing damage to car**

When opening or closing the trunk lid in an emergency, be careful during removal and refitting of the parts, to avoid damaging the car.

10-1. Service and maintenance

Cleaning and protecting exterior trims of car 366

Cleaning and protecting interior trims of car 368

10-2. Maintenance

Precautions for maintenance 371

10-3. Maintenance by yourself

Precautions for maintenance by yourself 374

Particulate filter 377

Engine hood 380

Engine compartment 381

12 V battery and 48 V battery 390

Tire 395

Tire pressure 399

Wheel 401

A/C filter 403

Fragrance box 405

Replacing key battery 406

Checking and replacing fuse 408

10-4. Specifications

Maintenance data 412

Fuel information 428

Cleaning and protecting exterior trims of car

The following operations help to protect the exterior trims of the car and keep them in the best condition:

- Rinse the body, wheelhouse and underbody with plenty of water from top to bottom to remove dirt and dust.
- Wipe the body with a sponge or a piece of soft cloth (such as suede cloth).
- Clean the part with the traces that are difficult to remove using detergents and rinse it thoroughly with water.
- Remove water.
- In case of aging of the waterproof coating, wax the car.

Make sure that the surface of the car is clean and free of water beads and the body is cooled before waxing the body.

■ **Automatic car washing**

- Fold the exterior rearview mirrors before washing the car. Rinse the front part of the car first. Be sure to unfold the exterior rearview mirrors before driving.
- The brushes used at the automatic washing station may scratch the surface of the car and damage the paint.

■ **High-pressure car washing**

- Do not place the nozzle for car washing too close to the window.
- Before car washing, check that the fuel filler cap is properly closed.

■ **Aluminum wheels**

- Remove dirt with neutral detergent immediately after it is adhered to the wheels. Do not use hard brushes or abrasive detergents. Do not use highly corrosive or strong detergents.
- Do not wash the wheels with detergent when they are very hot (e.g. after driving for long distance in hot weather).
- After washing the wheels with detergent, rinse them immediately.

■ **Bumper**

Do not scrub the bumper with abrasive detergent.

⚠ WARNING

■ **Washing car**

Do not rinse the interior of the engine compartment with water, otherwise the electrical components may be short-circuited, possibly resulting in a fire.

■ **Precautions for exhaust pipe**

Exhaust gas will make the exhaust pipe very hot.

When washing the car, do not touch the exhaust pipe before it is cooled sufficiently to avoid scalding.

⚠ CAUTION

■ **Preventing aging of body and body paint and corrosion of body and components (such as aluminum wheels)**

- Wash the car immediately after the following conditions occur:
  - Driving by the sea
  - Driving on saline-alkali roads
  - Paintwork contaminated with coal tar or tree sap
  - Dead insects, insect droppings or bird droppings fallen on the paintwork
  - Driving in areas contaminated with coal ash, oil fumes, mineral dust, iron dust or chemical substances
  - Severe dust or mud buildup on the car
  - Liquids such as benzene and gasoline splashed on the paintwork
- Repair the paint promptly in case of peeling-off or scratch.
- To prevent the wheels from corrosion, remove dirt from them and store them in a place with low humidity.

■ **Cleaning the logo**

Wipe the logo on the engine hood with clean water or neutral cleaner. Do not wash the logo with alcohol or alcohol-containing liquid, phenol, anisole and other organic solvents, otherwise the logo is prone to crack.

■ **Cleaning the lamp**

- Be careful when cleaning the lamp. Do not use organic cleaners or hard brushes to clean the lamp, otherwise the lamp surface may be damaged.
- Do not wax the lamp surface, otherwise the lamp shade may be damaged.

Cleaning and protecting interior trims of car

The following operations help to protect the interior trims of the car and keep them in the best condition:

■ Protecting interior trims of car

Remove dirt and dust with a vacuum cleaner. Dampen a piece of cloth with warm water and wipe the dirty surface.

■ Cleaning leather part

- Remove dirt and dust with a vacuum cleaner.
- Dampen a piece of soft cloth with diluted detergent and wipe off the remaining dirt and dust through wiping.
  Use a neutral wool detergent solution with a diluted concentration of about 5%.
- Wring the damp cloth and wipe off the residual detergent thoroughly.
- Wipe off any residual moisture on the surface with a piece of dry soft cloth, and dry the leather in a cool and ventilated place.

■ Cleaning artificial leather part

- Remove floating dust with a vacuum cleaner.
- Apply neutral soapy solution to the artificial leather part.
- Soak the artificial leather part in the soapy solution for a few minutes, and wipe off the dirt and soapy solution with a piece of clean damp cloth.

■ Cleaning wooden part

- Gently wipe off the dust on the surface of wooden trims using cotton gauze.
- Gently wipe off the dirt on the surface of wooden trims using cotton gauze wet with a little neutral soapy solution.

■ **Maintaining leather part**

It is recommended that you clean the interior trims at least twice a year to maintain their quality.

■ **Maintaining wooden part**

It is recommended that you maintain the surface of wooden part at any time according to their condition.

Cleaning carpet

Clean the carpet with a proper foam cleaner available in the market. Apply the foam with a sponge or brush, scrub the carpet in overlapping circular motions, do not add water, and keep the carpet as dry as possible to achieve the best effect.

Seat belt

Clean the seat belt using a piece of cloth or sponge wet with neutral cleaner and lukewarm water. Regularly check the seat belt for excessive wear, damage or scratches.

⚠ WARNING

Preventing entry of water into car

- Do not spill liquids into the interior of the car, otherwise it may cause malfunctions or fires in electrical components.
- Do not let the airbag components or wires in the car get wet,

  otherwise accidental deployment or malfunction of the airbag may be caused, resulting in serious injury or even death.

Cleaning interior trims (especially instrument panel)

Do not use polishing wax or polishing cleaner to clean the instrument panel, otherwise the instrument panel may reflect light on the windshield, which obstructs the driver's visibility, causing serious injury or even death.

CAUTION

■ **Cleaner**

- Do not use the following cleaners, otherwise the interior trims may be discolored or the paintwork may be streaked or damaged:

  Organics such as benzene or gasoline, alkaline or acidic solutions, dyes and bleaches.
- Do not use polishing wax or polishing cleaner to clean the instrument panel, otherwise the paintwork of the instrument panel or other interior parts.

■ **Preventing damage to leather surface**

To prevent damage and aging of the leather surface, please observe the following precautions:

- Wipe off the dust and dirt on the leather surface in time.
- Do not expose the car to direct sunlight for a long time. Park the car in a cool place, especially in summer.
- Do not place polyethylene, plastic or waxy articles on the leather trim, as they may stick to the leather surface when the interior temperature increases significantly.
- If too much moisture remains on the seat surface, the leather will be hardened, shrunk or deformed.

■ **Preventing entry of water into floor**

Do not clean the floor with water.
If the electrical components under the floor come into contact with water, the electrical system may be damaged, and the body may be rusted.

■ **Cleaning inner side of rear windshield**

- Do not clean the rear windshield with glass cleaner, otherwise its defogger heating wires may be damaged. Dampen a piece of cloth with warm water and gently wipe the rear windshield in a direction parallel to the heating wires.
- Be careful not to scratch or damage the heating wires.

Precautions for maintenance

To ensure the driving safety and economy, routine and regular maintenance are crucial.
As recommend by FAW, you should take the following maintenance measures:

■ Regular maintenance

- Perform regular maintenance on the car according to the maintenance schedule.

  The maintenance intervals are determined according to the mileage or time interval (whichever comes first) in the maintenance schedule.

  It is recommended to perform maintenance items even if the specified maintenance interval has been exceeded.

- Where can you have your car maintained?

  An authorized FAW Hongqi dealer is the most ideal service provider for maintenance.

  The authorized FAW Hongqi dealer has advanced maintenance tools, equipment and genuine spare parts for the maintenance and service of your car, and all after-sales service personnel have received professional management and technical training to ensure rapid and efficient completion of car maintenance and repair, so that your car can always have good technical performance.

  The authorized FAW Hongqi dealer has invested significantly in special tools and maintenance equipment, which helps to provide better service for you.

  With the service concept of "efficient, reasonable and value-added", the authorized FAW Hongqi dealer is committed to thoroughly performing all maintenance items for your car.

  Rubber hoses (for cooling, heating, brake and fuel systems) should be checked by professionals in strict accordance with the maintenance schedule.

  Rubber hoses will be degraded over time, which will cause expansion, wear or rupture. Therefore, if any signs of deterioration or damage are observed in the hoses, please immediately contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer for replacement.

■ Precautions for maintenance by yourself

Can the car be maintained by yourself?

If you have abundant basic knowledge of car structure, inspection and maintenance and some basic tools, you can perform routine inspection and maintenance yourself. Simple instructions for maintenance by yourself are covered in this section.

It should be reminded that some maintenance work requires special maintenance equipment and professional skills and it is preferably performed by a qualified technician. Even if you are an experienced professional technician, it is still recommended that you contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer for standardized repair and maintenance. The dealer will record the maintenance information of your car and help you apply for warranty service.

■ **Does your car need to be repaired?**

Pay attention to changes in the performance and sound of the car, as well as visual warnings indicating maintenance requirements. Some important signs are provided below:

- Engine misfire, unstable operation or "bang" sound.
- Noticeable decrease in power.
- Abnormal sound of engine.
- Liquid leakage under the car. (Water dripping after using the A/C and drainage from the exhaust pipe after cooling is normal.)
- Change in the exhaust sound. (It indicates potential carbon monoxide leakage which is dangerous. In this case, open the windows and check the exhaust system immediately.)
- Flat tire, excessive tire noise during turning, or uneven tire wear.
- Pulling to one side during straight driving on a flat road.
- Abnormal sound related to the suspension component.
- Braking failure; soft brake pedal when being depressed; pedal almost touching the floor; pulling to one side during braking.
- Continuously high engine coolant temperature.

If you find any of the signs mentioned above, contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer for adjustment or repair as soon as possible.

⚠ WARNING

■ **Improper maintenance**

Improper maintenance may cause serious damage to the car and serious personal injury or even death.

■ **Precautions for battery handling**

Battery terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds which can cause brain damage.
Be sure to wash your hands after handling.

■ **Waste engine oil**

It is proven that the chemical substances in waste engine oil can cause cancer in laboratory animals. Avoid long-time repeated contact. To protect your skin, be sure to wash it thoroughly with soap and water.

Precautions for maintenance by yourself

If the maintenance is to be carried out by yourself, correct procedures below must be followed.

Item	Component and tool
Battery status (see P. 390)	• Warm water • Baking soda • Grease • Common wrench (For terminal bolts)
Engine coolant level (see P. 385)	• Automobile long-life coolant • Funnel (for adding coolant only)
Engine oil level (see P. 382)	• Genuine engine oil or equivalent of FAW • Rag or paper, funnel (For adding engine oil only)
Brake fluid level (see P. 388)	• Genuine brake fluid of FAW • Rag or paper, funnel (For adding brake fluid only)
Fuse (see P. 408)	• Fuse of the same amperage rating as the original one
Radiator, condenser and intercooler/main low-temperature radiator (see P. 387)	—
Tire pressure (see P. 399)	• Tire pressure gauge • Compressed air source
Washer fluid (see P. 389)	• Washer fluid with antifreeze (For use in winter) • Funnel

⚠ WARNING

Many mechanisms are installed in the engine compartment. They may rotate or get hot or become energized suddenly. To avoid serious personal injury, please pay attention to the following matters.

■ **Handling parts in engine compartment**

- If it is necessary to run the engine when working under the hood, be sure to remove all jewelry (especially ring, bracelet, watch and necklace), bow tie, scarf and other loose clothing before approaching the engine or the electric fan that may run at any time.
- Be careful not to touch the engine, radiator, exhaust manifold, etc. immediately after driving, as they may be very hot. Oil and other fluids may also be hot.
- Before opening the hood, be sure to shut down the engine, apply the EPB, set the shift lever to P position, turn off the engine switch, carry the key with you, and wait till the engine cools down.
- Keep hands, clothing and tools away from the rotating fan and engine drive belt.
- Do not leave any articles in the engine compartment.
  After the inspection or maintenance in the engine compartment, do not leave any articles such as tool or cloth in it, otherwise engine damage or fire will be caused, resulting in an accident.
- Do not smoke, generate sparks, or expose open flames in areas near the fuel or battery.
- Be especially careful when handling the battery. The battery contains toxic and corrosive sulfate.
- Be careful when handling the brake fluid as it may injure your hands or eyes and damage the paintwork. If the brake fluid spills on your hands or into your eyes, rinse the affected area with the fluid immediately with clean water. If you still feel unwell, seek medical attention.

■ **Working near electric fan or radiator grille**

Make sure that the engine switch is turned off. If the engine is running, the electric cooling fan may run automatically when the A/C is started or the coolant temperature is very high.

■ **Goggles**

Wear goggles to prevent objects from flying into your eyes or fluids from splashing into your eyes.

⚠ CAUTION

■ **Precautions after removal of air cleaner**

If the car is driven with the air cleaner removed, dirt in the air may cause excessive wear of the engine. At the same time, backfire may also cause the engine compartment to catch fire.

■ **Too low or high brake fluid level**

The brake fluid level drops slightly when the brake pads are worn or the fluid level in the brake fluid reservoir is relatively high, which is normal. If the brake fluid reservoir needs to be filled with brake fluid frequently, it means that there may be a serious fault. In this case, contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer for inspection.

Particulate filter

The particulate filter filters out particulate matter from exhaust gas, and the particulate filter can clean itself under normal driving conditions (continuous driving at a speed of more than 30 km/h).

Long-term low speed driving, repeat low-temperature cold starting or long-term idling of vehicle may result in the accumulation of carbon deposits in the particulate filter. When the amount of carbon deposits accumulates at a high level, the engine control system automatically cleans and treats the carbon deposits, and at the same time, the instrument cluster gives prompt through indicator lamp and text. If the carbon deposits always cannot be cleaned effectively due to vehicle driving conditions, the instrument cluster will give an alarm at different levels depending on the carbon deposits in the particulate filter.

Cleaning methods of particulate filter for models equipped with 25TD, 30TD:

- When GPF cleaning warning lamp GPF (green) on instrument cluster comes on, and multifunction display prompts "Particulate filter clean mode" simultaneously, it indicates that the amount of carbon deposits in particulate filter is high, the engine control system will control the vehicle to clean the particulate filter automatically in order to ensure vehicle performance. At this time, there may be a slight difference in driving experience and fuel consumption, which is normal. When the indicator lamp goes out, it indicates that the vehicle has completed the particulate filter regeneration and the vehicle will be in optimum condition.
- When GPF cleaning warning lamp GPF (green) on instrument cluster comes on, and multifunction display prompts "Particulate filter needs to be cleaned by driving, see the manual" simultaneously, it indicates that the amount of carbon deposits in particulate filter is high. Although the engine control system will control the vehicle to clean automatically, In order to clean the carbon deposits as soon as possible, it is necessary to drive vehicle for cleaning in accordance with special working conditions. At this time, after warming up the engine (water temperature

reaches 90 ˚C), the vehicle is accelerated to 60 km/h or more for normal driving.

Notice:

1. After driving according to the above method for a certain period of time, the GPF cleaning warning lamp (green) will turn off and the cleaning is complete;
2. The cleaning time required to drive according to the above method may vary depending on vehicle condition (such as 0.5 h to 1 h or more);
3. When driving according to the above method, by increasing the vehicle speed and occasionally pressing the accelerator pedal deeply to accelerate, the time required for cleaning can be reduced;
4. When driving is not possible as described above, the vehicle speed should be increased as much as possible.

This process may take longer depending on vehicle condition, (e.g. driving for an hour).

- When GPF fault warning lamp (yellow) on instrument cluster comes on, and multifunction display prompts "Please go to 4S store to clean particulate filter" simultaneously, it indicates that the particulate filter cannot be cleaned effectively by driving, please immediately contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer for treatment.
- When GPF fault warning lamp (yellow) and engine control system fault warning lamp (yellow) on instrument cluster come on, and multifunction display prompts "Please check and repair particulate filter" simultaneously, it indicates that the amount of carbon deposits in particulate filter has seriously exceeded the limit, please immediately contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer for treatment.

Cleaning methods of particulate filter for models equipped with 20TD:

- When GPF cleaning warning lamp (green) on instrument cluster comes on, and multifunction display prompts "Exhaust air needs to be cleaned by driving, see the manual" simultaneously, it indicates that the particulate filter needs to be cleaned by driving. At this time, after warming up the engine (water temperature

reaches 90 ˚C), the vehicle is accelerated to 60 km/h or more for normal driving.

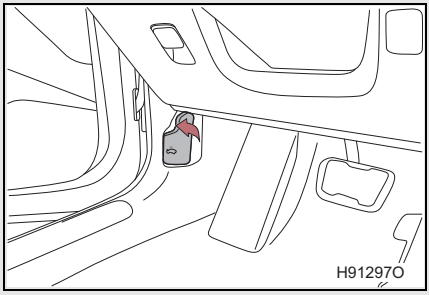
Notice:

1. After driving according to the above method for a certain period of time, the GPF cleaning warning lamp GPF (green) will turn off and the cleaning is complete;
2. The cleaning time required to drive according to the above method may vary depending on vehicle condition (such as 0.5 h to 1 h or more);
3. When driving according to the above method, by increasing the vehicle speed and occasionally pressing the accelerator pedal deeply to accelerate, the time required for cleaning can be reduced;
4. When driving is not possible as described above, the vehicle speed should be increased as much as possible.

This process may take longer depending on vehicle condition, (e.g. driving for an hour).

- When GPF fault warning lamp GPF (yellow) on instrument cluster comes on, and multifunction display prompts "Please go to 4S store to clean exhaust air particulate filter" simultaneously, it indicates that the particulate filter cannot be cleaned effectively by driving, please immediately contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer for treatment.
- When GPF fault warning lamp GPF (yellow), and multifunction display prompts "Please go to 4S store to check and repair exhaust air particulate filter" simultaneously, it indicates that the carbon load in particulate filter has seriously exceeded the limit, please immediately contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer for treatment.

Open the hood through unlocking from the inside of the car.



Pull the hood release handle in the car twice to open the hood.

⚠ WARNING

■ **Inspection before driving**

Check that the hood is closed and locked.

If the hood is not locked properly, it may suddenly open during driving, which will cause an accident, resulting in serious personal injury.

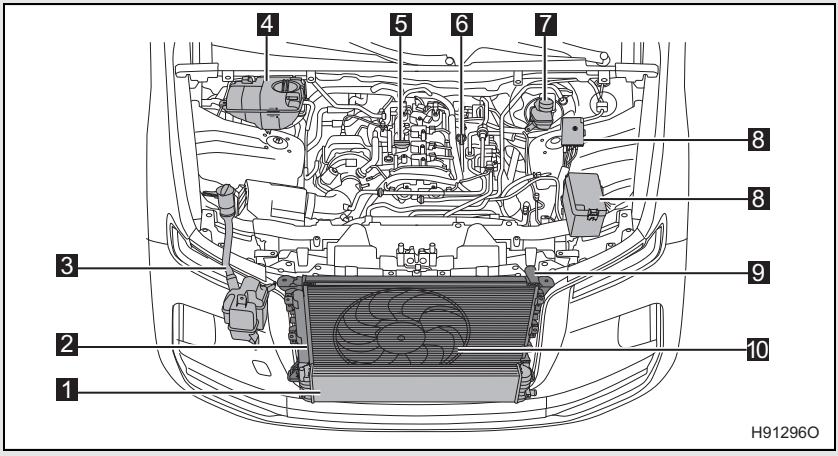
⚠ CAUTION

■ **Closing hood**

- Do not apply excessive force to prevent hood damage.
- Make sure that there are no items, such as tools left in the engine compartment before closing the hood.

Engine compartment

Due to different model configurations, the picture is for reference only.



1 Intercooler
2 Condenser
3 Washer fluid reservoir
4 Coolant reservoir
5 Oil filler cap
6 Dipstick
7 Brake fluid reservoir
8 Fuse box
9 Radiator
10 Cooling fan

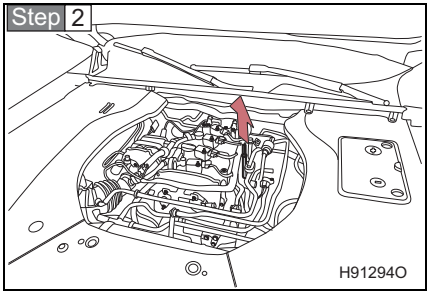
Oil

Check the oil level when the engine is kept at the operating temperature and the engine switch is turned off.

■ Checking oil

Step 1 Park the vehicle on a flat ground. After shutting down the engine, wait more than 5min to allow the oil to flow back to the bottom of the engine.

Step 2

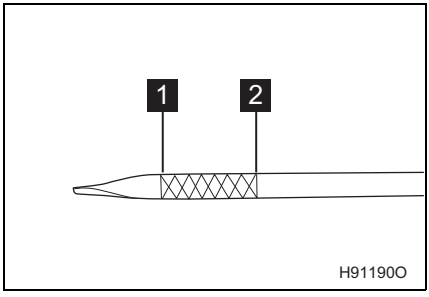


Place a piece of clean cloth under the end of the dipstick and pull out the dipstick.

Step 3 Wipe the dipstick.

Step 4 Fully reinsert the dipstick.

Step 5 Place a piece of clean cloth under the end of the dipstick, pull out the dipstick, and check the oil level.

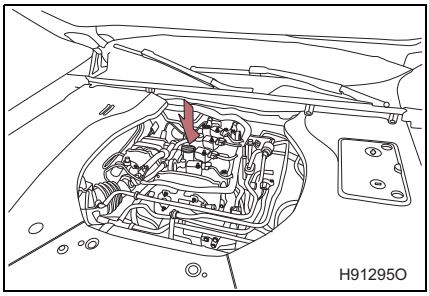


1 LOW
2 FULL

The oil level must be between LOW and FULL. Address any excess or insufficient oil promptly.

Step 6 Wipe the dipstick clean before fully reinserting it.

■ Adding oil



If the oil level is below or near the LOW mark, add oil of the same grade as that in the engine.

Before adding oil, be sure to determine the oil grade and prepare the necessary articles.

Step 1 Unscrew the oil filler cap by turning it counterclockwise.

Step 2 Add oil slowly, and check the dipstick.

Step 3 Install the oil filler cap, and turn it clockwise until it is tightened.

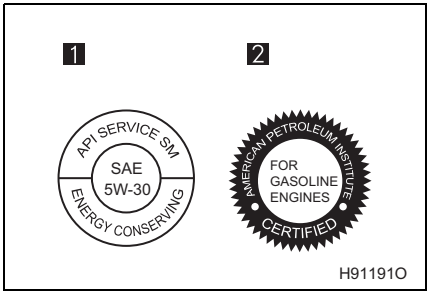
Recommended oil grade

It is recommended to select the oil according to the lubrication system parameters in the maintenance data. (See P. 420)

For more details, consult an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.

■ How to read the mark on the oil container

Some oil containers are labeled with one or two API registration marks for reference during selection of the correct oil.



1 API service mark

Top: API (American Petroleum Institute) oil quality mark, such as SM

Middle: SAE viscosity grade, such as SAE 5W-30

Bottom: "Energy-Conserving" indicates that the oil has oil-saving property.

2 ILSAC (International Lubricant Standardization and Approval Committee) certification mark

---

■ **Oil consumption**

A certain amount of engine oil is consumed during driving. Oil consumption may increase and engine oil may need to be re-added during maintenance when:

- A new engine is used, e.g. after a new car is purchased directly or the engine is replaced
- When using oil of low quality or improper viscosity
- The engine is running at high speed, or the car is driven under heavy load or frequent acceleration or deceleration
- The engine is idling for a long time, or the car is frequently driven on congested roads

⚠ WARNING

■ **Precautions for disposal of waste oil**

- Waste oil contains potentially hazardous substances that can cause diseases such as dermatitis and skin cancer, therefore, be sure to avoid long-time or frequent contact with oil. Thoroughly wash it off your skin with soap and water.
- Always dispose of waste oil and oil filter in a safe manner that complies with the environmental protection regulations. Do not dispose of waste oil and oil filter in the domestic garbage, in sewers or on the ground. For information on oil recycling or disposal, consult an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.
- Do not keep waste oil within the reach of children.

⚠ CAUTION

■ **Preventing serious damage to engine**

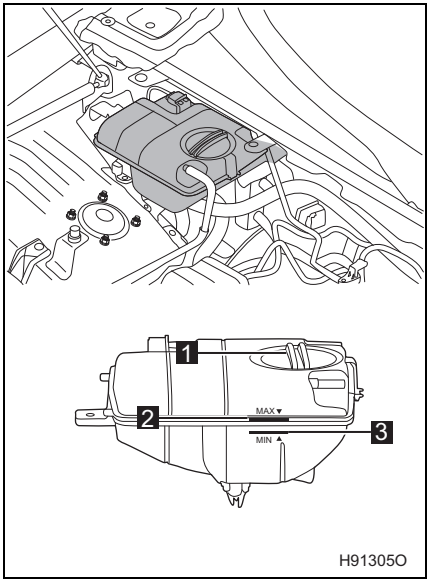
Regularly check the oil level.

■ **Precautions for oil change**

- Do not splash oil on the parts of the car.
- Do not overfill the oil, otherwise the engine will be damaged.
- Check the oil level on the dipstick every time you add oil to the car.
- Make sure that the oil filler cap is tightened properly.
- Check the condition of oil filler cap sealing ring and check for dust, etc; if there is dust, clean it thoroughly before installation. Be careful not to scratch the rubber ring of oil filler cap during cleaning.
- Do not splash oil out of the filler when adding oil. If oil spills onto the engine gear train, it is necessary to thoroughly clean it and replace the belt; Oil spills at other positions in the engine needs to be cleaned with detergent to ensure that there is no oil residue.

Engine coolant

If the coolant level in the coolant reservoir is between the "MAX" (highest) and "MIN" (lowest) marks, it is normal.



1 Reservoir cover
2 "MAX" (highest)
3 "MIN" (lowest)

If the coolant level is below the "MIN" mark, add the coolant to the normal level.

Decrease of coolant level shortly after the coolant is added

Visually check the components such as radiator, coolant reservoir and cooling pipe.
If no leakage is found, contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer for inspection of the cooling system.

Selecting coolant

Use the automobile long-life coolant throughout the year.
For more details of coolant, contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.

WARNING

Engine at high temperature

- Do not add coolant, because hot engine is very dangerous and may cause scalding.
- Do not remove the coolant reservoir cover.
  There may be pressure inside the cooling system, therefore, hot coolant may be sprayed out after the coolant reservoir cover is removed, causing scalding or other injuries.

CAUTION

■ **Adding coolant**

Add the coolant specified by FAW to ensure normal lubrication, anti-corrosion and cooling performance.
Please read the instructions on the label of the coolant.

■ **Accidental splashing of coolant**

Always remove the coolant with water to avoid damaging the parts or paint.

Radiator, condenser and intercooler

Check the radiator, condenser and intercooler, and remove any foreign matters.
If the radiator, condenser or intercooler is excessively dirty or abnormal, contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer for inspection of the car.

WARNING

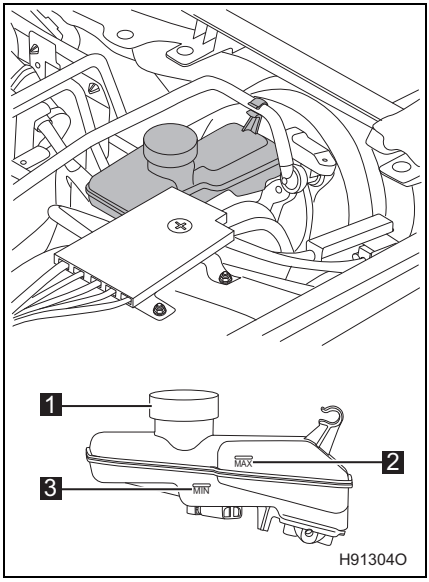
■ **Engine at high temperature**

Do not touch the radiator, condenser and intercooler to prevent the risk of scalding.

Turbocharged engine*

- Check, remove or replace the turbocharger only after shutdown of the engine and cooling of the turbocharger.
- Do not drop any oil on a hot turbocharger surface, otherwise a fire may be caused.
- Do not cool the turbocharger by splashing water on its hot surface, otherwise it may be damaged.
- After the turbocharged engine is started, it is recommended to run it at idle speed for 3min to ensure that the turbocharger is lubricated properly.

Brake fluid



1 Brake fluid reservoir cover
2 "MAX" (highest)
3 "MIN" (lowest)

If the brake fluid level is below the "MIN" mark, add the brake fluid to the normal level.

⚠ WARNING

■ Precautions for addition of brake fluid

- It is very dangerous if the brake fluid is sprayed out. If the brake fluid enters the eyes, rinse them with plenty of water, and seek medical attention immediately.
- Do not spray the brake fluid onto your body or the electrical parts in the engine compartment, otherwise it is likely to cause personal injuries or a fire.

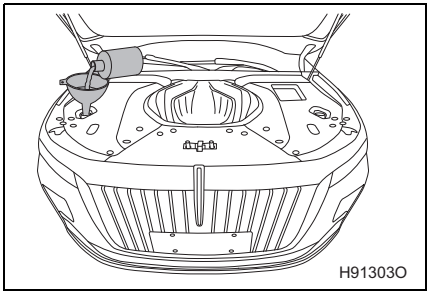
■ Too low brake fluid level

- It is very dangerous if the brake fluid level is too low. A too low fluid level indicates wear of the brake lining or leakage of the brake system. The brake may fail, resulting in a serious accident. If the fluid level is too low, check the brake.
- If the fluid level is too low, add the brake fluid until it reaches the "MAX" mark. Before adding the brake fluid, thoroughly clean the parts around the brake fluid reservoir cover.

CAUTION

- The brake fluid will damage the paintwork. If the brake fluid is accidentally splashed onto the paintwork, wipe it off immediately.
- Using non-specified brake fluid can lead to damage in the system. Additionally, mixing different types of brake fluid may cause damage to the system.
- If the brake fluid needs to be added or changed, consult an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.

Washer fluid



If any of the washers does not work or an alarm message appears on the multi-function display of the instrument cluster, the washer fluid reservoir may be empty. In this case, add the washer fluid in time.

WARNING

Adding washer fluid

Do not add the washer fluid when the engine is hot or running. Otherwise, if the washer fluid splashes on the engine, a fire may be incurred by the alcohol in the washer fluid.

CAUTION

Do not use any fluids other than the washer fluid

Do not substitute soapy water or engine coolant for washer fluid, otherwise sagging of the paintwork may be caused.

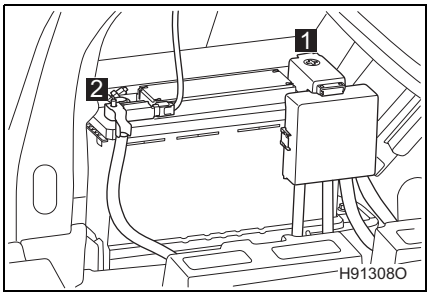
Diluting washer fluid

If necessary, dilute the washer fluid with water.

Refer to the freezing temperature indicated on the label of the washer fluid reservoir.

12 V battery

Open the access cover on the trunk left trim panel, the battery is located in the trunk left trim panel.



Make sure that there is no corrosion on battery terminals, no looseness in connections, no cracks in external parts, and no looseness in fixing clips.
1 Positive terminal
2 Negative terminal

Precautions during installation

- When connecting the battery, avoid connecting the terminal cables reversely, otherwise the electrical equipment in the car may be damaged.
- During storage, transportation and installation of the battery, prevent the positive and negative terminals from contacting with each other. For example, the metal wrench for connecting is likely to touch the positive and negative terminals at the same time. In this case, the battery may be short-circuited, causing a direct failure.
- Due to the small vent holes in the battery, do not place it on its side or upside down during storage, handling and installation, to avoid leakage of electrolyte.
- Replace the battery with the one of the same model.
- If the wiring clips are oxidized or dirty when the battery is replaced, remove the oxide layer or dirt with sandpaper, and apply Vaseline to the wiring clips and battery terminals before connecting.
- For vehicle equipped with super-capacitor, confirm that super-capacitor power is sufficient after removing the battery, and then install a new battery.
- During installation, connect the positive terminal and then the negative terminal, and during removal, disconnect the negative terminal and then the positive terminal, to avoid the risk of short circuit.

Precautions before charging

Pay attention to the following matters before charging:

- When charging the battery installed on the car, be sure to turn off the engine switch and disconnect the ground wire.

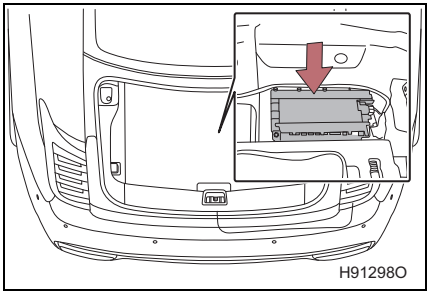
- When connecting or disconnecting the charger cable to/from the battery, make sure that the power switch on the charger is turned off.

Precautions during use

- Pay attention to keep the air outlet of the battery clean to avoid blockage.
- Charge the battery in the following conditions:
  - Frequent short-time use or frequent starts of the car.
  - Frequent driving on congested roads.
  - A high number of electrical devices being used in the car.
  - Frequent driving at night.
  - No use of the car for a long time.
  - Failure to turn off the lamp after parking.
  - Failure to close the doors tightly during parking.
  - Long-time use of the A/C, audio, lamp and other electrical equipment without starting the engine.
- If the car is stored for more than 30 days, perform the following operations to maintain the normal charging state of the battery:
  - Disconnect the negative terminal ground wire of the battery to prevent battery discharge caused by additional current discharge.
  - Charge the battery once every 20-45 days.
  - Before the normal use of the car, connect the power supply and keep the car still for a certain period of time to ensure that the idle stop-start function works normally.

48 V battery*

Open the trunk carpet, the 48 V battery is located in the front side of spare tire recess of trunk.



When 48 V battery power is low, the vehicle will automatically charge the 48 V battery during driving.

■ **Precautions during use**

- If the vehicle is stored for more than 60 days, the engine should be started and idled or drive the vehicle at least 10 minutes every 2 months to maintain the normal condition of 48 V battery.
- It is strictly prohibited to use all kinds of equipment to perform jumping, charging/discharging on 48 V battery.

Power management system

■ When the battery power is low, the system will limit some comfort functions to ensure the starting performance of the car. At this time, these functions will not work according to the working state set by the user. Once the battery power is restored to a safe range, the limited comfort functions will automatically return to the state set by the user.

■ The power management system can adjust the output voltage of the generator in real time, obtain the status information of battery and 48 V system and control the optimal charging voltage to reduce the fuel consumption appropriately while improving the power performance of the car.

⚠ WARNING

■ **Chemical substances in the battery**

The battery contains toxic corrosive sulfuric acid and may generate flammable and explosive hydrogen gas. To reduce the possibility of serious personal injury, be sure to observe the following precautions when handling the battery or working near it:

- Do not allow tools to contact battery terminals, so as to avoid sparks.
- Do not smoke or use open flames near the battery.
- Avoid splashing electrolyte into eyes and on skin or clothing.
- Do not inhale or swallow electrolyte.
- Wear goggles when working near the battery.
- Keep children away from the battery.

■ **Safe place for battery charging**

Charge the battery in an open place. Never charge it in a poorly ventilated garage or an enclosed place.

■ **Emergency measures for handling of electrolyte**

- Accidental splashing of electrolyte into eyes
  Rinse your eyes with water for at least 15 min and seek medical attention immediately. If possible, continue to wash your eyes with a piece of absorbent sponge or cloth on the way to hospital.
- Splashing of electrolyte on skin
  Thoroughly wash the part on which electrolyte is splashed. If you have a burning sensation, seek medical attention immediately.
- Splashing of electrolyte on clothing
  Electrolyte may penetrate clothing and contact with the skin. Take off clothing promptly and adopt the above measures if necessary.
- Accidental swallowing of electrolyte
  Drink plenty of water or milk, take magnesia lotion, agitated raw eggs or vegetable oil, and seek medical attention immediately.

⚠ WARNING

■ **Do not disconnect the negative (-) terminal on the body side**

The disconnected negative (-) terminal may come into contact with the positive (+) terminal, resulting in a short circuit and serious injury or even death.

■ **Safety instructions for 48 V battery**

- The vehicle will automatically charge the 48 V battery during driving. It is strictly prohibited to use all kinds of chargers to charge the 48 V battery.
- 48 V battery cannot be repaired and it is prohibited to unscrew the bolt of 48 V battery or open the 48 V battery.
- Do not place the 48 V battery in a high temperature environment (above 68°C) to avoid 48 V battery failure. Such as ambient temperature of battery is higher than 68 ˚C during vehicle paint baking, please remove the battery before performing corresponding operation.

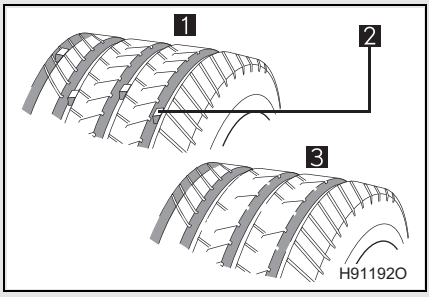
⚠ CAUTION

■ **Precautions for battery charging**

Do not charge the battery when the car is started. Be sure to turn off all accessories.

Replace the tire or perform tire rotation according to the wear condition of the tread.

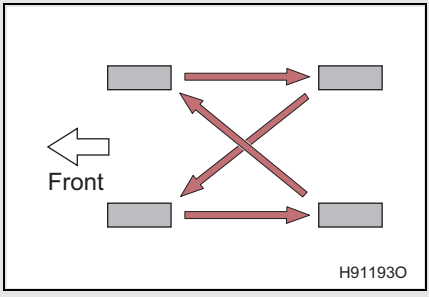
■ Tire inspection



1 New tread
2 Tread wear indicator
3 Worn tread

If the tread pattern wears down to the tread wear indicator surface, replace the tire (the picture is for reference only).

■ Tire rotation



Perform tire rotation as shown in the figure.

It is recommended to perform tire rotation every 8,000~10,000 km to achieve even tire wear and extend the tire life.

Note:

1. Spare tires are non-full-size and cannot be used for tire rotation and are for temporary use only.
2. Spare tires are not equipped with tire pressure monitoring sensor.
3. After the tire rotation, it is necessary to configure the tire pressure monitoring system. Contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer if necessary.

■ **Measures for protection against wheel fault**

- When driving over curbs or similar obstacles, keep a slow speed in the vertical direction of the obstacles as much as possible.
- Be careful not to let the tires contact with grease, oil and fuel.
- Regularly check the damage of tires (such as splitting, crack or bulging), and remove debris embedded in the grooves of the tire pattern.

■ **Precautions for tire storage**

- Before removing the tire, mark the tire to indicate the rolling direction, and refit the tire and align it with the mark to maintain the rotation direction and the dynamic balance of the wheel.
- Store the removed wheels and tires in a cool and dry place, preferably in a dark place not exposed to direct sunlight.

■ **Hidden damage**

- Damage to tires and rims often occurs in a hidden way, and abnormal vibration or deviation of the car during driving may indicate a faulty wheel. In this case, drive the car to an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer for inspection of wheels as soon as possible.

■ **When to replace the tire**

Replace the tire when:

- The tire has any defect such as cut, fracture, crack with exposed fabric ply or bulging.
- The tire leaks frequently or cannot be repaired due to other damage.

■ **Tire life**

Avoid using tires that have been in use for six years, and if you have to use them,

drive at low speed with extreme caution.

■ **Precautions for driving on snowy roads**

If the tread of snow tires is worn by 4 mm or above, the anti-skid performance of snow tires will be

significantly reduced.

■ **Precautions for run-flat tire***

- RUN FLAT (run-flat tire) mark is on the side of tire.
- Due to the reinforced side wall, the vehicle still can be driven in a restricted manner even when tire loses tire pressure.
- The vehicle can be driven at a maximum speed of 80 km/h for a maximum of 80 km with a damaged tire.

- If continue to drive with abnormally low tire pressure, avoid sharp turns, emergency brake and excessive manoeuvring, and find a tire service point as soon as possible to replace with a new run-flat tire in time.
- If equipped with run-flat tire, only use the run-flat tire to replace the damaged tire and do not mix with other tires for your own safety.
- It is difficult for the driver to judge the loss of pressure in run-flat tire through the changes of comfort. During driving, the driver should pay attention to the Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) alarm information to determine whether the vehicle is currently being driven in a state of under-inflation or loss of tire pressure.

⚠ WARNING

■ **Precautions for tire inspection or replacement**

To avoid transmission part damage which will affect the control performance of the car, be sure to observe the following precautions:

- Do not use tires from different manufacturers, of different models and with different tread patterns or tread wear degrees.
- Do not use tires not recommended by FAW.
- Do not mix tires with different structures such as radial, bias-belted and bias-ply tires in use.
- Do not mix summer tires, all-season tires and winter tires.
- Do not use tires that have been used on other vehicles.

■ **Run-flat tire cannot prevent tire burst, pay attention to the followings during usage**

- Run-flat tire cannot withstand all road conditions and the vehicle should not be driven at high speed in poor road conditions.
- When there is under-inflation or damage in run-flat tire, this tire should be replaced in time within a driving distance of 80 km.

■ **The driver must correctly understand the capabilities and limitations of the run-flat tire, and bear full responsibility for the damage caused by the wrong use of run-flat tire.**

CAUTION

■ **Driving on uneven roads**

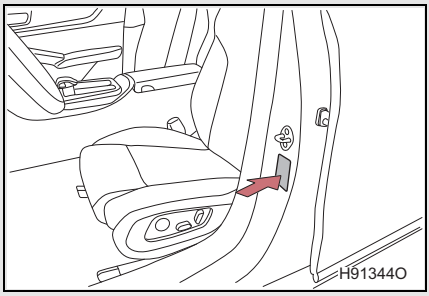
When the car is driven on soft or bumpy roads, extra care shall be taken.

On such roads, tires are probe to bulging due to impact, and they may be damaged eventually.

■ **Decreased tire pressure during driving**

Do not continue driving, as this may result in complete tire and/or wheel damage.

Be sure to maintain a proper tire pressure. Check the tire pressure at least once a month.



The tire pressure label is located under the B-pillar lock pin on the driver's side.

■ Consequences of incorrect tire pressure

Too low tire pressure:

- The rolling resistance and fuel consumption are increased.
- The maneuverability and stability of the car are reduced.
- Damage and high temperature may be caused, resulting in tire burst. When the tire pressure is seriously insufficient, the tire may be detached from the rim, reducing the safety.
- The tire is worn on both sides.

Too high tire pressure:

- The comfort of the car is reduced.
- The middle of the tire is worn excessively.
- The tire is prone to internal crack and burst when being impacted.

■ Guidelines for tire pressure inspection

Even if your car is equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system that can remind you of the tire pressure status in time, please check the tire pressure in time.

When checking the tire pressure, please observe the following precautions:

- Check the tire only after it has cooled down.

  If the car has been parked for at least 3 h, or has not driven for more than 1.5 km, carry out the inspection to obtain the accurate tire pressure reading.
- Always use a tire pressure gauge.

  The tire appearance may sometimes be misleading. Additionally, the riding comfort and maneuverability may be reduced even if the tire pressure is relatively low.

- Do not deflate or depressurize the tire after driving. The tire pressure may increase after driving, which is normal.
- Do not overload the car.

  The weight of the driver, passengers and luggage should be evenly distributed to keep the car balanced.

⚠ WARNING

■ Correct inflation is the key to tire protection

Be sure to maintain a proper tire pressure, otherwise the following conditions may occur:

- Excessive wear
- Uneven wear
- Poor maneuverability
- Tire burst after overheating
- Bead sealing performance degradation
- Wheel deformation or detachment of the tire from the wheel
- Potential tire damage due to poor road conditions

■ Do not drive the car at an improper tire pressure

It is dangerous to drive the car with improper tire pressure. An improper tire pressure may affect the maneuverability and result in an accident. It is necessary to check the pressure of the spare tire along with the pressure of the tires in normal use.

⚠ CAUTION

■ Precautions for inspection and adjustment of tire pressure

Be sure to reinstall the tire valve cap.
If the valve cap is not installed, dirt or moisture may enter the valve and cause air leakage, resulting in an accident.
If the valve cap is missing, install a new one as soon as possible.

If the rim is bent, cracked or severely corroded, replace it. Otherwise, the tire may be detached from the rim or you may lose control of the car.

■ Selecting wheel

When replacing the wheel, ensure that the newly installed wheel matches the original in terms of bearing capacity, diameter, rim width and offset.

The wheel for replacement can be provided by an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.

FAW recommends not to use the following types of wheels:

- Wheels of different sizes or types.
- Old wheels.
- Bent wheels that have been straightened.

■ Considerations for aluminum wheel

- Be sure to use the wheel nuts and wrench specially designed for the aluminum wheel.
- During tire rotation, maintenance or replacement, check and confirm the tightness of the wheel nuts.
- When tire chains are used, be careful not to damage the aluminum rim.
- Only use the balance weight or equivalent product specified by FAW to balance the wheel.

⚠ WARNING

■ **Replacing wheel**

Do not use the wheel of a different model than the original one installed on the car, otherwise you may lose control of the car.

■ **Installing wheel nut**

- Tighten the wheel nut until the cone part comes into contact with the wheel nut seat of the rim.
- Never apply oil or grease to wheel bolts or nuts.

  Oil and grease may over-tighten the wheel nuts, resulting in damage to the bolt or spoke wheel. In addition, oil or grease may cause wheel nuts to become loose and cause the wheel to fall off, thus causing accidents, serious injury or even death. Please remove all oil or grease from wheel bolts or nuts.

■ **Do not use defective wheels**

Do not use cracked or deformed wheels.

Otherwise, tires may leak during driving, resulting in an accident.

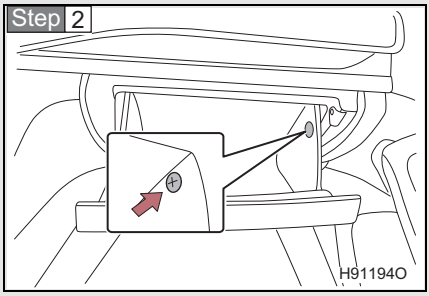
A/C filter

Regularly replace the A/C filter to maintain the A/C efficiency.

■ Replacing A/C filter

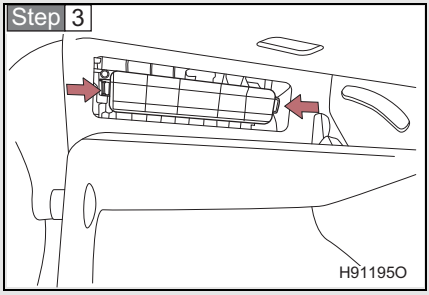
Step 1 Turn off the engine switch.

Step 2



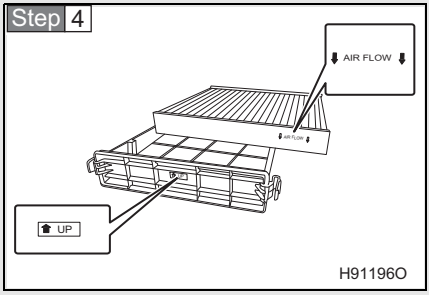
Open the glove box.
Remove the plastic fixing bolts on the left and right sides of the glove box, detach the limiter, and pull down the glove box to the position where the filter can be removed.

Step 3



Remove the A/C filter housing.

Step 4



Remove the filter from filter housing, and replace it with a new one.

Pay attention to the installation direction arrow on the filter and filter housing during installation.

■ **Replacement interval of A/C filter**

In dusty or heavy traffic areas, the replacement interval may need to be shortened.

■ **Significant reduction of airflow at air vent**

The filter may be blocked. Check the filter, and replace it if necessary.

■ **A/C filter**

If the filter needs to be cleaned or replaced, please contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.

⚠ CAUTION

■ **Using A/C system**

Make sure that the filter is installed.

If the A/C system is used without a filter, it may be damaged.

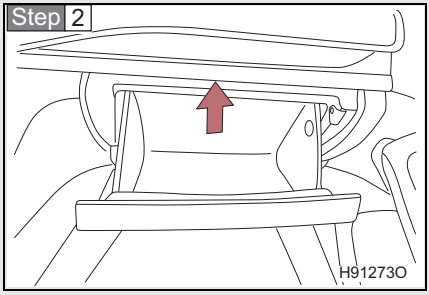
■ **Removing filter**

Do not replace the A/C filter when the blower is working, otherwise personal injuries may be caused.

■ Replacing fragrance box

Step 1 Turn off the engine switch.

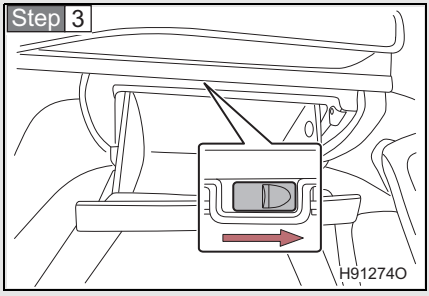
Step 2



Open the glove box and the fragrance box is located on the upper side of glove box.

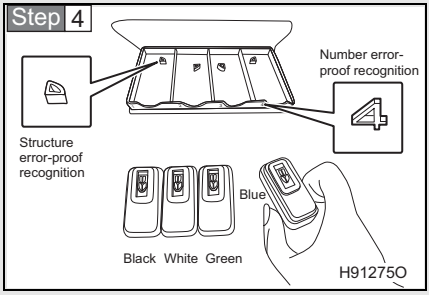
Remove the plastic fixing bolts on the left and right sides of the glove box, detach the limiter, and pull down the glove box to the position where the fragrance box can be opened.

Step 3



Turn the switch to right to open the fragrance box cover.

Step 4



Remove the fragrance from fragrance box and replace it with a new one.

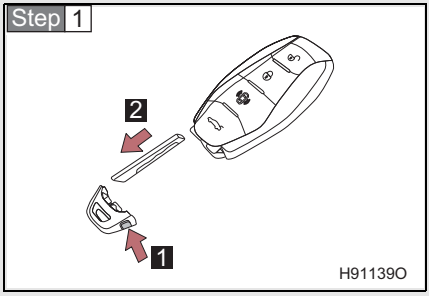
From left to right, they are 1, 2, 3, 4, and black, white, green, blue fragrance are put in order respectively.

Replacing key battery

If the battery power of the smart key is low, replace it with a new one.

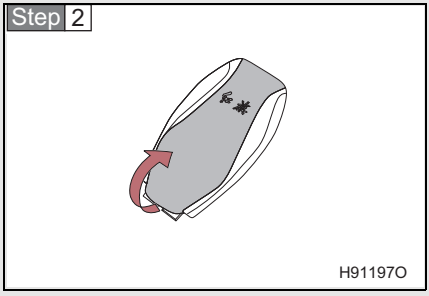
- The following part is required:
  - Lithium battery
- Replacing smart key battery

Step 1



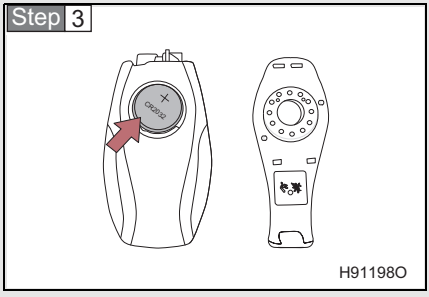
Press the unlocking button to detach the end cover of the key.

Step 2



Detach the rear cover of the key.

Step 3



1 Take out the old battery.

Insert a new battery with the + terminal facing upward.

2 Return the rear cover and end cover of the key to the original positions.

■ **If the battery power of the smart key is low, the following conditions may occur**

- Failure of wireless remote control function.
- Reduction of effective range.
- Failure of PEPS function.
- Failure of smart start function.

■ **Using CR2032 lithium battery**

- It is recommended to replace the battery with the same or equivalent product recommended by an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.
- Always dispose of the old battery in accordance with the local laws and regulations.

⚠ WARNING

■ **Replaced battery and other parts**

Keep the parts out of reach of children.

These small parts may cause suffocation if swallowed by children.

⚠ CAUTION

■ **To ensure that the remote control key can work normally after the battery is replaced**

Be sure to observe the following precautions to avoid an accident.

- Always dry your hands before operating the smart key to prevent rusting of the battery.
- Do not touch or move any other parts inside the remote control key.
- Do not bend the battery terminals.

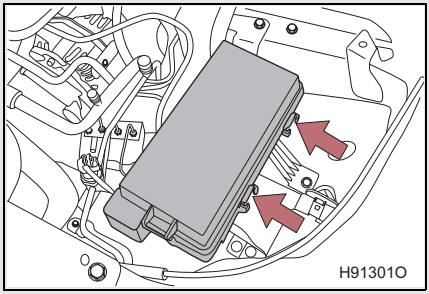
Checking and replacing fuse

If any electrical component fails to work, a fuse may be blown. In this case, check and replace the fuse if necessary.

Step 1 Turn off the engine switch.

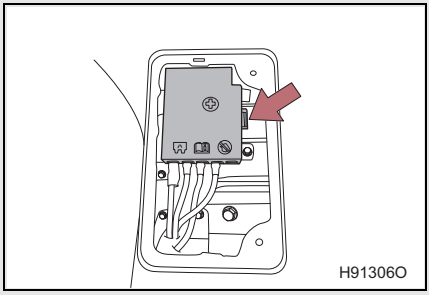
Step 2 The fuses are located in the following positions. Check the fuses as follows.

■ **Engine compartment (A-type)**



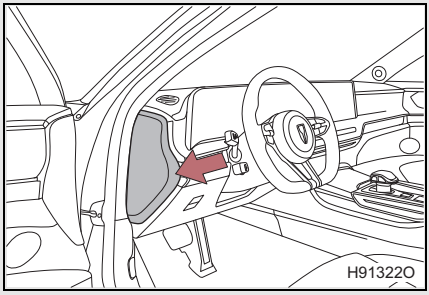
Press the fixing clip, and open the cover.

■ **Engine compartment (B-type)**



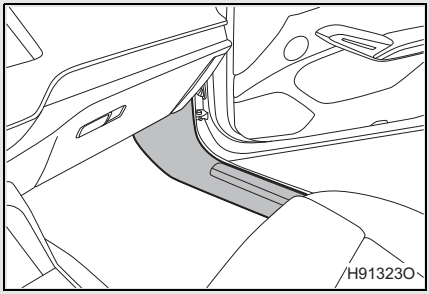
Press the fixing clip, and open the cover.

■ **Driver's instrument panel**



Remove the left cover of instrument panel.

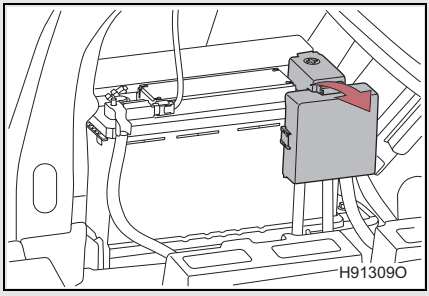
■ **Right front door sill trim panel**



Remove the right front door sill trim panel.

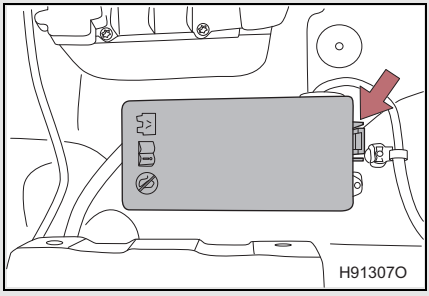
It is recommended to contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer for replacement of the fuse in this position.

■ **Trunk (type A)**



Open the access cover on the trunk left trim panel and open the cover.

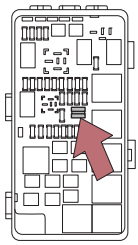
■ **Trunk (type B)**



Remove the tool box and open the cover.

Step 3 After a system fault occurs, contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer to inquire about the fuses that need to be checked.

Step 4

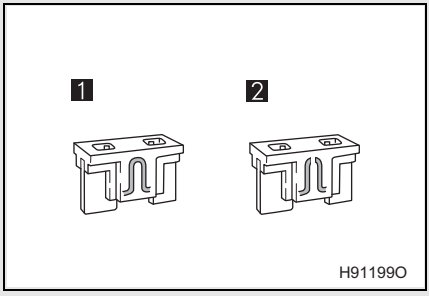


H91302O

Remove the fuse with the auxiliary removal tool.

Step 5 Check whether the fuse is blown.

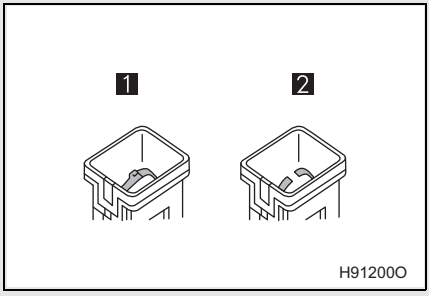
▶ A-type



H91199O

1 Normal fuse
2 Blown fuse

▶ B-type



H91200O

1 Normal fuse
2 Blown fuse
Replace the fuse with a new fuse of the amperage rating approved by FAW.

■ **Distribution and amperage rating of fuses**

For the distribution and amperage rating of fuses, please contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer for confirmation.

■ **Precautions after fuse replacement**

- If the electrical function still does not work after the fuse is replaced, further inspection may be required. Contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.
- If the newly installed fuse blows out again, contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer for inspection of the car.

■ **Circuit overloading**

The fuse will blow out, possibly damaging the entire harness.

⚠ WARNING

■ **Preventing system fault or car fire**

Be sure to observe the following precautions, otherwise car damage, fire or personal injury may be caused.

- Do not use a fuse with an amperage rating higher or lower than specified.
- Be sure to use the same or equivalent product recommended by an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.
  Do not substitute the fuse with a wire, even temporary replacement is strictly prohibited, otherwise serious damage or even a fire may be caused.
- Do not modify the fuse or fuse box.

⚠ CAUTION

■ **Precautions before fuse replacement**

Contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer to determine the cause of excessively high electrical load and have the car repaired.

Dimensions

■ Model No.: CA7203HA6T, CA7300HA6TA, CA7308HA6TX

Overall length		5,137 mm
Overall width		1,904 mm
Overall height		1,498 mm
Front overhang		908 mm
Rear overhang		1,169 mm
Wheelbase		3,060 mm
Wheel track	Front	1,633 mm
	Rear	1,629 mm
Approach angle (no load)		16.8°
Departure angle (no load)		17.4°

Seating capacity

■ Model No.: CA7203HA6T, CA7300HA6TA

Seating capacity	5

■ Model No.: CA7308HA6TX

Seating capacity	4

Drive mode

■ Model No.: CA7203HA6T, CA7300HA6TA

Drive mode	Front longitudinal engine, rear-wheel drive

■ Model No.: CA7308HA6TX

Drive mode	Front longitudinal engine, 4WD

Vehicle mass

■ Model No.: CA7203HA6T

Curb weight		1,895 kg
Gross vehicle weight rating		2,345 kg
Axle load (full load)	Front	1,078 kg
	Rear	1,267 kg

■ Model No.: CA7300HA6TA

Curb weight		2,015 kg
Gross vehicle weight rating		2,505 kg
Axle load (full load)	Front	1,159 kg
	Rear	1,346 kg

■ Model No.: CA7308HA6TX

Curb weight		2,100 kg
Gross vehicle weight rating		2,550 kg
Axle load (full load)	Front	1,240 kg
	Rear	1,310 kg

Emission standard

■ Model No.: CA7203HA6T, CA7300HA6TA, CA7308HA6TX

Emission standard	China Ⅵ b

Vehicle fuel consumption under specified test conditions

■ Model No.: CA7203HA6T

Engine model	CA4GC20TD-31
Combined fuel consumption for WLTC standard	7.12 L/100 km
Fuel economy for SASO standard	17.9 km/L

■ Model No.: CA7300HA6TA

Engine model	CA6GV30TD-05
Combined fuel consumption for WLTC standard	8.52 L/100 km
Fuel economy for SASO standard	15.2 km/L

■ Model No.: CA7308HA6TX

Engine model	CA6GV30TD-05
Combined fuel consumption for WLTC standard	9.32 L/100 km

⚠ CAUTION

■ **Automatic transmission fluid**

- Use the automatic transmission fluid other than specified type will affect the transmission hydraulic system control and cooling and lubrication effect, resulting in damage to the transmission assembly.

Vehicle performance

■ Model No.: CA7203HA6T

Maximum net power/rpm	180 kW/5,500 r/min
Rated power/rpm	185 kW/5,500 r/min
Maximum output torque/rpm	380 N·m/(1,800-4,000) r/min

Maximum gradeability	⩾ 30%
Maximum speed	230 km/h

■ Model No.: CA7300HA6TA

Maximum net power/rpm	240 kW/5,500 r/min
Rated power/rpm	248 kW/5,500 r/min
Maximum output torque/rpm	445 N·m/(3,000-5,000) r/min
Maximum gradeability	⩾ 30%
Maximum speed	250 km/h

■ Model No.: CA7308HA6TX

Maximum net power/rpm	240 kW/5,500 r/min
Rated power/rpm	248 kW/5,500 r/min
Maximum output torque/rpm	445 N·m/(3,000-5,000) r/min
Maximum gradeability	⩾ 30%
Maximum speed	245 km/h

Front wheel alignment (no load)

■ Model No.: CA7203HA6T

Front wheel camber	-15′±25′
Kingpin caster angle	5°58′±45′
Kingpin inclination angle	6°43′±45′
Front wheel toe-in	β=12.84′±5′

■ Model No.: CA7300HA6TA, CA7308HA6TX

Front wheel camber	-30′±25′
Kingpin caster angle	5°48′±45′
Kingpin inclination angle	7°7′±45′
Front wheel toe-in	β=7.5′±5′

Rear wheel alignment (no load)

■ Model No.: CA7203HA6T

Rear wheel camber	-56′±30′
Rear wheel toe-in	β =7′±5′ 2β =14′ ±10′

■ Model No.: CA7300HA6TA, CA7308HA6TX

Rear wheel camber	-1°30′±30′
Rear wheel toe-in	β =10′±5′ 2β =20′±10′

Suspension

■ Model No.: CA7203HA6T

Front suspension	Type		Double wishbone independent suspension
	Type of spring		Spiral spring
	Type of shock absorber		Double-cylinder hydro-pneumatic shock absorber
	Stabilizer bar	Type	Hollow stabilizer bar
		Diameter	Φ27.5 mm
Rear suspension	Type		Trapezoidal arm independent suspension
	Type of spring		Spiral spring
	Type of shock absorber		Double-cylinder hydro-pneumatic shock absorber
	Stabilizer bar	Type	Solid stabilizer bar
		Diameter	Φ18 mm

■ Model No.: CA7300HA6TA, CA7308HA6TX

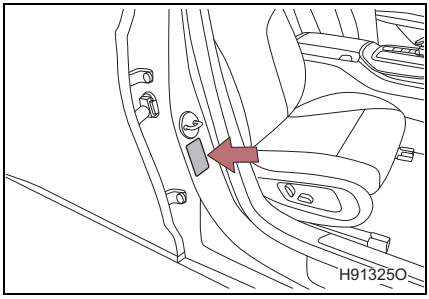
Front suspension	Type		Double wishbone independent suspension
	Type of spring		Air spring
	Type of shock absorber		Continuous damping shock absorber
	Stabilizer bar	Type	Hollow stabilizer bar
		Diameter	Φ27.5 mm
Rear suspension	Type		Trapezoidal arm independent suspension
	Type of spring		Air spring
	Type of shock absorber		Continuous damping shock absorber
	Stabilizer bar	Type	Solid stabilizer bar
		Diameter	Φ18 mm

Specifications for new car running-in

The new car running-in mileage is 1,500 km. When the mileage is not more than 1,000 km, the engine speed should not be higher than 3/4 of the rated speed during driving; when the mileage is 1,000~1,500 km, the engine speed can be increased according to road conditions until the rated speed is reached.

Vehicle identification

■ Manufacturer's nameplate

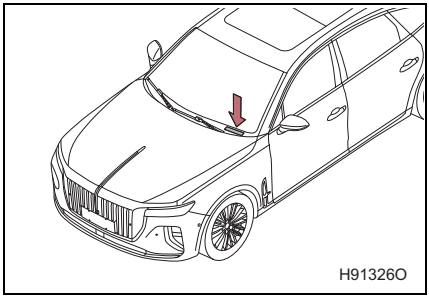


As shown in the figure, the manufacturer's nameplate is located on the left B-pillar.

■ Vehicle identification number

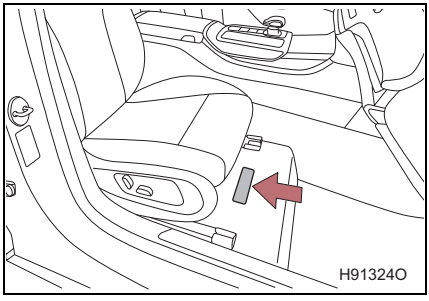
The vehicle identification number (VIN) is the legal identification of the car. As the primary identification number, the VIN is used for owner registration.

▶ Top left of the instrument panel



It is affixed under the windshield at the top left of the instrument panel.

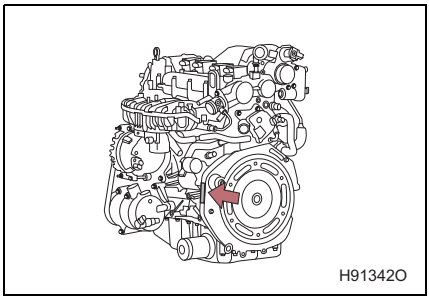
▶ Under the front passenger's seat



It is engraved under the front passenger's seat.

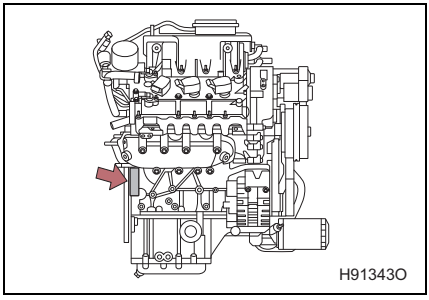
■ Engine model and factory number

► CA4GC20TD-31 engine



As shown in the figure, the engine number is engraved on the cylinder block.

► CA6GV30TD-05 engine



As shown in the figure, the engine number is engraved on the cylinder block.

Engine

Model	CA4GC20TD-31, CA6GV30TD-05
Type	► CA4GC20TD-31 engine In-line, four-cylinder, direct injection, turbocharged gasoline engine ► CA6GV30TD-05 engine V-type, six-cylinder, direct injection, turbocharged gasoline engine
Bore × stroke	► CA4GC20TD-31 engine 82.5 × 93 mm ► CA6GV30TD-05 engine 82.5 × 92 mm

Displacement	▶ CA4GC20TD-31 engine 1.989 L ▶ CA6GV30TD-05 engine 2.951 L

Fuel

Fuel type	Unleaded gasoline or ethanol gasoline
Octane number	95 or above
Fuel tank capacity (for reference)	62 L

Lubrication system

■ CA4GC20TD-31 engine

Oil capacity (refill after draining)	6 L
Filling volume after change of oil and replacement of oil filter	5.3 L
Filling volume after independent change of oil	5 L
Oil grade	Dedicated oil for supercharged engine
Oil viscosity	5W-30

■ CA6GV30TD-05 engine

Oil capacity (refill after draining)	8.5 L
Filling volume after change of oil and replacement of oil filter	7.7 L
Filling volume after independent change of oil	7 L
Oil grade	SM or above (1009100-39L/1009100A39L/ 1009100B39L/1009100C39L)
Oil viscosity	0W-40

Cooling system

■ Model No.: CA7203HA6T

Capacity	9 L
Coolant type	Use the automobile long-life coolant throughout the year (G30-91)

■ Model No.: CA7300HA6TA, CA7308HA6TX

Capacity	12 L
Coolant type	Use the automobile long-life coolant throughout the year (G30-91)

Ignition system

CA4GC20TD-31 engine

Spark plug	3707010-27L
Spark plug gap	0.6 - 0.7 mm

CA6GV30TD-05 engine

Spark plug	3707010-39L
Spark plug gap	0.7 - 0.8 mm

Electrical system

Battery	12 V, 80 Ah maintenance-free battery

Transfer

Model No.: CA7308HA6TX

4WD transfer oil capacity (refill after draining)	0.7 L
4WD transfer oil capacity (filling volume during maintenance)	0.59 L
Transfer oil specification	Mobil fluid LT

Front final drive

■ Model No.: CA7308HA6TX

Front final drive oil capacity	0.295 ± 0.03 L
Final drive oil specification	Castrol BOT 750B

Rear final drive

■ Model No.: CA7203HA6T, CA7300HA6TA, CA7308HA6TX

Final drive oil capacity	1.12 ± 0.03 L
Final drive oil specification	Castrol BOT 750B

A/C refrigerant

A/C refrigerant capacity	550 ± 25 g
A/C refrigerant specification	R134a

Transmission

■ Model No.: CA7203HA6T

Transmission type	7DCT
Transmission fluid capacity (initial filling volume)	8.5 L
Filling volume during maintenance	6.5 L
Transmission fluid type	Castrol BOT351 C4

CAUTION

■ **Automatic transmission fluid**

- Use the automatic transmission fluid other than specified type will affect the transmission hydraulic system control and cooling and lubrication effect, resulting in damage to the transmission assembly.

Model No.: CA7300HA6TA, CA7308HA6TX

Transmission type	8AT
Transmission fluid capacity	9.413 L
Transmission fluid type	Shell ATF L12108

CAUTION

■ **Automatic transmission fluid**

- If the non-specified automatic transmission fluid is used, the gearshift effect will be poor or the clutch plate in the transmission will be burnt.
- Change the automatic transmission fluid only when necessary.

Brake system

Free travel of brake pedal	⩽ 12.4 mm
Travel of brake pedal	124 mm
Brake fluid capacity	Approximately 1 L
Brake fluid type (In accordance with GB 12981-2012)	BASF Hydraulan 404 (DOT4)

Reasonable usable range of brake lining pairs

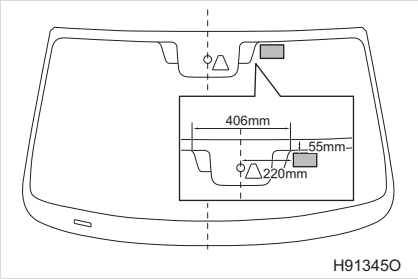
▶ Front

Thickness of brake pad	Standard	Inner	Total 19.1 mm	Thickness of friction material 11.5 mm
		Outer	Total 18.7 mm	
	Minimum	Inner	Total 10.1 mm	Thickness of friction material 2.5 mm
		Outer	Total 9.7 mm	
Thickness of brake disc	Standard		30 mm	
	Minimum		28 mm	

▶ Rear

Thickness of brake pad	Standard	Inner	Total 17.5 mm	Thickness of friction material 11 mm
		Outer	Total 17.6 mm	
	Minimum	Inner	Total 9.5 mm	Thickness of friction material 3 mm
		Outer	Total 9.6 mm	
Thickness of brake disc	Standard		24 mm	
	Minimum		22 mm	

Microwave window

Recommended position for microwave window (viewed in the cab)	

Tires and wheels

Tire specifications	245/45R19		245/40R20	
Wheel dimensions	19×8J		20×8J	
Tire pressure kPa (bar)		3 persons	ECO	Full load
	Front	19-inch: 220 (2.2) 20-inch: 240 (2.4)	270 (2.7)	240 (2.4)
	Rear	220 (2.2)	270 (2.7)	240 (2.4)
Wheel nut torque	140 ± 10 N·m			
Requirements for wheel dynamic balance	Residual unbalance: ⩽ 8 g			
Spare tire specifications	T125/80R18			
Spare tire pressure kPa (bar)	420 (4.2)			

Seat (when the seat cushion is deep)

Front seat	Longitudinal position (forward from the limit position at the rear end of the slide rail)	254 mm
	Seat back reclining	25°
Rear seat	Longitudinal adjustment	Not adjustable
	Seat back reclining	26°

Normal use state of the seat back: The seat back in any locking position within the range of adjustable travel is in normal use state.

Only automobile unleaded gasoline or ethanol gasoline can be used for the car.

In order to achieve the best engine performance, be sure to use 95# (or above) automobile unleaded gasoline or ethanol gasoline.

To ensure the exhaust emission performance and fault diagnosability, it is recommended to use gasoline that complies with the standards specified in each country or region.

■ **Special fuel filler for automobile gasoline**

In order to prevent improper fuel from being added, the fuel filler of the car can only accommodate the special refueling gun of the automobile gasoline pump.

■ **Engine knocking**

- Contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.
- A short and small knocking sound is occasionally heard during acceleration or climbing. This is normal, so don't worry.

⚠ CAUTION

■ **Precautions for fuel quality**

- Do not use improper fuel. Otherwise the engine may be damaged.
- The use of improper fuel will cause a fault in the engine or exhaust monitoring system.
- If improper fuel is accidentally added, be sure to thoroughly clean the fuel system and check the engine. Contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.

Other information

List of abbreviations 430
Event data recorder 432
Alphabetical index 439

List of abbreviations

Abbreviation	Description
ABP	Automatic Brake Prefill
ABS	Antilock Brake System
ACC	Adaptive Cruise Control
ADB	Adaptive Driving Beam
AEB	Autonomous Emergency Braking
APA	Auto Parking Assist
AQS	Air Quality System
BBF	Brake Boost Function
BSD	Blind Spot Detection
CDD-S	Controlled Deceleration for ACC-Stop & Go
CDP	Controlled Deceleration for Parking Brake
CO	Carbon Monoxide
DSM	Driver Status Monitoring
EBD	Electronic Brakeforce Distribution
ECU	Electronic Control Unit
EDR	Event Data Recorder
ELR	Emergency Locking Retractor
EMS	Engine Management System
EPB	Electrical Parking Brake
EPS	Electric Power Steering
ESC	Electronic Stability Control

Abbreviation	Description
ESS	Emergency Stop Signal
ETC	Electronic Toll Collection
FCW	Forward Collision Warning
GPF	Gasoline Particulate Filter
HBA	Hydraulic Brake Assist
HBB	Hydraulic Brake Boost
HHC	Hill Hold Control
IHC	Intelligent High Beam Control
LDW	Lane Departure Warning
LED	Light Emitting Diode
LKA	Lane Keeping Assist
MAX	Maximum
MIN	Minimize
OBD	On-Board Diagnostic
SACC	Super Adaptive Cruise Control
TCS	Traction Control System
TPMS	Tire Pressure Monitoring System
TSR	Traffic Sign Recognition
USB	Universal Serial Bus
VIN	Vehicle Identification Number

Event data recorder

The car is equipped with an event data recorder (EDR). The EDR is mainly designed to record data in the event of certain or sudden collisions (such as airbag deployment or collision with a barrier), so as to help understand the operation of the vehicle system. The EDR is specially used to record data related to the dynamic control and safety systems of the car within a short period of time. However, the data may not be recorded sometimes, depending on the severity and type of collision.

The data content, source and use recorded by the EDR of the car are shown in the table below:

No.	Data name	Content	Source
1	Longitudinal delta-V	Changes in longitudinal speed of vehicle	Airbag control unit
2	Maximum recorded longitudinal delta-V	Maximum cumulative vehicle speed change in the X-axis direction recorded by the EDR	Airbag control unit
3	Time to reach the maximum recorded longitudinal delta-V	Time recorded by the EDR from time zero to occurrence of the maximum cumulative vehicle speed change along the X-axis	Airbag control unit
4	Clipping flag	Point in time when the EDR first reaches the sensor range when collecting the acceleration (horizontal or longitudinal)	Airbag control unit
5	Vehicle speed	Wheel-side linear velocity or the vehicle speed obtained by other means	Integrated brake controller
6	Service brake, on or off	Used to detect if the driver depresses the brake pedal	Integrated brake controller
7	Driver's seat belt status	Status of the driver's seat belt buckle switch	Airbag control unit

No.	Data name	Content	Source
8	Accelerator pedal position	Percentage of the accelerator pedal actual position to the driver's fully depressed position	Engine control unit
9	Revolutions per minute (RPM)	RPM of the engine main crankshaft	Engine control unit
10	Power-on cycle during event	Number of power cycles from the first use of the ECU that records the EDR data to the ECU that records the EDR data when the event occurs	Airbag control unit
11	Power-on cycle during reading	Number of power cycles from the first use of the ECU that records the EDR data to the ECU that records the EDR data during reading	Airbag control unit
12	Event data record complete status	Status flag indicating whether the event data is completely recorded and stored in the ECU that records the EDR data	Airbag control unit
13	Time interval between this event and the last event	Elapsed time from the start of event X to the start of event X-1 if the two events occur within 5 s	Airbag control unit
14	Vehicle identification number	Vehicle identification number (VIN) assigned by the vehicle manufacturer	Airbag control unit
15	Hardware number of ECU that records EDR data	ECU that realizes the EDR recording function of the vehicle	Airbag control unit
16	Serial number of ECU that records EDR data	ECU that realizes the EDR recording function of the vehicle	Airbag control unit
17	Software number of ECU that records EDR data	ECU that realizes the EDR recording function of the vehicle	Airbag control unit
18	Longitudinal acceleration	The component of vector acceleration at a certain point on the vehicle in the X-axis direction	Airbag control unit

No.	Data name	Content	Source
19	Lateral acceleration	The component of vector acceleration at a certain point on the vehicle in the Y-axis direction	Airbag control unit
20	Lateral delta-V	Changes in lateral speed of vehicle. The lateral delta-V is only the component of the total delta-V in the Y-axis direction	Airbag control unit
21	Maximum recorded lateral delta-V	Maximum cumulative vehicle speed change in the Y-axis direction recorded by the EDR, this data should be used in conjunction with the "Time to reach the maximum recorded lateral delta-V"	Airbag control unit
22	Square of the maximum recorded resultant delta-V	The maximum value of sum-of-squares of longitudinal delta-V and lateral delta-V recorded by the EDR	Airbag control unit
23	Time to reach the maximum recorded lateral delta-V	Time recorded by the EDR from time zero to occurrence of the maximum cumulative vehicle speed change along the Y-axis, this data should be used in conjunction with the "Maximum recorded lateral delta-V"	Airbag control unit
24	Time to reach the square of the maximum recorded resultant delta-V	Time from time zero to occurrence of the square of the maximum recorded resultant delta-V, this data should be used in conjunction with the "Square of the maximum recorded resultant delta-V"	Airbag control unit
25	Yaw velocity	Changes in vehicle angle relative to the Z-axis before and during the event, clockwise is positive, applicable to vehicles equipped with electronic stability control system	Airbag control unit

No.	Data name	Content	Source
26	Steering angle	The angular coordinate of the steering wheel, where zero (0°) indicates that the steering wheel is in the middle position (during straight-line driving), and a positive value indicates that the steering wheel is turned counterclockwise (to the left), applicable to vehicles equipped with steering angle sensor	Power steering controller
27	T end	The end of the collision event, if the condition has not been met until the end of the recording period, T end can be defined as the moment of the last recorded data point	Airbag control unit
28	Year	Year of the event occurred	Telematics terminal
29	Month	Month of the event occurred	Telematics terminal
30	Day	Date of the event occurred	Telematics terminal
31	Hour	Time on the day of the event occurred (hour)	Telematics terminal
32	Minute	Time on the day of the event occurred (minute)	Telematics terminal
33	Second	Time on the day of the event occurred (second)	Telematics terminal
34	Gear	Actual gear	Automatic transmission control unit

No.	Data name	Content	Source
35	Engine throttle position	It indicates the state of engine throttle	Engine management system
36	Parking system status	It is used to detect whether the parking brake is activated	Integrated brake controller
37	Turn signal switch status	It is used to indicate the intention of vehicle to make turn or change lanes	Body control module
38	Driver seat belt pretensioner deployment time	The time elapsed from the start of the event (T0) to the driver seat belt pretensioner deployment command	Airbag control unit
39	Driver frontal airbag deployment time (first stage)	The time elapsed from the start of the event (T0) to the first stage of the driver frontal airbag deployment command	Airbag control unit
40	Driver side airbag deployment time	The time elapsed from the start of the event (T0) to the driver side airbag deployment command	Airbag control unit
41	Driver side curtain airbag deployment time	The time elapsed from the start of the event (T0) to the driver side curtain airbag deployment command	Airbag control unit
42	Front passenger seat belt status	The status of front passenger seat belt buckle switch, applicable to vehicles equipped with seat belt reminder	Airbag control unit
43	Front passenger seat belt pretensioner deployment time	The time elapsed from the start of the event (T0) to the front passenger seat belt pretensioner deployment command	Airbag control unit
44	Front passenger frontal airbag suppression status	The suppression status displayed by the front passenger frontal airbag, applicable to vehicles equipped with frontal airbag suppression switch	Airbag control unit

No.	Data name	Content	Source
45	Front passenger frontal airbag deployment time (first stage)	The time elapsed from the start of the event (T0) to the first stage of the front passenger frontal airbag deployment command	Airbag control unit
46	Front passenger side airbag deployment time	The time elapsed from the start of the event (T0) to the front passenger side airbag deployment command	Airbag control unit
47	Front passenger side curtain airbag deployment time	The time elapsed from the start of the event (time zero) to the front passenger side curtain airbag deployment command	Airbag control unit
48	Occupant protection system alarm status	Occupant protection system fault status	Airbag control unit
49	Tire pressure monitoring system alarm status	Alarm status when the on-board tire pressure monitoring system detects low pressure of one or more tires	Body control module
50	Brake system alarm status	Brake system fault status	Integrated brake controller
51	Cruise control system status	Operation status of cruise control system	Engine control unit
52	Adaptive cruise control system status	Operation status of adaptive cruise control system	Intelligent front camera controller
53	Anti-lock brake system status	Operation status of anti-lock brake system	Integrated brake controller
54	Automatic emergency braking system status	Operation status of automatic emergency braking system	Intelligent front camera controller

No.	Data name	Content	Source
55	Electronic stability control system status	Operation status of electronic stability control system	Integrated brake controller
56	Traction control system status	Operation status of traction control system	Integrated brake controller
57	Pre-event synchronization timing time	The relative time from the last data sampling point before T0 to T0, applicable to vehicles equipped with pre-event synchronization timing function. It is used for time alignment of different data	Airbag control unit

These data can help to better understand the situation of collision and personal injury caused therefrom.

Note: The EDR will record data only when a collision of certain degree occurs to the car; that is to say, the EDR will not record data and personal information (e.g. name, gender, age and site of collision) during normal driving. Locked events can override unlocked events rather than locked events. To read the data recorded by the EDR, it is required to use the special equipment specified by the vehicle manufacturer and obtain the permission of access to the EDR. Besides the vehicle manufacturer, the third parties with special equipment (such as law enforcement agencies) can also read the information if they have the permission of access to the vehicle or EDR.

For the introduction to ESC/ABS/ACC and other functions, refer to the relevant chapters in this manual.

Based on legal obligations regarding product monitoring, our company can use the data for environmental monitoring, research and vehicle safety system quality improvement. For the purpose of research, our company can provide the data for relevant parties in an anonymous form, that is, the data does not include information about the vehicle, owner, or lessee.

Alphabetical index

A

A/C filter 403
Adaptive cruise control (ACC).....237
ADB intelligent high beam control.....229
Air suspension*.....220
Airbag 32
Alphabetical index.....439
Around view monitor (AVM).....297
AUTO HOLD.....316
Auto parking assist (APA) ..303
Automatic A/C system - front control system 131
Automatic A/C system - rear control system 142
Automatic A/C system 130
Autonomous emergency braking (AEB) 267

B

Blind spot detection (BSD).....271
Body anti-theft system 65

C

Checking and replacing fuse 408
Child restraint system..... 45
Child safety information..... 44
Cleaning and protecting exterior trims of car 366
Cleaning and protecting interior trims of car 368

D

Door opening warning 318
Door 81
Driver assistance system .. 285
Driver status monitor (DSM)..... 262
Driving essentials in winter..... 69
Driving mode 217
Driving the vehicle..... 199

E

Electronic parking brake (EPB) 314
Emergency call device* 324
Emergency opening of trunk lid 362
Engine (start) switch 207
Engine compartment.....381
Engine hood.....380
Engine IMMO system 64
Entertainment 185
Event data recorder 432
Extended application 186
Exterior rearview mirror 119

F

Fog lamp switch.....232
Forward collision warning (FCW) 264
Fragrance box.....405
Front and rear parking radar 290
Front seat.....100
Front windshield wiper & washer 233
Fuel information 428

G

Gearshift control 209
Goods and luggage 97

H

Hands-free system 187
Hazard warning lamp 322
Head up display 197
Headlamp switch 225
Headrest..... 106

I

Idle stop-start system 279
If an accident occurs 361
If battery or super-capacitor power is low* 350
If car gets trapped 357
If driving on water-logged road 359
If the car is found to be abnormal 334
If the car needs to be towed..... 329
If the door cannot be locked normally..... 348
If the engine cannot start... 343
If the key fails to work normally..... 345
If the key is lost 344
If you have a burst tire..... 360
If you have a flat tire 335
If your car overheats..... 355
Indicator lamp..... 55

Information on multi-function display of instrument cluster 194
Inspection before driving.....68
Installation of child restraint system 50
Instrument cluster 192
Interior lamp list 152
Interior rearview mirror.....117

K

Key.....78

L

Lane departure warning/lane keeping assist (LDW/LKA) 259

M

Maintenance data 412
Multimedia display 170

O

On-board wireless charging* 148
Opening fuel tank cap.....72

P

Panorama sunroof..... 126
Particulate filter 377
PEPS..... 92
Power outlet 150
Power window 123
Precautions for exhaust gas 54
Precautions for maintenance by yourself . 374
Precautions for maintenance..... 371

R

Read this manual 22
Rear seat..... 104
Reference information..... 18
Replacing key battery..... 406

S

Safe driving 24
Seat belt 26
Seat massage function..... 113
Seat memory..... 109
Seat ventilation and heating function.....111
Setting 177
SOS alarm* 323
Steering wheel..... 115
Storage compartments list. 155
Super adaptive cruise control (SACC)* 247

T

Tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS).....257
Tire pressure.....399
Tire.....395
Traffic sign recognition (TSR).....277
Trunk lid.....87
Turn signal lamp control lever.....228

U

USB data interface.....175
Using other equipment.....162

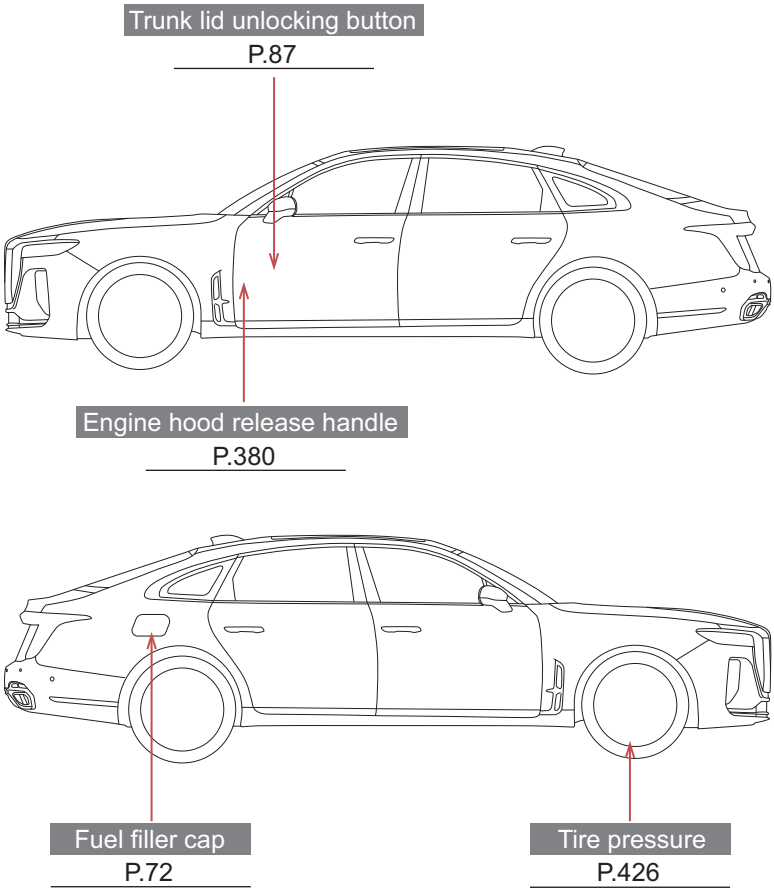
W

Warning lamp.....57
Wheel.....401
Windshield heating*.....147

#

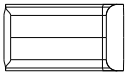
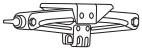
12 V battery and 48 V battery.....390

References for gas station



Fuel tank capacity (for reference)	See P.420
Fuel type	Unleaded gasoline (See P.420)
Tire pressure	See P.426
Oil capacity	See P.420
Oil grade	See P.420

List of accompanying tools

Illustration	Name	Quantity
	Warning triangle	1
	Towing eye	1
	Reflective vest assembly	1
	Tire wrench	1
	Jack crank	1
	Jack	1